

The Personal History of John Wood

By SK Rice

JOHN WOOD

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Forward	1
Chapter 1 – Introduction.....	3
Chapter 2 – Coming to America.....	5
Richard Dubois Wood.....	5
Thomas Dubois Wood.....	5
Richard Wood.....	5
Allen Wood.....	11
Chapter Notes.....	12
Chapter 3 – Birth and Background.....	13
Chapter Notes.....	17
Chapter 4 – John and Rebecca move to Missouri.....	19
The Saints in Missouri.....	19
Jackson County.....	19
Clay County.....	20
Ray County.....	20
Adam Ondi Ahman.....	22
Mormon War Heats up.....	23
Election Day.....	23
Dewitt and Adam Ondi Ahman.....	24
Battle of Crooked River.....	25
Hauns Mill Massacre.....	29
Far West.....	32
Chapter Notes.....	35
Chapter 5 – On to Illinois.....	37
Warsaw.....	38
Nauvoo.....	39
Chapter Notes.....	41

Chapter 6 – The Wood’s move to Iowa.....	42
The Move to Iowa.....	42
Outfitting Posts.....	42
Chapter Notes.....	46
Chapter 7 – Conclusion.....	47
Appendix A – Richard Dubois Wood.....	48
Chapter Note 2.....	48
Huguenots.....	48
Additional information.....	49
Ballymote Castle, Sligo County.....	50
Chapter Note 4.....	50
Appendix B – Thomas Dubois Wood.....	51
Appendix C - Richard Wood.....	52
Chapter Note 5, Sligo Legends.....	52
The Mermaid Rocks.....	52
Queen Maeve’s Tomb.....	54
The Dobharchu.....	55
Dobharchu (Water hound).....	56
Finn Mac Cumail and Split Rock.....	58
The Battles of Moytura.....	59
The Aghree Water horse.....	60
Chapter Note 7	
Acts Passed by Britain.....	61
1764, Sugar Act.....	61
1764, Currency Act.....	61
Beginnings of Colonial Opposition.....	61
1765, Quartering Act.....	61
1765, Stamp Act.....	61
Organized Colonial Protest.....	61
1766, Repeal of the Stamp Act.....	61
1766, Declaratory Act.....	61
Resistance to the Quartering act.....	62
1767, Townsend Act.....	62
Nonimportation.....	62
Letters from a Farmer in Pennsylvania to the inhabitants of the British colonies.....	62

Americans Take a Stand.....	62
1768, Massachusetts Circular letter.....	62
1769, Virginias Resolutions.....	62
1770, Townsend Acts cut back.....	62
1770, End to Nonimportation.....	62
1770, Conflict between Citizens and British Troops in New York.....	63
1770, Boston Massacre.....	63
1772, Attack on the Gaspee.....	63
1772, Committees of Correspondence.....	63
1773, Tea Act.....	63
1773, Boston Tea Party.....	63
1774, Coercive Acts by Britain.....	63
1774, Quartering Acts.....	63
1774, The Colonies Organize Protest.....	63
1774, The First Continental Congress.....	63
1774, New England Prepares for War.....	64
1775, New England Restraining Act.....	64
1775, New England Resists.....	64
1775, Lexington and Concord.....	64
1775, The Second Continental Congress.....	64
1775, George Washington is named Commander –in- Chief.....	64
1775, Bunker Hill.....	64
1775, Olive Branch Petition.....	64
1775, Congress Treaties with the Indians.....	64
1775, Congress Creates a Navy.....	65
1775, Congress Searches for Foreign Aid.....	65
 Chapter Note 8 – Virginia County Lines.....	 65
 Chapter Note 10 – Daniel Boone.....	 67
 Appendix D – Allen Wood.....	 81
 Chapter Note 12 – First Virginia Regiment of Foot.....	 82
Lineage.....	82
Engagements.....	82
Battles.....	83
Kips Bay.....	86
Harlem Heights.....	86
White Plains.....	87
Fort Washington.....	90
History.....	93
Engagements.....	99
Culpeper’s War.....	101

Appendix E – John Wood.....	108
Fishers Hornpipe.....	109
The Louisiana Purchase.....	111
Napoleon.....	116
War of 1812.....	119
Origins.....	121
Operations on the Ocean.....	122
Operations on the Great Lakes.....	124
American Northwest 1813.....	125
The Niagara Frontier 1813.....	126
The Saint Lawrence.....	127
Niagara Campaign, Battle of Lake Champlain, 1814.....	128
The West, 1814.....	128
The American Coast.....	128
Chesapeake Campaign, The Star Spangled Banner.....	129
The American South.....	129
The Treaty of Ghent and the Battle of New Orleans.....	130
Effects on the United States.....	131
Effects on Canada.....	131
References.....	133
History of Ripley County.....	133
Early Indiana History.....	134
Appendix F – Rebecca Belt.....	136
Appendix G – Missouri.....	137
Battle of Crooked River.....	137
Introduction.....	138
Foreshadowing.....	139
Gathering of Mormon Forces.....	142
25 October 1838.....	144
Armed Encounter.....	147
Return to Far West.....	152
Patten’s Death.....	155
Funeral of David W. Patten.....	159
Aftermath.....	161
Tragedy at Crooked River.....	162
Notes.....	167
Mormon War Letters.....	172
12 September 1838 to Governor Boggs.....	173
7 October 1838 to the Citizens of Howard County.....	174
9 October 1838 to the Commander in Chief.....	175
13 October 1838 to Excellency Boggs.....	176

21 October 1838 to Governor of the State of Missouri.....	177
21 October 1838 to Major General D.R. Atchison.....	178
Sworn statement by Jonathon J. Drydon.....	179
Sworn statement by James Stone.....	180
Sworn statement by Thomas Martin.....	180
22 October 1838 to Excellency, Commander in Chief.....	180
23 October 1838 to General Atchison.....	181
23 October 1838 to Excellency Governor of Missouri.....	182
23 October 1838 to the Governor of the State of Missouri.....	183
24 October 1838 From Sachel Woods and Joseph Dickson.....	184
24 October 1838 From Henry Marks.....	185
24 October 1838 From E.M. Ryland.....	185
24 October 1838 From Thomas B. Marsh.....	186
24 October 1838 From Austin A. King.....	189
24 October 1838 Resolutions for Mormons.....	190
24 October 1838 From Morehead, Thornton, Gudgel.....	191
25 October 1838 To Major General John B Clark.....	192
27 October 1838 Order by Boggs to exterminate Mormons.....	193
28 October 1838 To the Commander in Chief of the Militia.....	194
30 October 1838 To His Excellency Governor Boggs.....	194
30 October 1838 To Major General Lucas and Atchison.....	195
1 November 1838 To Major General John B Clark.....	195
1 November 1838 To Generals Atchison and Lucas.....	196
2 November 1838 To Governor Boggs.....	197
2 November 1838 To General Samuel D Lucas.....	200
4 November 1838 To Brigadier General Parks.....	201
5 November 1838 To His Excellency LW Boggs.....	202
6 November 1838 To Major General John B Clark.....	203
7 November 1838 General Order to Brigadier General Robert Wilson.....	204
7 November 1838 To Excellency LW Boggs.....	205
10 November 1838 To Excellency LW Boggs.....	206
11 November 1838 To Excellency LW Boggs.....	209
12 November 1838 To Maj. Gen. Clark about Adam-Ondi-Ahman.....	210
12 November 1838 To Maj. Gen. Whitlock.....	212
14 November 1838 To Governor Boggs.....	212
14 November 1838 To Gov. Boggs about Far West.....	214
23 November 1838 Letter about Mormon Surrender.....	216
25 November 1838 To General Clark.....	216
28 November 1838 To Senate about Hauns Mill.....	218
Appendix H – Nauvoo.....	220
Remembering the Martyrdom.....	220

Illustrations

Presbyterian church Log Cabin.....	66
Virginia County map for 1770.....	66
Letterhead of the French Colonial Administration.....	111
Carlos IV, King of Spain and the Indies.....	111
Marquis de Barbe-Barbois.....	113
Robert R. Livingston.....	113
James Monroe.....	113
William Claiborne.....	114
General James Wilkinson.....	114
Pierre Laissat.....	114
General Lafayette.....	115
Myra Clark Gaines Whitehurst.....	116
Napoleon.....	117
Embroidered Bee.....	117
Napoleon Death Mask.....	118
Map of Louisiana Purchase.....	119
New Orleans, 1815, by Herbert Morton Stoops.....	130
Map of positions for the Battle of Crooked River.....	137
Amasa Lyman.....	140
Housing Plat Map of Goose Creek.....	143
Map of Battle of Crooked River.....	147
Hauns Mill Massacre.....	164
The Arrest of Mormon Leaders.....	165
Liberty Jail.....	166
Joseph and Emma's Home in Nauvoo.....	221
Sunset over Mississippi River.....	222
Joseph's Front Gate.....	223
Flora on Nauvoo Temple grounds.....	224
Plowed fields on Joseph's property.....	225
Martyrdom Trail.....	226
Carthage Jail.....	227
Room Joseph was killed.....	228
Stair well the mob came in painted faces.....	229
Room where Hyrum Smith laid dead.....	230
Well Joseph's body was placed by mob.....	231
Statue of Joseph and Hyrum.....	232

FORWARD

“Behold, I will send you Elijah the prophet before the coming of the great and dreadful day of the Lord: And he shall turn the heart of the fathers to the children, and the heart of the children to their fathers, lest I come and smite the earth with a curse” (Malachi 4:5 – 6).

I have always felt in my heart this scripture meant more than finding names and dates of our ancestors. It is the Lord wanting us, as children, to know our ancestors. As we do this we learn about ourselves, we find a love for a person we’ve never met, and we turn our hearts to our fathers.

I have coupled the life of John Wood with history, because of my strong belief that psychological predisposition and environmental behavior impinge on an individual. I start my thesis by giving brief information on John’s forefathers, then I discuss John Wood and the lives of those close to him, who were an influence in his life.

Those who descend from John Wood will learn to love him as I have. The great man he was while he was on this earth. Though I have spent several years researching his life, there is much I will never know about him. Turning your hearts to your fathers is a continuous study, and as we document what we learn about our forefathers, and document our own lives, we also turn our hearts to our children.

I would like to share a poem that expresses this well, titled *The Dash*, written by Linda Ellis.

I read of a reverend who stood to speak
at the funeral of a friend.
He referred to the dates on her tombstone
from the beginning ...to the end.

He noted that first came the date of her birth
and spoke of the following date with tears,
but he said what mattered most of all
was the *dash* between those years.

For that dash represents all the time
That she spent alive on earth...
And now only those who loved her
Know what that little line is worth.

For it matters not, how much we own;
The cars.... The house....the cash.
What matters is how we live and love
And how we *spend our dash*.

So think about this long and hard....
Are there things you'd like to change?
For you never know how much time is left.
(You could be at "dash mid-range")

If we could just slow down enough
To consider what's true and real,
And always try to understand
The way other people feel.

And be less quick to anger,
And show appreciation more
And love the people in our lives
Like we've never loved before.

If we treat each other with respect,
And more often wear a smile....
Remembering that this special dash
Might only last a little while.

So, when your eulogy's being read
with your life's actions to rehash....
Would you be proud of the things they say
About how you spent your dash?

Linda Ellis

Study the dash of John Wood and his family, as you read about their lives you will turn your heart toward your fathers and your fathers will turn their hearts toward you.

CHAPTER ONE

INTRODUCTION

When you know your past, you understand yourself, the past being one's heritage, not just one's cultural heritage, but one's family behavioral heritage. All families have behavioral characteristics and attributes, handed down from generation to generation. All individuals have many blood lines running through their veins, each line carrying with it behavioral traits that are passed down.

I have researched John Wood's life for many years, I find his persistence, determination and courage very appealing. As I unfold the events in his life, as you see how he never gave up on anything when walking away would be easier, you too will find his life appealing.

I have coupled events in his life with history, because environment has a significant influence on each individual. One's reaction to environment is based on past experience, developed life skill, and family behavioral traits. Learning of the Wood line may be only a drop in a tall glass, because we are influenced by several ancestral lines. Having been greatly influenced by the thing I learned, I believe they can also have an impact on readers who aren't directly related to the Wood family. Any family member can find a part of him-or-herself in the life of John Wood.

There is an excellent poem titled, *Family Tree* that expresses these same ideals, the author unfortunately is unknown.

I started out calmly, tracing my tree,
To see if I could find the makings of me.
And all that I had was Great Grandfather's name,
Not knowing his wife or from whence he came.

I chased him across a long line of states,
And came up with pages and pages of dates.
When all put together, it made me forlorn,
Poor old Great-Grandpa had never been born.

One day I was sure the truth I had found,
Determined to turn this whole thing upside down.
I looked up the record of one Uncle John,
But then found the old man to be younger than his son.

Then when my hopes were fast growing dim,
I came across records that must have been him.
The facts I collected made me quite sad,
Dear Old Great-Grandfather was never a Dad.

It seems that someone is pulling my leg,
I'm not all sure I wasn't hatched from an egg.
After hundreds of dollars I've spent on my tree,
I can't help but wonder if I'm really me.

Author Unknown

Read about John Wood and his forefathers and find out who you really are. I will leave you with this comment by Ray Kohler, "A PARADOXICAL MOSAIC This work represents a mosaic, one that I fashioned but not of my creation. The lives that have been assembled to form this mosaic are not unique to my past; they appear repeatedly as elements in other works of art. Somehow I am a combination of this past. I have been influenced by those I did not know in ways I will never understand".

CHAPTER TWO

COMING TO AMERICA

The Wood family has many traits and qualities admired by those with whom they associate. They come from Ireland a country known for its strong minded and strong willed people. John Wood has those qualities as well, but found his family and religion to be primary, and he would and had, without hesitation put his life on the line for both. Knowing our family and their past helps us find out who we are. Don Bluth said it best: "The keys to your identity are found in the past. You must gather them up. You will need to unlock the doors to your future" (Rootsweb). The keys in the Wood family are easily identifiable; the reader will recognize a few of them in John Wood's life: the significance of religion, family, using his persistence, determination and courage to further the Lord's work and strengthen his family. These are not all the strong behavioral traits, but those which shine through from generation to generation. These are the ones you will be able to identify in John Wood, up through his great great grandfather Richard Dubois Wood.

Richard Dubois Wood

Before coming to America family lore has it that John's great great grandfather Sir Richard Dubois Wood¹, was a Huguenot² in France. Richard Dubois was dubbed a Sir by the King of France³⁴. Huguenots were a protestant religious organization. At one point Huguenots were highly regarded, then they were chased out of France into Germany, the Netherlands and England. Dubois means "The Wood" and it is believed when he moved to England he took on the name Wood. From England Richard moved to Ireland before 1720. Though we do not know who Richard married we know he had a son named Thomas Dubois Wood.

Thomas Dubois Wood

Thomas was born in Ireland in 1720. He married Mary Ann Cuttle in 1742 in Ireland, had all four of his children in Ireland and then sometime before 1760 he moved with his family to America. He died in York, Pennsylvania in 1760.

Richard Wood

Richard Wood was born in Sligo, Ireland about 1744. Sligo was made up of six baronies; Carbury, Tireragh, Leyney, Corran, Tirerrill, and Coolavin. The only barony with 'Wood' named residents was Tireragh. Richard lived with his family here in Sligo until sometime between 1749 and 1760. Sligo has many legends⁵ that shares some of the

history of Sligo, but a short history of Sligo can be found on the internet at, <http://www.rootsweb.com/~irlsli/index2.html>, it reads,

This Connaught County contains the towns of Sligo, Ballymote Collooney, Ballysdare, Enniscrone. Sligo was the ancestral territory of a branch of the O'Connors, called O'Connor Sligo. Other Galic families associated with the county include; O'Down, O'Hara, O' Hart, McDonagh, Mac Firbis, O'Coleman. The site of the town of Sligo has been a strategic importance since ancient times as all traffic on the coastal route between South and North had to ford the River here. A fortress which guarded this ford was plundered by Norse pirates as early as A.D. 807. After the Norman invasion of Connacht in 1235, Sligo was granted, to Maurice Fitzgerald who effectively founded Sligo town by building a castle there in 1245 and making it his residence. The Taaffe family was among the Norman families who settled in the county. Further settlers were brought into the county at various periods, including weavers from the north of Ireland brought in by Lord Shelbourne in 1749. You can see the beauty of Sligo by the following pictures.



Illustration of Sligo, Ben Bulben



Illustration of Sligo, Strandhill



Illustration of Sligo Knock na Ree

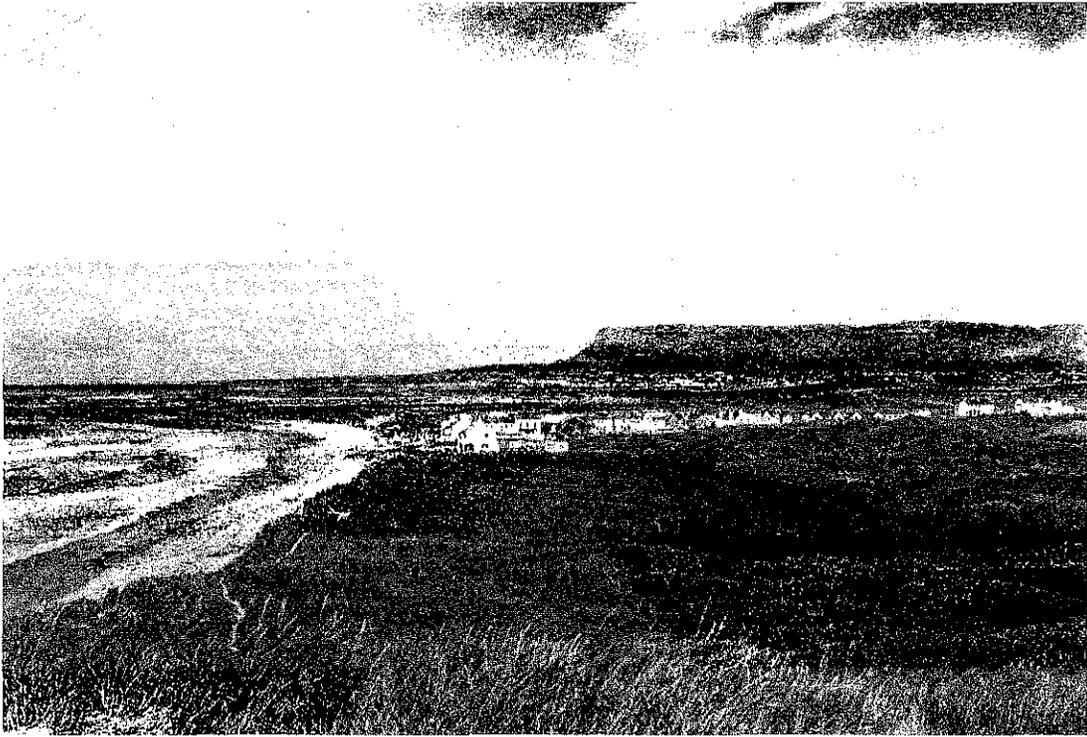


Illustration of Sligo Strandhill and Ben Bulben (circ 1989)

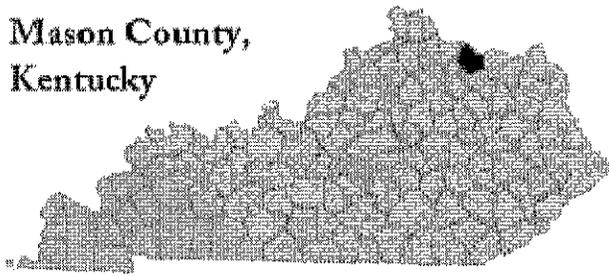
In 1649 when Oliver Cromwell seized England Protestant Europeans poured into Dublin, it began to grow in population and economics and soon became the number two city in the British empire. Despite the size, the protestants still denied the Roman Catholics of basic civil rights. Because of the suppression that the Catholics endured they became impoverished. By 1704 the Penal law was enacted and Catholics were barred from voting, education and the military. It is believed that the Penal laws reduced the Roman Catholics to "sub humans". The law indicated that when property was to be inherited, if one child was protestant that child received all the property. If all the children were Catholic, it was divided evenly among them, this reduced Catholics as landowners.

<http://www.irelandsown.net/irishblue.html>

<http://www.ireland-information.com/articles/historyofireland.htm>

<http://www.dublinuncovered.net/history.html>

Mason County, Kentucky



After Richard's and Mary's wedding they spent a short while in New York where their first child Elizabeth was born. They later settled in Mason County, Kentucky, a short distance from where the famed Daniel Boone¹⁰ settled. The remainder of their children were born and raised in Mason County, which it is also believed Richard and Mary were buried¹¹. Richard's Irish Strengths were passed down to his son Allen Wood.

Allen Wood

Allen showed much Courage by joining American forces and fighting in the American Revolutionary War as a soldier¹². Allen was born about 1773, in Kentucky County, Virginia¹³. Being a soldier in the American Revolution, he had many opportunities to show the 'fighting Irish' spirit.

Several years following the war Allen married his sweetheart Araminta¹⁴ Jane Porter, on 11 January 1797, in Mason County, Kentucky. They had three boys, John, Allen and Thomas. John and Allen were born in Mason , Kentucky, but the Wood family moved to Ohio before Thomas was born. This was a time in America when people had to show what they were made of and support their embryonic country and those in the lead. At this time in America George Washington just finished up his second term and pulled our country through some real economic problems, brought on by the revolutionary war. Those that stood up next to their brother, neighbor or friend and fought, was a man of honor, Allen was proud to be numbered among them.

CHAPTER NOTES

¹ For additional information on Richard Wood Dubois, see Appendix A.

² For additional information on Huguenots, see Appendix A.

³ Family Story. <http://wc.rootsweb.com/cgi-bin/igm.cgi?op=GET&db=:2719382&id=I531242741>

⁴ For additional information on Richard Wood, See Appendix C.

⁵ To see Sligo, Ireland Legends, see page 52 in Appendix C

⁶ Reference - <http://www.danielboonehomestead.org/history.htm>,
<http://earlyamerica.com/lives/boone/index.html>

⁷ For additional information On British Acts passed to insight the American Colonies, See Page 60 in Appendix C.

⁸ Records indicate the marriage took place in Mason County, Kentucky, but Mason County was not established until 1788, reference <http://www.kygenweb.net/mason/index.html>. Mason County was created out of Bourbon County, which was established 1785. Which was created out of Fayette County which was established 1780. Fayette County was created out of Kentucky County Va. See Appendix A for additional information.
<http://memory.loc.gov/ammem/collections/continental/timeline1d.html>

⁹ Reference - Family Story from Laurie Brandt. Rootsweb.com query page.

¹⁰ For additional information on Daniel Boone and his experiences see page 67 in Appendix C.

¹¹ No Death location is indicated, family believe they lived out their days in Mason, Kentucky.

¹² Reference is from Nancy Cendena Bagley-Willis's Journal. She stated, "My great grandfather Eli Bagley was a surgeon in the Revolutionary War and followed it to its close. My great grandfather John Belt was a teamster in the same war and my (great) grandfather Allen Wood was a soldier in the war". See appendix D, page 82 for more information on Virginia Revolutionary War soldiers.

¹³ Kentucky County Virginia was later known as Mason County, Kentucky.

¹⁴ First name also spelled Ara.

CHAPTER 3

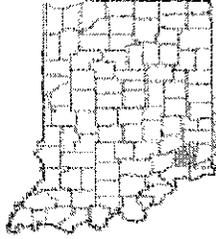
BIRTH AND BACKGROUND

In 1798, America was in it's embryonic form: The Revolutionary War has been fought and won, George Washington¹ has just completed his second term, John Adam's has been in office for one year, the turn from the eighteenth century to the nineteenth is about to happen, and on a very beautiful spring day in Kentucky², Tuesday, 1 May 1798, John Wood³ enters the world. Born in a time when America is young and growing pains are plenty, life presents many challenges for the Wood family at this time.

Two years following John's birth, the Wood family welcomes another brother, Aaron Wood, born about 1800 in Kentucky. During this time, 1803, the United States purchases a large bit of land from France that extends from Montana down at an angle towards a state we now call Louisiana, this was called the Louisiana purchase⁴. Lewis and Clark took on the task of exploring this new land purchase in 1804. Now with this going on and despite problems with the Indians, the Wood family ventures north, to Ohio, before 1805, where John's youngest brother, Thomas, is born. The Wood family expansion stopped with Thomas.

John was taught many skills from his parents, the most important being; how to work hard and dedication to a cause. As a young man, John was said to have been well built, stood over six feet tall in his stocking feet and was an athlete⁵. He loved to dance the fishers hornpipe⁶ and played the violin so well, he would play it behind his back for his family⁷. John Wood really had a love for music. John's hard work and dedication to developing his athletic and music ability was instrumental in his development as an honorable man, friend, and citizen.

When John was 14, the English thought they would make another push to get back the country they lost a few years prior, we call this, The War of 1812⁸. Following the war of 1812, John's father wanted to continue moving west, so he packed his family and adventured into Ripley county, Indiana, settling in a town called Napoleon, prior to 1821⁹. The United States had expanded to the Mississippi River in 1780, but Ripley County Indiana had only been created in 1816, close to the time of the Wood family Arrival. James Monroe was president during this time. Though Indiana was not having problems with the Native Americans specifically, the President was pushing for a law to drive them west of the Mississippi. President Monroe was unsuccessful in his plight due to states rights. Though we were not currently fighting the British for American soil, they were in constant conflict with the Native Americans for it.



A very special event occurred when John was 22, on the 24th of January 1821 he married Rebecca Belt. Rebecca was the daughter of John Belt and Nancy Ann Swaney¹¹ Belt. Her father, John Belt was also a Revolutionary War veteran, a teamster in Virginia. John Wood and Rebecca stayed in Napoleon, Ripley, Indiana, where they farmed¹² the land and delivered seven of nine children. Their first two children were twins, Elizabeth D Wood, called Betsy by her family, and Emma Wood¹³. They were born two years after John and Rebecca's marriage on 28th of April 1823. Though they had two wonderful babies Emma's life was cut short on this earth and she died in 1824.

The Wood family continues to grow in size and in faith. History tells us that in 1825, John Quincy Adams was elected President of the United States and in February of that year John and Rebecca brought Nancy Ann Wood into the world. The following year, while still living in Ripley, they added Lydia Ann Wood to their family. As they continued to farm their land another blessing was added in February 1829 the beautiful little Araminta Jane Wood, entered their home. She was called Ara by her family. That same year the Wood family was saddened by the loss of their young daughter Lydia. She died at the early age of three. Though life expectancy was short during this time period, a loss of a child is always very difficult. Through their faith and love for the Lord, they got through this trying time. In February 1831 the Wood family grew when Margaret Serena was added. The Wood family grew in size and in faith as they added and lost members of their little family.

In the early 1830's, Rebecca's sister Nancy Ann Bagley was living in Decatur county Indiana with her family. John and Rebecca decided to make a move to Decatur. The move was not far, as Decatur County sits on it's boarder northwest of Ripley. Just after moving to Decatur Mary Bell was born, 22 March 1833. Almost a year after Mary Bell was born on 31 January 1834 that John bought eight acres from Eliakim and Hannah Bagley for \$100.00.

"On 31 January 1834, Eli Bagley senior and Hannah his wife sold yo John Wood for "the sum of one hundred dollars."...that certain tract ore parcel of land situated and lying in Sand Creed Township Decatur County, Indiana being in the east half of the north west quarter of section number nine in township number eight north of range number nine in Township number eight north of range number nine east containing eighty acres, strict measure, in the district of Jeffersonville..."¹⁴



It was about the time Serelda was born, in 1835 that John and Rebecca heard about a strange religion, being religious people themselves, they wanted to hear more¹⁵.

They soon joined a strange religion and believed its precepts, the religion was called, the Church of Jesus Christ of Latter Day Saints, and they followed a Prophet of God by the name of Joseph Smith. Rebecca's sister Nancy Ann and her husband Eli Bagley joined the church at this time as well¹⁶. John and Rebecca loved the Prophet Joseph Smith and was willing to make the sacrifices he asked of them. The love John and Rebecca shared from the time they married would only grow stronger, though their lives would all soon be in peril. America was still young, their new religion was still young and they were willing to make the sacrifices needed for their young Prophet.

CHAPTER NOTES

¹ See Appendix E for more information on George Washington's presidency.

² It is undocumented exactly where he was born though it is believed to have been in Mason County, Kentucky.

³ See Appendix E for more information on John Wood.

⁴ See Appendix E for more information on the Louisiana purchase.

⁵ As quoted by his granddaughter Nancy Cedenia Bagley-Willis.

⁶ For more information about the Fishers Hornpipe see Appendix E.

⁷ Family Story

⁸ For more information on the War of 1812 see Appendix E.

⁹ See Appendix E for more a short history on Ripley, Indiana.

¹⁰ The picture is of the state of Indiana, the darkened area is where Ripley County is located in Indiana.

¹¹ Variant – Nancy Ann's last name – Sweeny, Sweany.

¹² Emanuel Bagley Willis Journal.

¹³ There is no birth day or month given, just a year which is 1823. It is this writer's hypothesis that Elizabeth and Emma were twins due to the fact there is no other biological conclusion. Specifically when Emma passed the year following.

¹⁴ Book D, page 106, Early Land Records.

¹⁵ The exact date of joining the Church of Jesus Christ of Latter Day Saints is unknown. Family Stories say it was in the day of Joseph Smith. By what we know it seems to be around 1835, though it could have been sooner because when Zion's camp went through Indiana in 1834, it was indicated there were Saints living in Indiana at the time. They could have joined as early as 1831, because Nancy Cedina Bagley-Willis is quoted as saying, "Mary's parents were Latter –Day Saints. They moved to Jackson County, Missouri, in 1837." What is wrong with that statement is, though the Saints began to

enter Jackson County in 1831, they were driven from Jackson County, Missouri in 1833. Since Serelda was born in 1835 in Indiana, we know that the Woods did not go to Jackson County. After the Saints expulsion from Jackson County they went north into Clay County. This is where the famed Liberty jail is that Joseph Smith was housed three times. John and Rebecca could have joined the Church of Jesus Christ of Latter Day Saints as early as 1831 or as late as 1836. What we do know is they lived in Far West, Caldwell County, Missouri about, the summer of 1836 (which is when the Saints moved to Far West).

¹⁶ It is unknown if the Bagley or the Wood family joined the church of Jesus Christ of Latter Day Saints first. All that is known is both families joined before 1836, based on coupling their migration patterns, family stories with historical events.

CHAPTER 4

JOHN AND REBECCA MOVE TO MISSOURI

John and Rebecca, following the council of their Prophet Joseph Smith, moved to Missouri. They first moved to Far West, Caldwell¹, Missouri. Far West was first settled in the summer of 1836, Saints were coming from all over the United States and Canada to live in Far West. Before the Wood's family moved to Missouri, the Saints had already endured much hardship. Though the Saints believed after they had been chased from State to State that Missouri would be their Zion, their place of peace and John and Rebecca wanted to help build that Zion with other Latter Day Saints and their Prophet.

THE SAINTS IN MISSOURI

Jackson County

The Saints moved to Missouri in 1831, they first moved to Independence, Jackson County, some called it the New Jerusalem. The Missourians were a rough – and - ready group of people, the bottom of the dredges type. This did not stop them from accepting the Mormons. Everything was peaceful for about two years. Though it is unknown exactly why the Missourians became uncomfortable with the Saints, what is known is hundreds of Saints flocked to Jackson County from all over the United States and Canada which may have added to the agitation of the Missourian lifestyle. Not only religious differences, cultural differences and political differences factored into this equation. The Saints had a different way of doing things then what the Missourians were used to. The people of Missouri started treating the Saints poorly, they mobbed them, tarred and feathered the men on occasion, threw them in jail on trumped up charges and started false rumors. It all started about July of 1833 when the Missourians started to become suspicious of the Saints. They saw that the Mormons had apathy for Indians, this was displeasing to the Missourian when they had just endured the Black Hawk Indian War². The religious leaders of the protestant churches felt some resentment toward this new church, political leaders noticed Mormons were soft on the slave issue, when clearly Missouri was a slave state. All this and other fears raised the anxiety level among the Missourians in Jackson County. As this anxiety began to rise the Missourians began to lash out at the Saints. A meeting was held on what to do with the Mormons, a 'Secret Constitution' was written. It was decided in the meeting that no more Mormons could move to Jackson County and the ones that currently lived there had to move out as soon

as possible with or without force. The Missourians became violent following this secret constitution, they first destroyed the Saints printing house, then the mobs started attacking the Saints by dragging the men out of their homes whipping them and then pouring hot tar on them and then covering the tar with feathers. This was meant to humiliate the Saints. The Saints not wanting to give up their Zion still try to maintain their property and homes contacted the Governor, he was no help. The Saints were driven unmercifully from their homes in the middle of November, some walked in bare feet and it is said by some it was easy to follow the Saints by the trail of blood³. John and Rebecca were in Indiana during these events.⁴

Clay County

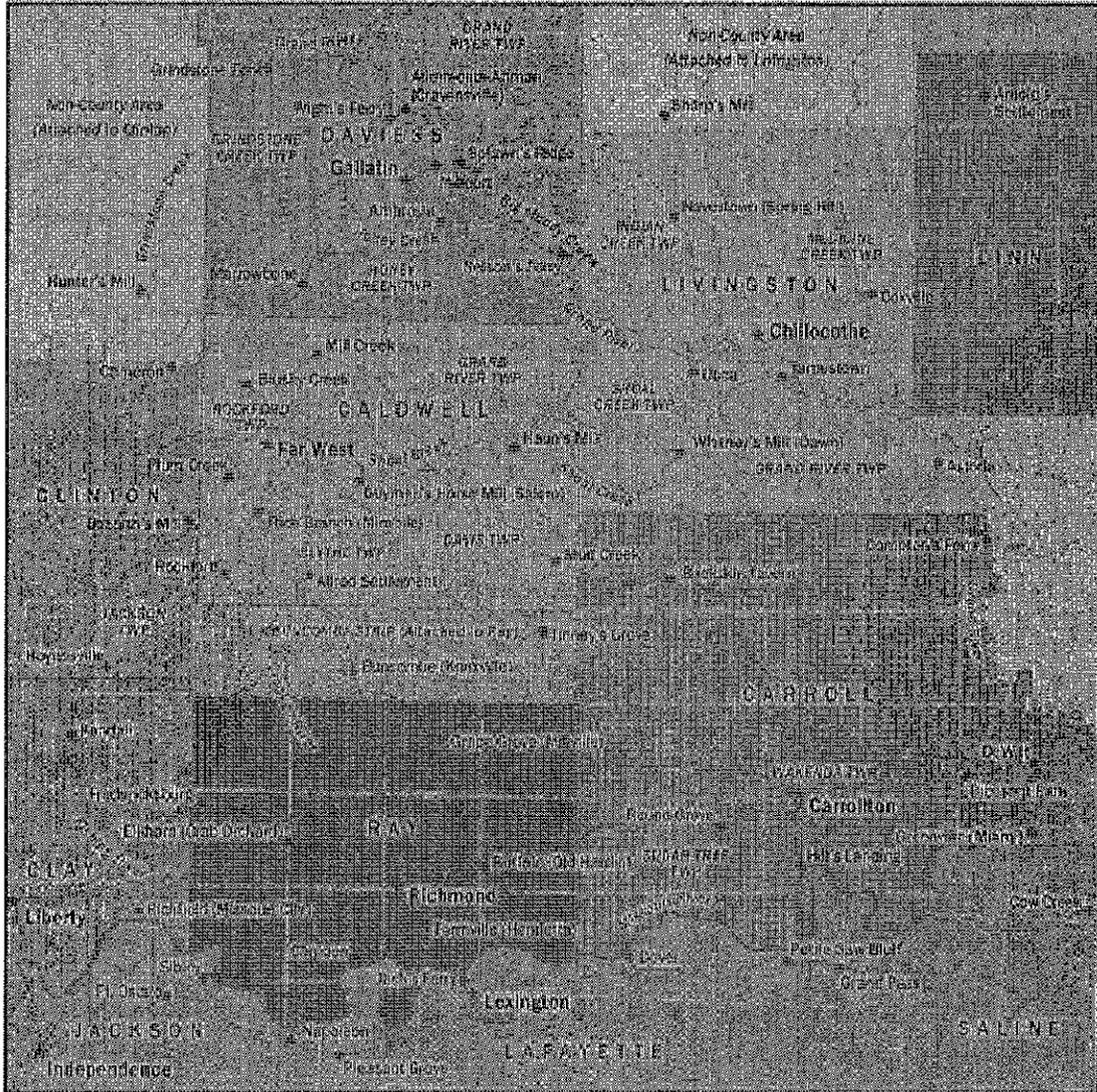
The Saints settled temporarily in Clay County until they could regain their property, in Jackson County. The Saints continued writing Governor Dunklin for their lands, still he gave them no hope. In March of 1834, Joseph organized a group of Saints in Kirtland, Ohio to march down to Missouri to help the Saints there. History calls this group, Zion's Camp, which consisted of 207 people. Zion's Camp left Ohio May of 1834, marched through Indiana and Illinois to Missouri, arriving in Missouri in June. The people in Zion's camp helped the Saints in Missouri the best they could, though the numbers did not seem to change the minds of the government or people of Missouri. Zion's camp began their trek home in August of 1834.

Though at first the residents of Clay County were fine with the temporary arrangements of the Mormons, these same residents became unsettled when the efforts of the Mormons to return to Jackson County seemed unlikely. Though their pleadings with the government fell on deaf ears and their requests for the return of their land kept being turned down, the Saints would not give up. Because of this unsettled feeling in Clay County, WW Phelps and Edward Partridge were sent out to explore northern Missouri. The area referred to as Far West, was prairie land and the Saints were looking for wooded area to build homes. Things began to heat up for the Saints when a "mass meeting" was held at the Clay County courthouse in Liberty, this group developed a list of five objections to the Saints and followed it up with one solution. Objection 1, The Mormons were poor. Objection 2, their religious differences stirred up prejudice. Objection 3, Their Eastern customs and dialect were alien to Missourians, Objection 4, they opposed slavery and Objection 5, they believed Indians were God's chosen people destined to inherit the land of Missouri with them. Their solution for the Saints was simple, move to Wisconsin.⁵ Joseph Smith got wind of the Clay County resident's solution and wrote a letter to the church leaders in Missouri and told them not to move to Wisconsin. The church leaders in Missouri wrote a letter of gratitude to the leaders of Clay County for the kindness shown by their residents and let them know they desired peace. The Saints moved north to Ray county hoping once again to find peace.

Ray County

The church leaders purchased 1600 acres of prairie land in northern Ray County. Far West at this time was in the northern part of Ray County on Shoal creek and 12 miles west of Hauns Mill. The Saints sent a letter to the governor asking for

protection while living there and he replied he could not help them. In December of 1836 Daviess and Caldwell county were newly created. The Saints began to pour into Caldwell County from all over, among them were John and Rebecca Wood and their little family.



Before Far West was even built problems among the Saints began. Tithes were sent from the Saints in Kentucky and Tennessee to help build Zion in Missouri. These tithes of \$1450 were given by Thomas Marsh and Elisha Groves to the counselors of the Stake Presidency in Caldwell County, WW Phelps and John Whitmer. In the unpleasing sight of the Lord WW Phelps and John Whitmer took the money purchased the required land and then sold it to the Saints for a profit, the profit they kept for themselves. This dastardly deed was known unto the Saints and the prophet Joseph Smith and contention arose. Edward Partridge, David Patten and Thomas B. Marsh distributed the lands among the Saints. The Prophet inquired of the Lord while in Kirtland at what to do and

felt strongly he should join the Saints in Far West, Missouri. The Lord did let Joseph know that if WW Phelps and John Whitmer did not repent they would be “removed out of their places”. At the conference in Kirtland, Ohio in September 1837, it was decided that Joseph Smith and Sidney Rigdon would go to Far West to help resolve this issue and help build up Zion. John and Rebecca living in the area of Far West had to bury their eight year old daughter, Araminta Jane Wood.⁶ This problem of contention between the Saints continued until November 1837.⁷

Joseph Smith was disheartened by the problems among the Saints in Missouri and with the Missourians themselves. As previously decided, Joseph and Emma, who was six months pregnant, headed for Missouri to start their new home in early 1838. Soon after his arrival in Missouri, Joseph Smith worked industriously to put the church in order. He asked David W. Patten to get his affairs in order so he could plan on a mission “abroad” in 1839, one he would fulfill in a manner unexpected by all. Joseph Smith reorganized the stake in Far West, seeing with sadness some of his dear friends apostatize from the church and move on. In April 1838 it was here in Far West that Joseph received revelation to call the church, “The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints”, as it was previously called, “The Church of Christ”. Soon after his organization of Far West he moved on to Daviess County and the lands being purchased there by the Saints.

Adam Ondi Ahman

Joseph went to an area purchased by Lyman Wight, helped lay out the city when he received inspiration from the Lord that this is where Adam, the first man to live on the earth, gathered his posterity together three years before his death and gave them their final father’s blessing. This area was called Adam-ondi-Ahman, meaning “Valley of God, where Adam dwelt” and is in the original language Adam and Eve spoke. This place would be significant as explained in the ‘Doctrine and Covenants’

Adam-Ondi-Ahman will yet be the location of a very important meeting for selected righteous people to greet the Savior. In the words of the revelation, “It is the place where Adam shall come to visit his people, or the Ancient of Days shall sit, as spoken of by Daniel the prophet” (D& C 116:1).

This excited the members of the Church and they worked to establish a stake in this location. This is where Joseph would counsel the Ohio Saints to settle. Though things looked bleak when Joseph arrived, they started to look better among the Saints in Missouri, as a prophet of God was now with them. John and Rebecca Wood along with Rebecca’s sister, Nancy Ann and her husband Eli Bagley moved to Adam-Ondi-Ahman about this same time. Things were good for a while. Eli “bought out a farmer who lived a few miles from Diahman, as this was it’s nick-name, and all he had, crops horses, cattle, hogs, chickens and turkeys. He bought the corn that was that was in the crib, the pork in the smoke house and the honey in the barrel”⁸, it was in an area called Spring Hill. John being musically inclined, kept his family entertained by playing his violin and dancing the fishers hornpipe. All was well in Zion as some might say.

Mormon War Heats up *Election Day*

Then August 6, 1838 it started with elections in Gallatin, mobs combined. Joseph Smith once said, "No unhallowed hand can stop the work from progressing, persecutions may rage, mobs may combine and armies may assemble, calmly may defame, but the work will go forth boldly nobly and independently, until it is accomplished and the great Jehovah shall say the work is done". It was this day that started a snowball effect of persecutions raging, mobs combining and armies assembling. In an article in the Contributor, titled The Missouri Persecutions, dated June 1886 we read:

The tremble at Gallatin election revealed to the Saints of Diahman the disagreeable truth that their enemies were plotting against them. Those of the Saints who had passed through the persecutions in Jackson County viewed the situation with quickening pulse. As they knew by sad experience how ungodly cruel a mob could be. While some of their leading men were entering into covenants of peace, others of them were planning the destruction of the Saints.

Dr. Austin, of Carroll County who had demanded mob forces about Diahman at least part of them, he exclaimed his forces insufficient to drive out the brethren from Diahman: So he conceived the idea of striking a blow in another quarter. In the southeast part of Carroll County about fifty miles South East of Far West end near the point where Grand River empties into the Missouri the little settlement is called Dewitt.

In the book Church History in the Fulness of Times we read more on the Election Day Battle at Gallatin;

In 1831 a family named Peniston had become the first white settlers in what was to become Daviess County. The next year they built a mill on the Grand River to grind flour and meal for incoming settlers. They developed the village of Millport. When the county was created in 1836, there were still fewer than a hundred settlers. The town of Gallatin was platted to serve as the county seat, and as it grew, Millport, three miles to the east, declined. The Saints poured into Diahman, some four miles north of Gallatin, in the summer of 1838. They quickly began to outnumber the gentiles in Daviess County.

The year 1838 was an election year. The original settlers naturally wanted to elect a state legislator who was one of their own. William Peniston, a staunch foe of the Saints, was a candidate. He was afraid that with the rapid influx of Mormons, he would not win the election because most Church members supported John A Williams. About two weeks before the election, Judge Joseph Morin of Millport advised two elders of the Church to go to the polls prepared for an attack by mobbers determined to prevent Mormons from voting. The election

was to be held on Monday, 6 August, in Gallatin which was at the time merely a straggling row of ten houses, three of which were saloons.

The Saints went to the polls to vote in Gallatin, but they were unprepared, they did not follow the counsel given to them by Judge Joseph Morin. The mobbers and hecklers were making false comments about the Saints and their leaders in hopes it would rouse the crowd against the Mormons. They said, "The Mormon leaders are a set of horse thieves, liars, counterfeiterers, and you know they profess to heal the sick, and cast out devils, and you all know that is a lie". Though election days were never of an orderly sort, this made things even worse. These false statements had a snowball effect and mobbers were successful in inciting a fight against the Mormons. The Saints worked hard to defend themselves, but as fate would have it, few Mormons were able to vote that day and those inciting the crowd against the Mormons, lost the election.

Distorted stories got back to the Saints in Far West that a few of their brethren had been killed and this only added fuel to the already ignited fire. The Prophet and about 20 others rode from Far West to Daviess County to help the Saints, by the time they got to Diahmon they found the exaggerated rumors were only that. This anger and hatred began to build both on the side of the Saints and that of the "Gentiles". As stories similar to this one began to flare both sides, the Saints were led to small battles with the Missourians, which ultimately history would call, the Mormon War.

Dewitt and Adam-Ondi-Ahman

The expulsion of the Mormons from Missouri started in early October 1838. First, the Saints were pushed out of Dewitt, Carroll County, among this group of Saints were, William Wesley Willis, his family and his brother Joshua Thomas Willis. They scattered between Far West and Adam-Ondi-Ahman. The mobs, now encouraged by their success in Dewitt, thought they would continue their treachery upon the Saints on 17th and 18th of October 1838 in Adam-Ondi-Ahman. Though it is unknown what part John and Rebecca had during this time, their hearts broke for their friends and family as they endured a hell only one who was there could explain. As the mobs arrived in Adam-Ondi-Ahman they found sadistic pleasure in, burned homes and tying the Saints to trees and whipping them unmercifully. Eli and Nancy Ann Bagley, family to John and Rebecca Wood, lived outside of Diahmon. Upon hearing of a mob in Diahmon, Eli got on his horse and rode in that direction to help the Saints, when he was stopped by a neighbor. The rider told Eli, he did not have enough time to help the people of Diahmon, because the mob was in the process of burning his house and would be heading for Eli's home next. He admonished Eli to get his family and get out. So Eli headed home and gathered his family, got them in the buckboard driven by oxen, and in his haste forgot to get food or the cow for milk. He took his family to the wilderness so they would be safe. Upon thinking his family would need food and milk for his children he headed back to his house, when he arrived the mob was already there burning his home. As Eli went to get the cow to take to his family the mob stopped him and took all that he had. When he begged for the cow so his children would have milk to drink the mobbers laughed and told him they should shoot him, but they only shot and killed the cow. Eli wept like a baby, returning to his family on foot, he had nothing for his family.⁹

Battle of Crooked River

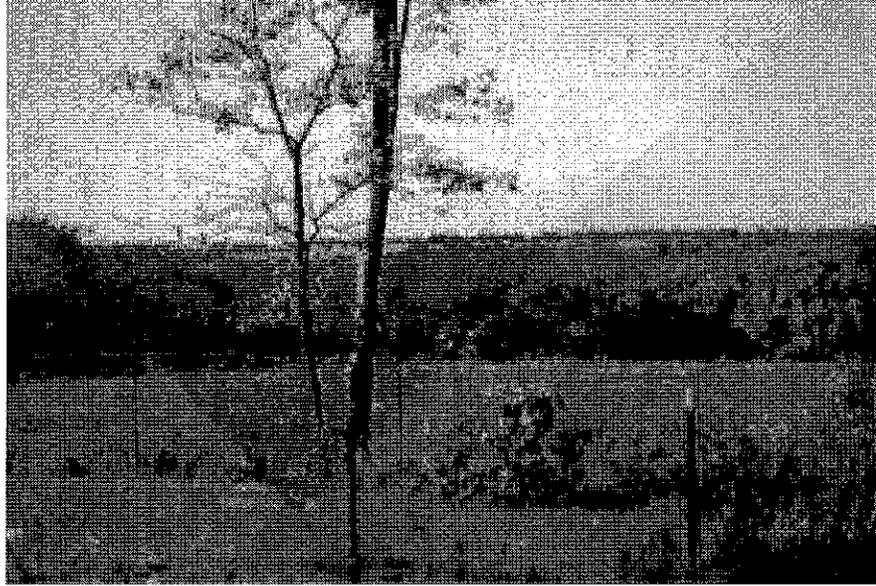
What was to happen the next few days to the Saints, can only be described as a nightmare. John and Rebecca at some point prior to this time moved down to Far West and John was involved in what history now calls, "The Battle of Crooked River". On Thursday, 25 October 1838 men were gathered as it was believed some of their fellow Saints were being held captive by some rather precarious Missourians. History calls this, "The Battle of Crooked River". The following is quoted from, <http://www.zionslight.com/ray/crkrvr.html>.

Following the fight over voting rights in Gallatin in August 1838, relations between the Saints and their neighbors deteriorated rapidly. The situation became so tense that the Ray County Militia, under the command of Captain Samuel Bogart, was mobilized on October 24, 1838. Two Latter-day Saints were captured as "spies" that same day. Word of the capture reached Far West later in the evening, and the drums called out the Caldwell (LDS) Militia at midnight to rescue the captured men.

The brethren, under the command of C.C. Rich and David W. Patten (at that time President of the Quorum of the Twelve), caught up with the Ray Countians near dawn on the 25th, at a ford on the Crooked River. Bogart's men were well hidden in the underbrush along the south bank, and the Latter-day Saints were well silhouetted by the rising sun, making their approach obvious and dangerous. A short exchange of gunfire ensued, during which the Missourians became convinced that the Saints were here to fight for themselves, and departed the field poste haste, leaving their prisoners behind. But not before wounding several of the men that were easy targets in the early morning light.

On several occasions, Elder Patten had expressed to the Prophet his wish to die for the faith. Brother Joseph once sadly rejoined him to be careful what he prayed for, because when one as righteous as he prayed for something, the Lord would almost always grant it. David Patten was gravely wounded that day at Crooked River, and was taken to the home of Stephen Winchester, where several hours later the Lord granted his wish to be a martyr for the Gospel in this dispensation. He was the first.

Today the battle site is on private property, inaccessible by public roads. Here is a picture of the countryside where the men of Far West chased down and found the Ray County Militia:



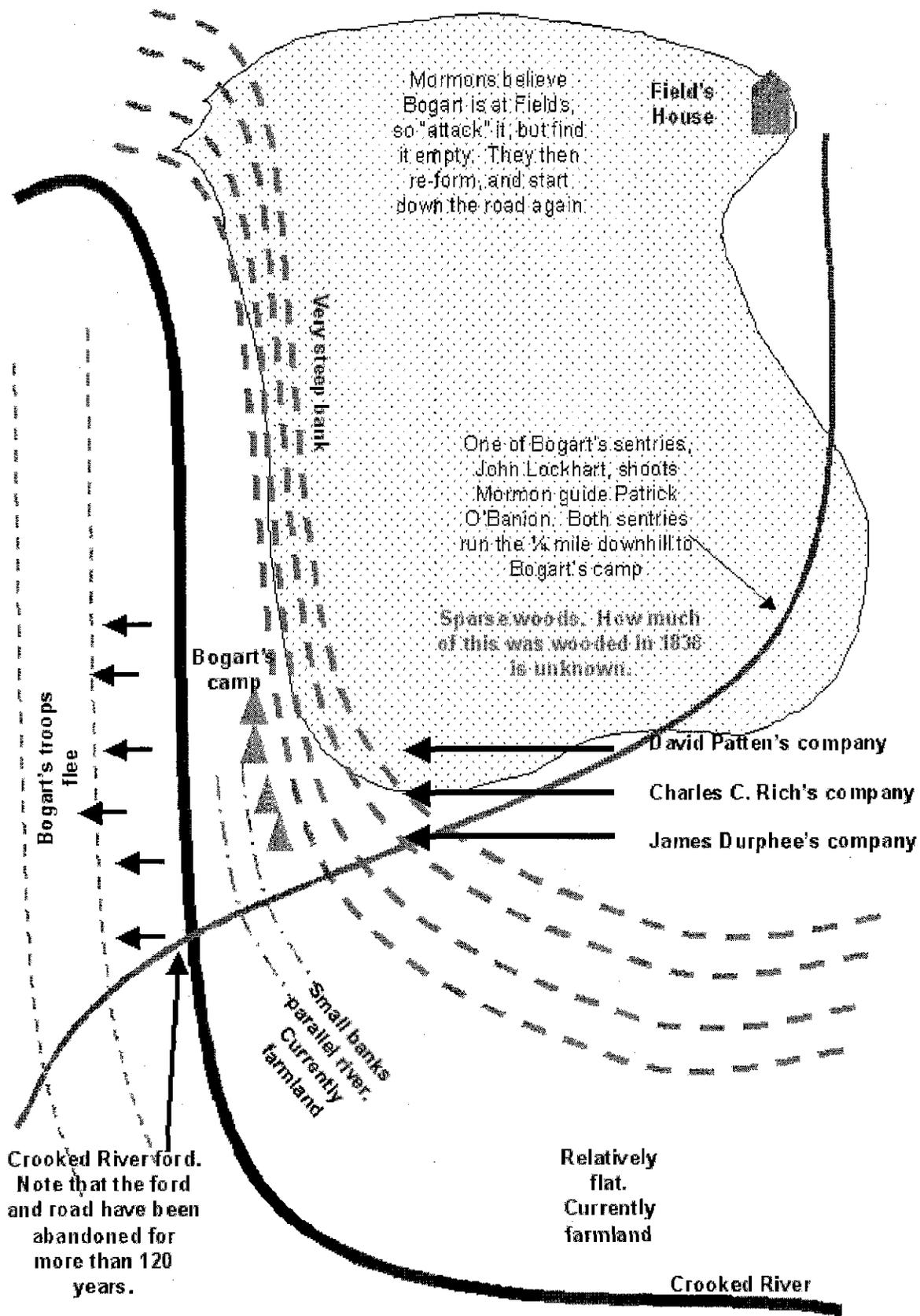
This shot was taken on a hill above the River, not far from the battle site. The road suddenly becomes impassible here as it goes down the hill toward the river. This picture is looking north, toward Caldwell County. The site is a few miles northeast of Lawson, Missouri.



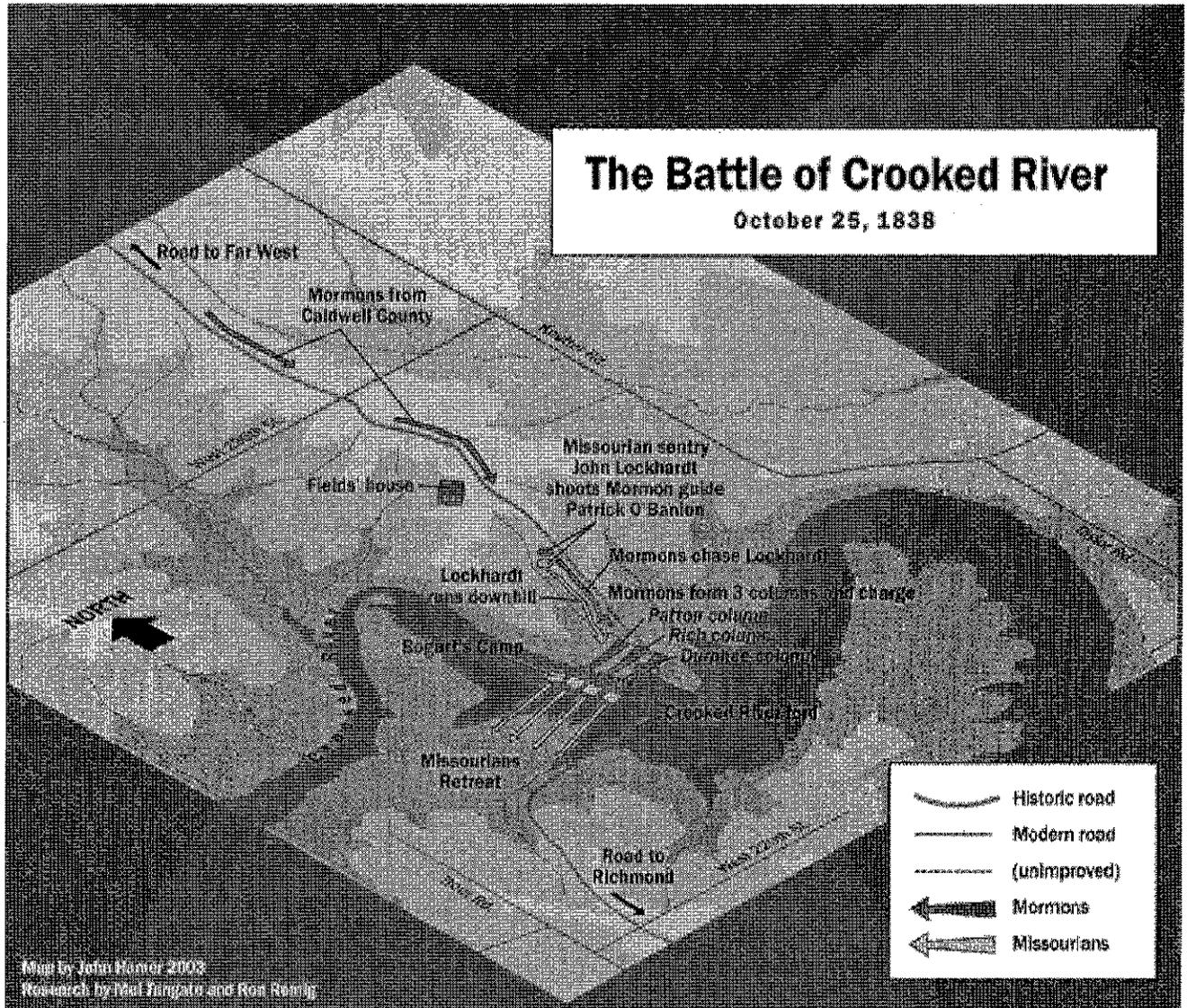
Above is a picture of the Crooked River, looking in the direction in which the battle took place. The actual site is unmarked.

John Wood living in the area at the time joined 49 other Saints in the battle of Crooked River. He was there when David Patton the Apostle was killed and helped carry Gideon Carter home after the battle was over. John would later say that when they looked at Gideon Carter they did not know it was him at first because his face was so disfigured.¹⁰

Map of the Battle of Crooked River: Copied from
http://www.tungate.com/crooked_river.htm.



John Hamer's professionally drawn map:



The Crooked River battle site is 14 miles north, and six miles west, of Richmond Missouri. It is 12 miles due south of Far West Missouri.¹¹

Hauns Mill Massacre

After the Battle of Crooked River things for the Saints only got worse. On 27 October 1838 Governor Boggs got word that the Mormons were becoming violent. He signed the infamous *Extermination Order*, this gave all Missourians the privilege to kill Mormons on sight, no questions asked. This order was in effect until 1976, when it was rescinded. Following the extermination order, the prophet Joseph Smith encouraged the Saints to gather in either Far West or Adam-Ondi-Ahman. Saints were coming from

Ohio and stopped at Hauns Mill to rest for a few days and Jacob Haun not following the counsel of the Prophet, encouraged those living in outlying areas to come to the Mill to stay until the heat died down. The mill had twenty to thirty families staying there when what was to happen is hard to speak about. These few families were mobbed by a group of 250 men. They came in shooting wanting to kill all the mormons, men, women and children and they had the law on their side to do it. As soon as the men came in and started shooting, everyone ran in different directions to get away. Upon returning the next day, parents searched for their children and children for their parents. In all 18 Saints had been murdered that day. One of the best stories read on this was a first hand experience by someone who was there; James McBride

One beautiful afternoon on the 30th day of October 1838, my father came home from meeting with the brethren at the mill. He talked with me, and told me the arrangements made. He was called to help to form the guard. I was sick at the time, with the every-other-day ague, and father said on my well day, I should take his place with the guard and that he would guard on the day that I was sick. That with himself and me, he wished to fill one man's place. You will remember my father was then in his sixty-third year. During the summer he had been very sick--but having recovered, appeared to feel very well; in fact I think he looked better than I had ever before saw him.

My sister Catherine was living at the mill with Hauns' family. Leaving only me and my youngest sister Dorcas, at home with father and mother.

Father was in good spirits, and his countenance wore a cheerful expression. Having shaved himself in his usual style, leaving side beards--and taking with him his guns and blankets, started on his return to the mill to join the rest of the guard. Mother, with sister Dorcas started to visit a neighbor woman, living about a quarter of a mile distant from father's place. This being the day on which I was sick, the next day I should have taken father's place with the guard. I was then in my twenty- first year.

The day was gradually passing--evening was coming on.

The large red sun so characteristic of an Indian summer, shone through the smokey atmosphere. All was still.

My father had but little more than got to the mill--in fact not more than thirty minutes had elapsed from the time he left the house, when a gun was heard--and another--followed by the deadly crack of musketry, which told too well the fate of all who fell a prey to the blood-thirsty mob.

Perhaps not more than six minutes had passed from the firing of the first gun, 'till the massacre was accomplished,--the bloody deed was done.

The firing ceased--the screams of mothers, daughters and the wounded, told the dreadful tale!

The bloody picture in the book of time; may it ever stamp with stigma the brow of that government that offered not a protecting hand to those who were ruthlessly cut down--wounded; or were made widows, and orphans, at the Haun's Mill Massacre.

The sun slowly sank beneath the western horizon--and darkness spread its broad mantle over the universe.

With a single exception, the dead were left lying where they fell--in fact there were none left that were able to take care of them. Whether dead or alive, all feared alike--all was uncertain--all was pain and sorrow.

In vain did the affectionate wife with aching heart and streaming eyes watch through the long, long night for the return of her husband.

The 31st day dawned, and again the rays of the morning sun, kissed the landscape. As yet the extent of the massacre was not known.

Brother Amos having been detailed on the previous day to get wood for families, was on his way to the mill when he was told there had been serious trouble there. His home was about three miles from the mill, and as he was not detailed on guard, was not at the mill at the time of the slaughter.

He went on; and passing the mill a short distance, came to Haun's house. The first object that met his eye in human form, was the mangled body of my murdered father [Thomas McBride], lying in the door yard. He had been shot with his own gun, after having given it into the mobs possession. Was cut down and badly disfigured with a corn cutter, and left lying in the creek. Some of the women had dragged him from the creek into the door yard and left him there. One of his ears was almost cut from his head--deep gashes were cut in his shoulders; and some of his fingers cut till they would almost drop from his hand.

On further examination it was found that fifteen were murdered, and fifteen wounded--one of whom was a woman, Mary Stedwell, who in trying to escape, was shot through the hand, and fell behind a log. Several bullet holes were found in the log, directly opposite of where she lay. Alma Smith a small boy; and I believe one Merrick were the only wounded children that were yet alive. Of the wounded men, three afterward died. Making eighteen dead in all.

Isaac Laney a young man that was baptized into the church at the same time that I was, was in the black-smith shop, when the mob began to fire on them. His gun stock was shot to pieces in his hands. He then escaped from the shop, ran to the mill, and climbed down one of the mill timbers into the creek. That being the

quickest way for him to escape danger. From there he went into the house, where sister Catherine, Mrs. Haun, Mrs. Merrill and some other women were. They administered to Isaac, and put him under the floor. He had received eleven bullet marks in his body. I was well acquainted with Isaac Laney, and helped to take care of him until he recovered. He told me that when trying to escape from the mob, the blood gushing from his mouth would almost strangle him. While he was under the floor he said he suffered a great deal for want of water. The women not daring to venture out to get water until they felt sure the mob was entirely gone. Isaac recovered, and lived thirty-five years from the day of the Haun's Mill Massacre.

A few rods south of the blacksmith shop, was an unfinished well, about eight or twelve feet deep; but no water was in it. This made the sepulchre for the dead. Fifteen murdered persons, including my father, were carried on a board, one at a time, and dropped into that well--by brother Amos McBride, James Dayley and Jacob Myers: the only three able bodied men that were present.

It was now plainly shown that there was no mercy for us. What few men, and boys that were of much age--yet--were under necessity of hiding away, to escape danger.

About the first day of November, being tired of lying out in the woods, I concluded to venture a trip to the mill. I was anxious to see the grounds on which the slaughter took place; and learn if possible, the general situation of affairs. Accordingly, with feelings that I can not here describe, I slowly wended my way to the spot. I walked over the grounds, noticing here and there the blood stained earth--and seriously reflecting on our then sorrowful situation. On the outside, the logs of the shop were defaced with bullet marks, and on the inside of the shop, the ground was scarcely visible for blood.

I traced the blood from the dead bodies of those who were carried and buried in the well. I went to the place and stood at the edge of the silent tomb of my beloved father. A silent prayer I offered to God, and turned away.¹²

Though John and Rebecca were not at Hauns Mill at the time they were saddened by the news of their friends, and found themselves at Far West in what seemed at the time to be the second Massacre in two days.

Far West

Those at Far West found themselves in a precarious situation as they grieved the loss of their friends at Hauns Mill. On Wednesday, 31 October 1838, the people at Far West were surrounded by Missouri Anti-Mormon Militia. This Militia outnumbered the Mormons 5:1. Though neither side were quick to want to start a war, the militia asked for certain men so they could take them to jail. Joseph Smith was among them, so were Erastus and Augustus Dodge¹³. They mistreated them for days in jail. While Joseph and

a few other Saints were in jail, those in Far West were in fear for their lives. The men got together and decided to take turns standing guard, John Wood was among those standing guard to help protect the Saints.¹⁴ A rumor reached Far West that the remainder of the Battle of Crooked River participants would be arrested so before dawn about twenty men secretly left Far West and headed north toward the Iowa territory.¹⁵ The following day, 1 November 1838, the Missouri Militia entered Far West and did things most unspeakable, they pilfered valuables, ravaged the city and raped some of the women¹⁶.

While those at Far West were being mistreated, Joseph Smith and the others were railroaded into jail they were tortured and treated in the worst possibly way. The jailers used bad language and taunted the brethren, and Joseph Smith broke. He rebuked them to stop; "SILENCE, ye fiends of the infernal pit. In the name of Jesus Christ I rebuke you, and command you to be still; I will not live another minute and bear such language. Cease such talk, or you or I die THIS INSTANT!" Joseph's formidable request was obliged. The raucous group ceased with their apologies.

The Saints at Far West were driven from Missouri in the middle of winter with what little they had. They walked back to Illinois, mostly women and children. It was freezing temperatures, and history tells us it was in the snow. Though they were mistreated, plagued by persecution and their lands and valuables stolen, these people remained faithful to this religion that had become their life. Rebecca and her four girls; Nancy Ann age 14, Margaret Serena age 8, Mary Bell age 5 and little Serelda age 3 were among those who walked back in the cold.¹⁷ The expulsion from Missouri in the middle of winter was only a physical barrier, they had over come their spiritual one.

In March of 1839, Joseph was discouraged and down trodden, he had hoped for more and it seemed all was lost. As he supplicated with the Lord and bore his soul, he asked the Lord,

Oh God, where art thou? And where is the pavilion that covereth thy hiding place? How long shall thy hand be stayed, and thine eye, yea thy pure eye, behold from the eternal heavens the wrongs of they people and of they servants, and thine ear be penetrated with their cries? Yea, O Lord, how long shall they suffer these wrongs and unlawful oppressions, before thine heart shall be softened toward them, and thy bowels be moved with compassion toward them?¹⁸

The Lord answered;

My son, peace be unto thy soul; thine adversity and thine afflictions shall be but a small moment; And then, if thou endure it well, God shall exalt thee on high, thou shalt triumph over all they foes. Thy friends do stand by thee, and they shall hail thee again with warm hearts and friendly hands.¹⁹

Joseph was at peace and soon he was released with several other brethren and they returned to Illinois.

John and Rebecca were reunited in Illinois. Though they had endured much hardship while in Missouri, their testimonies of what they knew to be true did not falter. They continued following their young prophet and strengthening testimony and their family.

CHAPTER NOTES

¹ Far West was established in the summer of 1836, in Ray county, on 26 Dec 1836 Caldwell County was established.

² For additional information on Black Hawk Indian War of 1832, see Appendix G.

³ Church History in the Fullness of Times, Copyright 1989 by Corporation of the President of the Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints, pages 127-139.

⁴ Variant – It is written that John and Rebecca Wood went to Jackson County in 1837, they never went to Jackson County. Mormons were kicked out in 1833.

⁵ Church History in the Fullness of Times, Copyright 1989 by Corporation of the President of the Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints, page 181 and 182.

⁶ Her exact death date is unknown, just the year 1837.

⁷ Information is from the book Church History in the Fulness of Times, prepared by the church educational system and published by the Churchof Jesus Christ of Latter –day Saints, Salt Lake City Utah.

⁸ Quoted from Emanuel Bagley Willis' Journal.

⁹ Family Story.

¹⁰ Family Story.

¹¹ Additional information can be found in Appendix G.

¹² The Biography of James McBride (1818-1846)
<http://www.hannahdustin.com/mcbride.html>,

¹³ Family Story, Erastus and Augustus Dodge volunteered to go to jail with the prophet. Erastus is related to John Wood through his grand- daughter Nancy Cedena Bagley Willis. She was married to Merrill Erastus Sr and Erastus Dodge was his maternal grandfather.

¹⁴ Emanuel Bagley Willis Journal.

¹⁵ Because John Wood was a participant in the Battle of Crooked River it is believed that he was among the twenty men who slipped out, but there are no family stories or documentation to verify it.

¹⁶ Information from Church History in the fullness of Times, Church Educational System, published by the First Presidency.

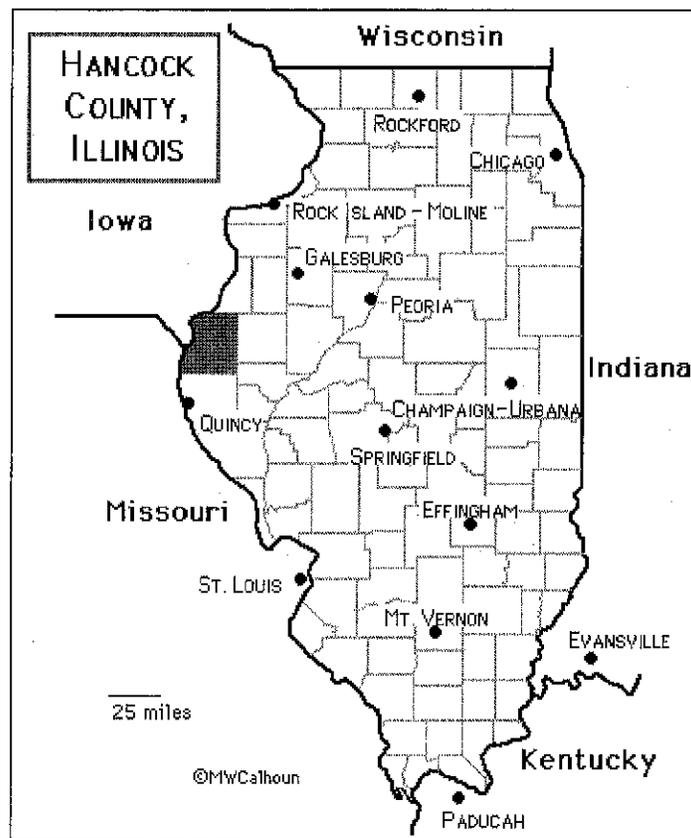
¹⁷ There is no written verification of this, but since we know she was there and we know she was in far west with the children we know that she among those expelled from Missouri in the middle of winter.

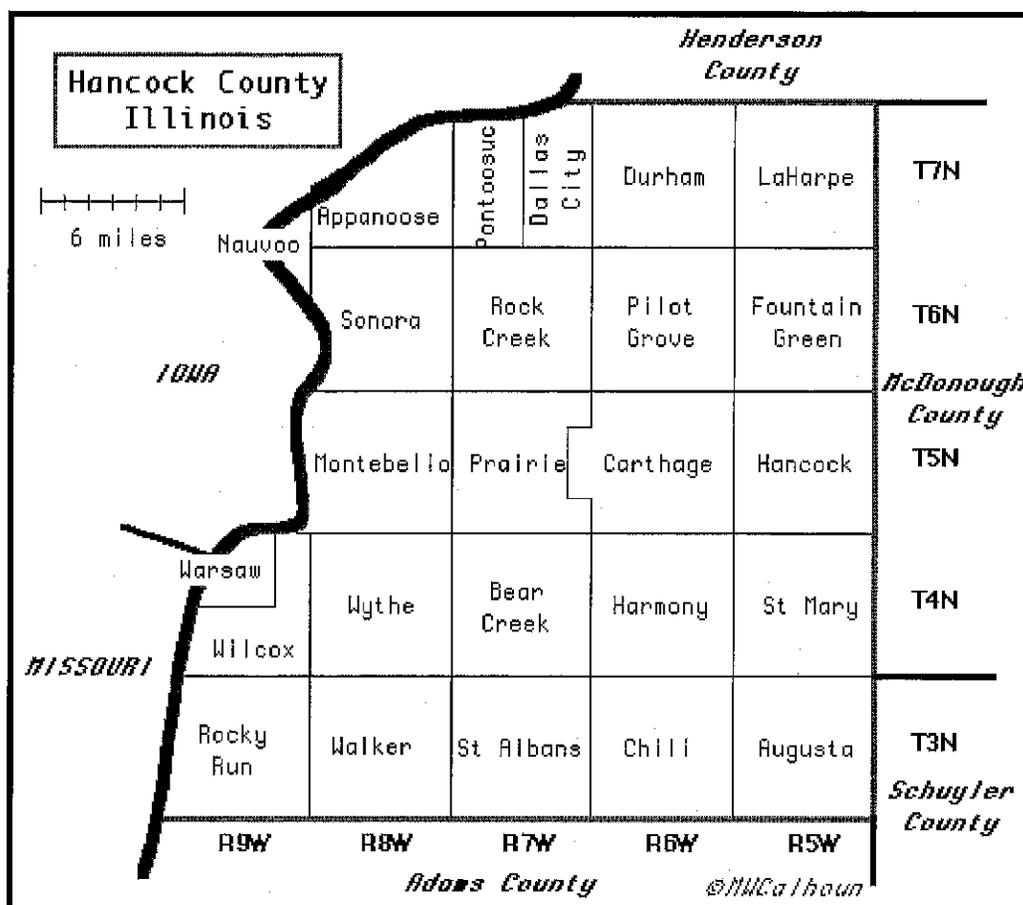
¹⁸ Doctrine and Covenants 121:1-3

¹⁹ Doctrine and Covenants 121:7-9

CHAPTER 5
ON TO ILLINOIS

After two and a half years of trials in Missouri, John and Rebecca were wore out, but they continued moving forward. Because Nauvoo was still being drained and several other properties were purchased by the church from Isaac Gallan¹, John and Rebecca found a small paradise in Warsaw, Hancock County, Illinois.





Warsaw

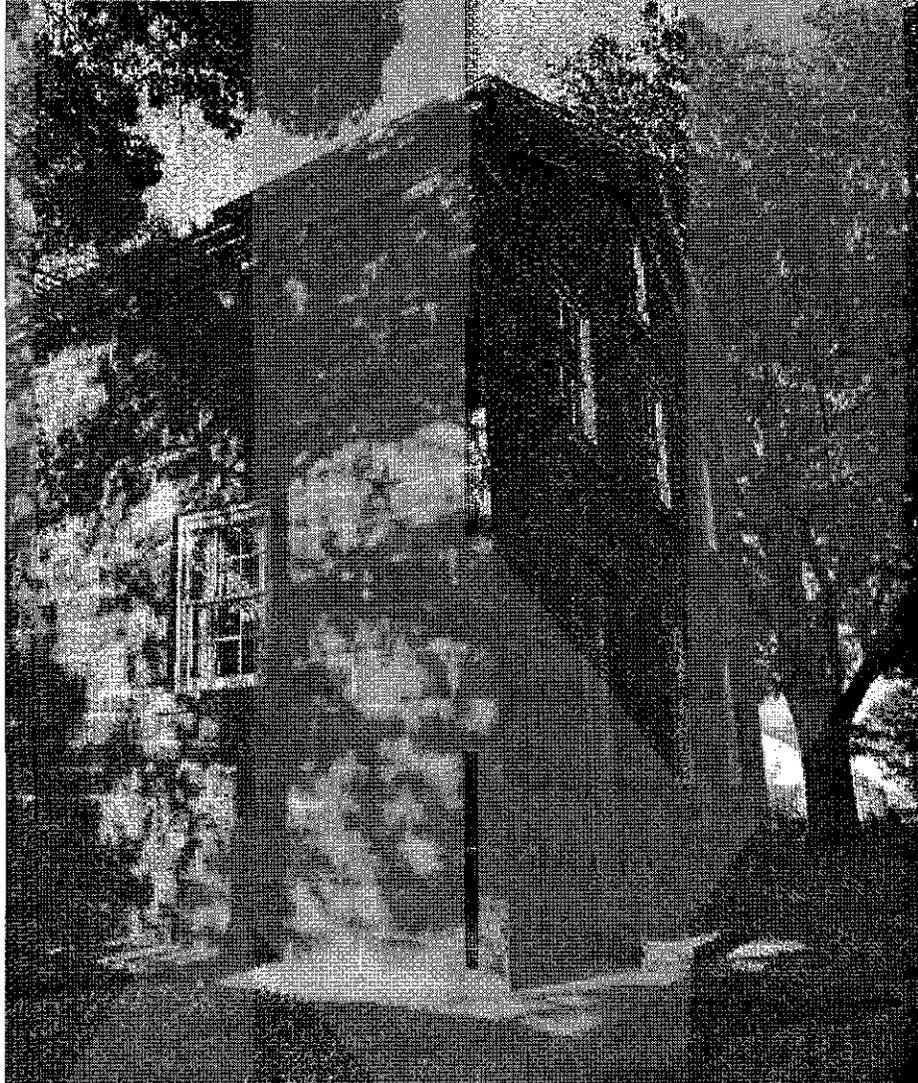
It looked as if John and Rebecca could settle down for a while in Warsaw. Earlier in Warsaw, during the war of 1812, it had two forts to counter the British military instillation on Rock Island². From 1818 to 1822 Warsaw was used as a fur trading post and from 1822- 1832 it was the home of John Jacob Astor's American Fur Company. In 1839 Warsaw was used as a refuge from the terror John and Rebecca had endured in Missouri. They started farming again and Mary Bell Wood recollected standing on a small stool combing her mother's hair as she sat in a chair and her hair would touch the floor³. Rebecca's sister, Nancy Ann was not to far away, she live just across the Mississippi in Montrose, Lee County Iowa with her growing family. John and Rebecca lived happily in Warsaw, but this happiness was going to be short lived. About a year and a half after they fled Missouri, Rebecca was with child and she got a fever and the chills and she and their baby boy William passed away. Rebecca's sister Nancy Ann was a midwife and a doctor of herbs, she helped many and could be seen riding through the woods to help heal the sick, but this time she could not help her older sister or her young son, William Milton.⁴ Rebecca died 17 July 1840 and William a few weeks later in August. John, now a widower raising four young girls in Warsaw, worked the farm, and persecutions starting up again. The hate was so strong that while living in Warsaw,

John and the girls had their "home burned over their heads".⁵ Following Rebecca's death and the home burned to the ground. John moved himself and his young girls to Nauvoo.

Nauvoo

As John and the children lived in Nauvoo, life was good for a while. In October of 1841 the cornerstone was laid, for their second temple. The Saints shouted for joy during this time and they worked industriously to build their temple. John helped build the temple along side his brother-in-law Eli Bagley⁶. Living in Nauvoo was a joy as it prospered economically and educationally. This too was short lived, not only were non-Latter Day Saints plotting against the Saints, but one Latter Day Saint in particular who was a close confidant of Joseph Smith's, was his worst enemy.

This traitorous confidant was John C. Bennett. He became very well liked in a very short period of time. Within a year he became Assistant- to- the- President until Sidney Rigdon's health could improve. Soon following his new calling, Joseph's brother heard a rumor about Bennett and went to check it out, he found out it was true. The rumor found was that Bennett had a wife and child that he abandoned in Ohio. Joseph addressed Bennett about this issue and Bennett immediately took poison to kill himself. Though he was unsuccessful, it was later found that not only did he lie about being married; he had developed a plot to kill Joseph. He left Nauvoo and preached against Joseph and the church for many years following. In 1842 when someone tried to kill Governor Boggs of Missouri, Bennett said that Joseph had sent Porter Rockwell to kill him, some actually believed his antics. In 1843 dissension in the church became astronomical, that led Joseph to say he was more worried about the dissidents in the church than he was of his enemies in Missouri. In 1844 Joseph ran for President of the United States. He believed that of the candidates running, the Saints could not support any of them. Though Joseph knew there were many among him in the church that were plotting against him in one way or another, in March 1844 he revealed the names of those who were against him, the things they did and their lies. These conspiracies continued for several months. In June a posse came to arrest Joseph Smith for Treason, while he was out of town, though he had been arrested many times before, this time he did not feel he would see his family again. Joseph and Hyrum and a few others went to the Carthage jail. He was arrested and placed in Jail. The Illinois Governor promised Joseph's safety, even though there were mobs gunning for him. John Wood, was in Carthage sitting outside the jail trying to protect Joseph from these blood thirsty mobs. He would later tell his family that his gun was forcibly taken from him.⁷ What history writes of the truth, of what happened next saddens even the hardest of hearts, suffice it to say, Joseph Smith along with his brother Hyrum were murdered in cold blood. Joseph tried to flee the mob and went to the window to jump and he was shot out the window and killed.



While Joseph and Hyrum were in Jail, Sarah Melissa Dodge⁸ lived in Hyrum's home as both her parents had passed. The Smith's took in orphans from time to time to help out around the house. When the Saints got word of Joseph and Hyrum's death it frightened the Saints and they barred their doors, in fear the mob would attack them next.

After the Murder the Apostles gathered in Nauvoo. The mantle of the Prophet fell on Brigham Young. There was a meeting among the Saints and those in attendance said when Brigham Young spoke, it was as if they had heard the voice of Joseph Smith. They all knew immediately he was the one the Lord chose to lead the church.⁹ Persecutions still raged in Nauvoo toward the Saints and the Church leaders decided to move west. The at this time was no longer in the United States. John took his girls and moved to Iowa.

CHAPTER NOTES

¹ Information from the book, Church History in the Fullness of Times, published by the first presidency of the Church of Jesus Christ of Latter Day Saints.

² Information from http://www.outfitters.com/illinois/hancock/warsaw_history.html.

³ Family Story written down by Nancy Cedina Bagley - Willis

⁴ Family Story that Nancy Ann Bagley was a Dr of herbs and midwife and it is believed she was with Rebecca during her delivery.

⁵ Family Story noted by Nancy Cedina Bagley-Willis.

⁶ This is the author's hypothesis, but it should be very accurate due to the knowledge of John Wood and Eli Bagley, gathered by the author.

⁷ Family Story , Nancy Cedina Bagley - Willis

⁸ Sarah Melissa Dodge-Willis is related to John Wood through his grand-daughter Nancy Cedina Bagley Willis' husband (Merril Erastus Sr.).

⁹ Information from the book, Church History in the Fullness of Times, published by the first presidency of the Church of Jesus Christ of Latter Day Saints. Page 291

CHAPTER 6

THE WOOD'S MOVE TO IOWA

The Move to Iowa

Following the prophet's death many continued on with the Apostles in Nauvoo and others moved to Iowa. John Wood and his girls moved to Lee County, Iowa to be with Nancy Ann and Eli Bagley¹. Within a very short period of time the Saints were pushed out of Nauvoo and were trekking across the uncharted territory of Iowa. Many Saints were starving and destitute, this was a hard time in the history of the church. Iowa was on the American boarder and leaving the country looked inviting. Most of the Saints crossed the Mississippi in early 1846, among them were Joshua Thomas Willis and the Dodge children². In July of 1846, the government wanted to recruit many latter day Saint men to fight the Mexican American War. After the lack of assistance the government showed the Latter Day Saints, it was hard for the Latter Day Saints to volunteer for this war. Brigham Young spoke to the Saints and felt it would be in the best interest of the church for some of them to sign up. Brigham told William Wesley Willis that if he signed up to help he would make sure William's family made it to the west. History calls these heroes, the Mormon Battalion, of whom were William Wesley Willis and his brother-in-law John Wheeler³. The move to Iowa was not an easy transition, but it soon would be a help for those Saints coming from other countries.

Outfitting Posts

Brigham Young had some Saints stay back and man the outfitting posts for those Saints coming across the plains, John Wood and his girls were among those who stayed. Eli and Daniel Bagley joined him and helped the Saints cross the plains. In the outfitting posts they would raise live stock and crops to give to those Latter Day Saints working their way to Zion. They would also build wagons and Hand Carts. What John did not know is he would one day be related to some of those he helped, John Chatterley, John Rushton, Sarah and William Henry Kay. They would all be related to John Wood through his descendants.

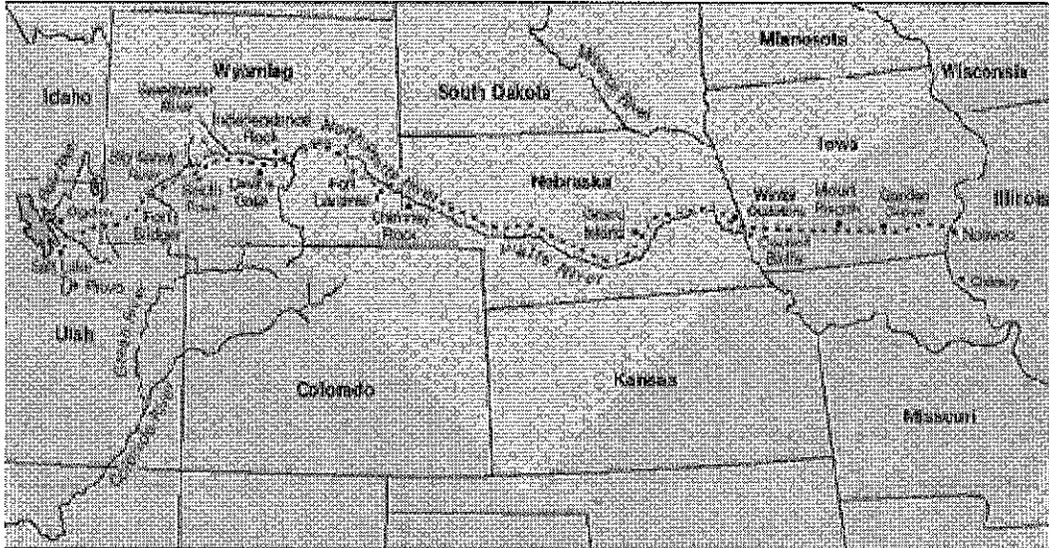


Illustration of Mormon Trail from Illinois to Utah

John wanted to go to Salt Lake City. When the Saints all left Council Bluffs in 1853, John watched his daughter Mary Bell and her husband Daniel Bagley headed west to Salt Lake City. His three daughters Margaret and Nancy Ann stayed with him until his death 30 April 1862. Both of which would move to Salt Lake City soon after his death. John is buried in the Orleans Cemetery, this cemetery is located in Washington Township, Section 2, Appanoose County, Iowa. It still stands today (2007). The people buried closest to him are:

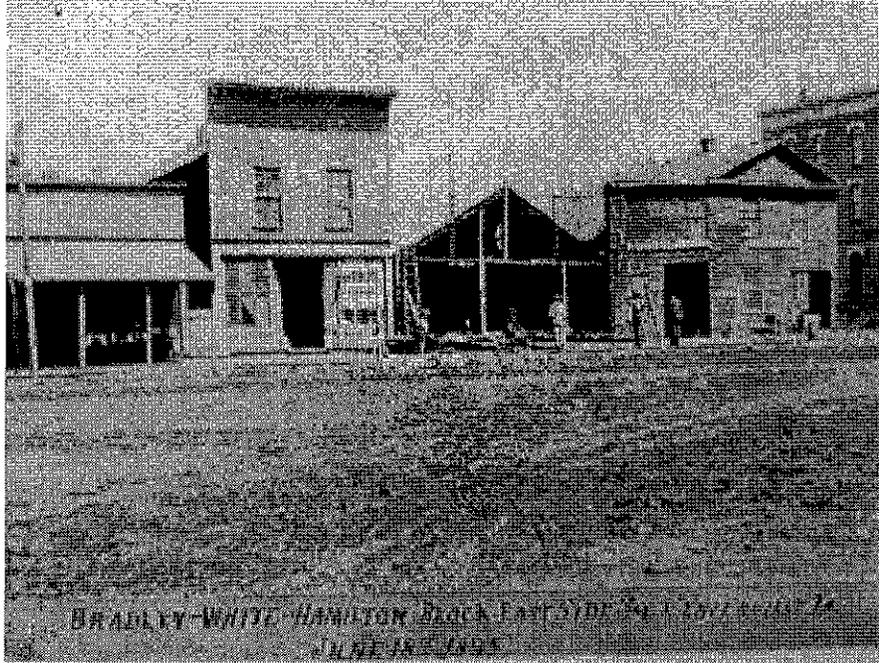
Cemetery is on the south side of highway.

Row 11				
	Lee, George W.	2-2-1844	10/4/1913	
	Lee, George M., s/o GW & M	----	3-11-1879	4m 28d
	Lee, Ida M., d/o GW & M	----	7-5-1872	1y 5m 17d
	Lee, John K.	----	2/3/1905	34y 7m 22d
	? 'Mother' no other information			
	Rucker, Albert F., s/o TC & LA	----	12-23-1876	3y 7m
	Rucker, Clarence C.	1887	1976	
	Rucker, Georgia A.	1890	1980	
	Rucker, T. C.	12-10-1853	4/19/1934	
	Rucker, Laura A., his wife	3-30-1851	10/1/1936	
	Rucker, Lillie B, his dau	12-3-1875	4/17/1914	
	Siler, B. H.	----	4-20-1882	60y 1m 10d
	Moore, Olay, s/o T.L. & L.	----	3-4-1886	4d

	Moore, James M., s/o J. & M.	-----	2-8-1862	3y 5m 6d
	Moore, John, s/o T. & M.	-----	1-22-1862	15y 5m 26d
	Wood, John	-----	4-30-1862	64y
	Fleming, Francis, d/o J. & H.V.	no information		
	Fleming, Violet, w/o J.	-----	12-13-1869	69y
	Porter, Jacob	-----	8-6-1858	22y 1m 29d
	Porter, Elizabeth, w/o Otha	-----	11-12-1865	55y 15d
	Porter, Sarah D.	-----	8-8-1875	
	Porter, Etha	-----	5-15-1878	69y 1m
	McCreary, Silas R., s/o WS & EA	4-26-1881	8-1-1881	
	McCreary, Elizabeth, w/o WS	3-29-1855	8-14-1881	
	McCreary, W. S.	4-10-1857	-----	
	Holbert, Martha R., w/o JE	6-3-1836	4-16-1865	
	Holbert, Silas E., s/o J.B. & M.	-----	8-12-1866	17y 10 m
				Killed by lightning
	Dunbar, James	-----	5-9-1867	41y 4m 21d
	Dunbar, Sarah J., d/o J. & E.C.	-----	10-21-1869	
	Dunbar, Margaret, d/o J. & E.C.	-----	5-23-1864	2y 3m 9d
	Dunbar, Mary E., d/o J. & E.C.	-----	5-2-1865	14y 9m
	Dunbar, Theodosia, d/o J. & E.C.	-----	12-20-1860	6m 6d

Directions are as follows:

North out of Moulton on Highway 202 to stop light. Turn east on Highway 2.
Cemetery is on the south side of highway.



Picture of Centerville, Iowa 1895

John worked hard to save others and he did a great job. He never saw a job as too big or an ordeal insurmountable. He followed the Prophet and the gospel. He loved his wife and children. He was an example of persistence, courage and determination. The fun part of John Wood is he could play the violin, dance up a storm and he was very athletic. A man any women would want, but only Rebecca had. John went on to marry a young women by the name of Nancy Scott. Nothing is known of her except her name, he did not have any children with her and there is no marriage date. John's life in Iowa spanned almost two decades. He always desired to go to Salt Lake but he never made it, instead he was called to assist in helping those who did go to Salt Lake City.

Chapter Notes

¹ It is unclear the exact year John and the girls went to Iowa, it is just known they went. 1844 was a close, but approximate date.

² Related to John Wood through his daughter Mary Bell Wood-Bagley and through her daughter Nancy Cedina Bagley-Willis. She married Merrill Erastus Willis Sr. and Joshua Willis and Sarah Melissa Dodge are his parents.

³ Related to John Wood through his daughter Mary Bell Wood-Bagley and through her daughter Nancy Cedina Bagley-Willis. She married Merrill Erastus Willis Sr. and Joshua Willis, and William Wesley Willis is his brother and John Wheeler Joshua's brother in law.

CHAPTER 7

CONCLUSION

As I close, John Wood would like to be remembered for his love for the Lord and his family. He fought for righteousness at the battle of Crooked River and in Missouri. He worked for the betterment of his life through the Gospel of Jesus Christ. John was athletic, loved music and loved to dance. In short he would like to be remembered for his love of life and his experience here and mostly his love for his family and the Lord. He watches over his descendents and prays for their safe return to the Lord so he may be with them in the eternities. From France to Iowa we travel with the Wood family, always they fought for their religious rights, as do their descendents today through their love for the Lord and Savior Jesus Christ.

I hope you found a little of yourself in John Wood. As you read his experiences I hope you turned your heart towards him and his family. As Malichi said; "Behold, I will send you Elijah the prophet before the coming of the great and dreadful day of the Lord: And he shall turn the heart of the fathers to the children, and the heart of the children to their fathers, lest I come and smite the earth with a curse". This document is written to help fulfill that request. It is my desire that you see his character and attributes, that you see his determination, persistence and courage. He stood up when only 49 others stood with him, and he fought for righteousness. It is my prayer that this gives you strength to do the same, to stand up for righteousness when you may have to stand alone.

APPENDIX A

RICHARD DUBOIS WOOD

Richard Dubois Wood

B: unknown
D: unknown
M: unknown

Children:

Thomas Dubois Wood

B: 1720, Ireland
D: 1760, York, York, Pennsylvania
M: 1742, Mary Cuttle

Richard Dubois Wood, we have no birth, death date or marriage. We have only a family story that has not been substantiated. (Many times they can not be substantiated). The only thing we really know about Richard is he lived in France was dubbed 'Sir', by the King of France, he was a Huguenot, he went to England and then to Ireland and Dubois in French means "The Wood". So it is this author's belief that he changed his last name to Wood when he was forced out of France.

Chapter Note 2

Huguenots

Information on the Huguenots was copied from:
<http://www.huguenot.netnation.com/general/huguenot.htm>

The Huguenots were French Protestants most of whom eventually came to follow the teachings of John Calvin, and who, due to religious persecution, were forced to flee France to other countries in the sixteenth and seventeenth centuries. Some remained, practicing their Faith in secret.

The Protestant Reformation began by Martin Luther in Germany about 1517, spread rapidly in France, especially among those having grievances against the established order of government. As Protestantism grew and developed in France it generally abandoned the Lutheran form, and took the shape of Calvinism. The new "Reformed religion" practiced by many members of the French nobility and social middle-class, based on a belief in salvation through individual faith without the need for the intercession of a church hierarchy and on the belief in an

individual's right to interpret scriptures for themselves, placed these French Protestants in direct theological conflict with both the Catholic Church and the King of France in the theocratic system which prevailed at that time. Followers of this new Protestantism were soon accused of heresy against the Catholic government and the established religion of France, and a General Edict urging extermination of these heretics (Huguenots) was issued in 1536. Nevertheless, Protestantism continued to spread and grow, and about 1555 the first Huguenot church was founded in a home in Paris based upon the teachings of John Calvin. The number and influence of the French Reformers (Huguenots) continued to increase after this event, leading to an escalation in hostility and conflict between the Catholic Church/State and the Huguenots. Finally, in 1562, some 1200 Huguenots were slain at Vassy, France, thus igniting the French Wars of Religion which would devastate France for the next thirty-five years.

The Edict of Nantes, signed by Henry IV in April, 1598, ended the Wars of Religion, and allowed the Huguenots some religious freedoms, including free exercise of their religion in 20 specified towns of France.

The Revocation of the Edict of Nantes by Louis XIV in October, 1685, began a new persecution of the Huguenots, and hundreds of thousands of Huguenots fled France to other countries. The Promulgation of the Edict of Toleration in November, 1787, partially restored the civil and religious rights of Huguenots in France.

Since the Huguenots of France were in large part artisans, craftsmen, and professional people, they were usually well-received in the countries to which they fled for refuge when religious discrimination or overt persecution caused them to leave France. Most of them went initially to Germany, the Netherlands, and England, although some found their way eventually to places as remote as South Africa. Considerable numbers of Huguenots migrated to British North America, especially to the Carolinas, Virginia, Pennsylvania, and New York. Their character and talents in the arts, sciences, and industry were such that they are generally felt to have been a substantial loss to the French society from which they had been forced to withdraw, and a corresponding gain to the communities and nations into which they settled.

Additional Information

Though unsure how it fits; a Thomas Wood in 1588 – 92 was Constable of the Castle of Ballymote. The “Down Survey” show a Thomas Wood a Grantee of land in county Sligo was a soldier whose rank was Cornett in Regiment of Horse 1662. A Capt Richard Wood of Leccan Esq. signed the Declaration for the Protestants of Sligo 4 January 1688. This information is from Jim McDonald 2 Aug. 2000 on Genire-L at rootsweb.com

Information on Ballymote copied from:

<http://www.irelandseye.com/aarticles/travel/attractions/castles/bllymote.shtml>

Ballymote Castle, County Sligo

Ballymote, begun in 1300, was the last and the mightiest of the Norman castles in Connaught. It was built some distance from an earlier motte by Richard de Burgo, the great Red Earl of Ulster, in order to protect his newly won possessions in Sligo. Almost square in plan with massive three-quarter round towers at each angle, it is the most symmetrical of all the Irish "keepless" castles and bears an unmistakable resemblance to the inner ward of Beaumaris in Anglesea (begun 1295). There was a formidable double towered gate in the centre of the north wall and subsidiary D-shaped towers in the centre of the east and west curtain walls. Recent excavations revealed that the gate towers now largely demolished, were protected by a double skin of external walling. A postern gate planned for the centre of the south wall was never completed, probably because of the events of 1317, when the castle was lost to the O'Connors.

Possession of the castle from 1317 until 1584 alternated between the O'Connors and the MacDonaghs. A lack of occupation levels implies that the building was virtually abandoned during these years. In 1584 it was taken by the notorious governor of Connaught, Richard Bingham, and remained an English base until lost to Red Hugh O'Donnell in 1598. It was here that O'Donnell assembled his forces on route to Kinsale in 1601. In 1652 the castle was surrendered by the Taaffes to parliamentary forces, and in 1690 it was captured by the Williamites, who soon afterwards had it dismantled and the moat filled in.

Located 15 miles S of Sligo at W end of Ballymote village.

Access through St John of God's Nursing Home.

NGR: G 660154.

National Monument.

Chapter Note 4

Nothing more than the last name Wood is known of Richards Parents. During research I have found a Hugh Wood with four children in 1749 Census Diocese of Elphin, Ireland. Parish: Calry Parish Page 417 reference <http://www.rootsweb.com/~irlsli/index2.html>. This is unsubstantiated that he was Richard's father. This Hugh Wood was a pensioner by profession and a protestant by religion. Unless Richard had two more siblings, this may not be a correct connection. There is also a Thomas Wood living in the Barony Tireragh in the parish Kilgrass, from a 1659 census. Nothing else is known about Thomas Wood.

APPENDIX B

THOMAS DUBOIS WOOD

Thomas Dubois Wood

B: 1720, „Ireland

D: ca 1760 ,York, Pa

Mary Cuttle

B: „England

M: 1742

Children:

Richard Wood

B: about 1744, „Sligo, Ireland

D: after 1825

M: about 1765, „Mason, Kentucky, Mary

Reverend William Wood

B: 5 May 1748, Sligo, Ireland

D: 11 July 1819, Harrison township, Logan, Oh

M: 14 February 1768, Loudoun county, Va., Sarah Ann Stark

Reverend Thomas Wood

No additional information is known

Rachael Wood

B: Dublin, Ireland

APPENDIX C

RICHARD WOOD

Richard Wood

B: about 1744, Sligo, Ireland
D: after 1825

1) Mary

B: about 1746, Mason, Kentucky
D: 1803, Mason, Kentucky
M: about 1765, Mason Kentucky

Children:

1) Elizabeth Wood

B: about 1765/ 1770, New York, Kings, New York
D: after 1830, Cincinnati, Hamilton, In. Burial – Cincinnati, Hamilton, Oh.
M: 27 July 1788, Mason, Kentucky, William Goforth

2) Susannah Wood

B: about 1768, Mason, Kentucky
D: after 1841
M: 30 November 1791, Mason, Kentucky, William Gooden

3) Thomas Wood

B: about 1770, Mason, Kentucky
D: 1834/1839, Mason, Kentucky

4) Allen Wood

B: 1772/ 1773, Mason, Kentucky
D: unknown
M: 11 January 1797, Mason, Kentucky, Ara (Araminta) Jane Porter

5) Mary Wood

B: about 1774, Mason, Kentucky
D: unknown
M: 16 September 1799, James Hays, Mason, Kentucky

6) Rachel Wood

B: About 1776, Mason, Kentucky
D: Unknown
M: 13 January 1801, Mason, Kentucky, Samuel Clark

- 7) Sarah Wood
B: About 1778, Mason, Kentucky
D: Before 1841

- 8) Hannah Wood
B: About 1782, Mason, Kentucky
D: Before 1841

Chapter Note 5: Sligo Legends:

Legends are usually based on some fact, but not always, at times it is created from public assumptions about royalty.

Legends of Sligo County, Dublin, Ireland

1. The Mermaid Rocks – page 53 - 54
2. Queen Maeve's Tomb – page 54 - 55
3. The Dobharchu – page 55 - 56
4. Dobharchu (Water hound) – page 56 - 57
5. Finn Mac Cumail and Split Rock – page 58 - 59
6. The Battles of Moytura – page 59 - 60
7. The Aghree Water-Horse – page 60

1. THE MERMAID ROCKS



A mile or two south of Enniscrone in the far west of Sligo there is a group of round boulders hidden in the brush beside the road. These are the Mermaid Rocks.

Many centuries ago, the O'Dowd (the head of the Irish clan was always referred to as "The") was walking along the beach when he saw a beautiful woman sitting on a rock combing her hair. The lady had no clothes on but a cape lay along side her. The O'Dowd knew at once she was a mermaid, and that the cape was the magic that allowed her to switch between human and mermaid status.

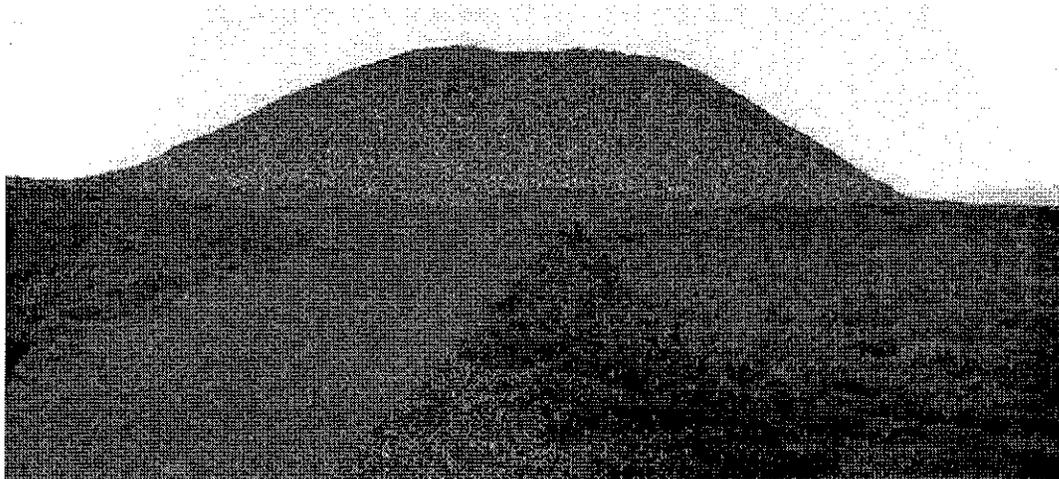
He sneaked up behind the pile of rocks, seized the cape, and took her home to his castle. The years passed and the couple had seven children. But one day, the youngest of the children saw his father take the cape out of one hiding place and place it in another, just before he went to lead his clan in a raid somewhere. The child told his mother what he has seen and she retrieved the cape.

The mother lost no time heading for the seashore with the children, but once there the six eldest balked at entering the water with her (they had no gills). Not being human, the mermaid was not overly burdened with mother-love, and she turned the children into the six rocks you can still see there to this day.

The mermaid then entered the sea with the youngest child, never to be seen again. Did the youngest child drowned? Maybe not. There seems to be lots of O'Dowds around and they seem to be quite fond of fresh fish.

<http://www.rootsweb.com/~irlsli/index2.html>

2. Queen Maeve's Tomb

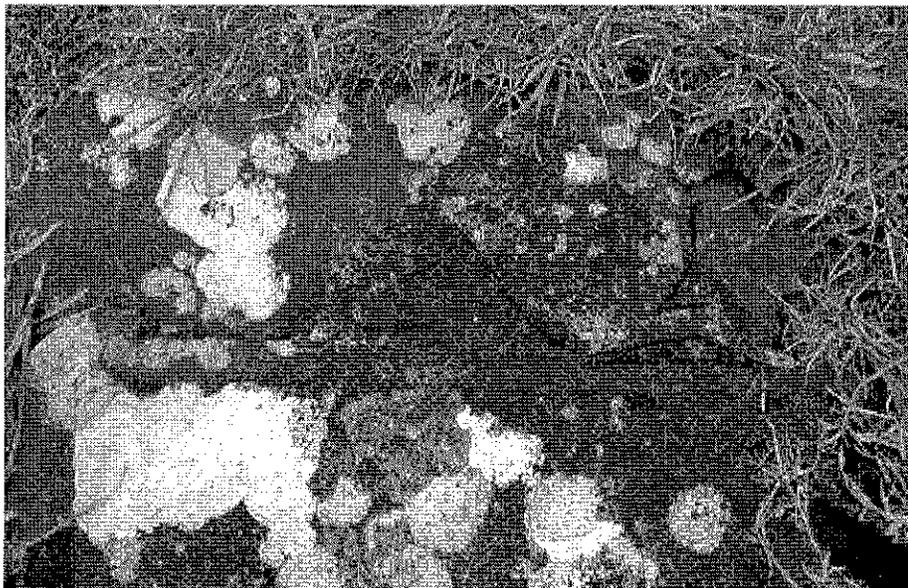


This enormous cairn atop Knocknarea is 55 meters in diameter by 10 meters high. Folklore says it was built for the mythical Iron Age Queen Maeve, whose father, the high king of Ireland, gave her Connacht as a gift. Archaeologists believe it may really date back to 3000 BC, but who is to say that Queen Maeve was not tucked into an existing monument? It is considered bad luck to remove a stone from the cairn, and good luck to take one up the hill with you to deposit on it.

The Tain Bo Cuailnge, sometimes Anglicized as "The Cattle Raid of Cooley," is one of Ireland's oldest legends and concerns a war between Connacht and Ulster early in the last millennium. Though mostly about Ulster warrior Cuchulainn, who almost single-handedly defeated the invading army of Queen Maeve and King Ailill, our concern here is with Maeve, because that enormous cairn pictured above is her tomb. The cairn is on top of Knocknarea, the tall hill that overlooks Sligo town between it and the sea. The royal capital of Connacht in those days was in Roscommon, so why was Queen Maeve buried there, on the northern fringe of her kingdom? If you read the Tain you will find that she was not the nicest person, and perhaps her subjects did not want her spirit any closer than that. The way the war came about was that Maeve and Ailill had an argument about who was the richer. To settle it, they had their accountants compare all their possessions--coin to coin, jewel to jewel, slave to slave, etc. It came down to the cattle. When their vast herds were counted and compared, it was found that that they were of equal quality and quantity, except that Ailill had a great bull which Maeve could not match. Maeve soon learned of an even better bull in Ulster, but her efforts to borrow it failed. Determined to take it by force Maeve, supported (for some reason) by Ailill, gathered a great army and invaded Ulster. The Tain describes the many great battles and glorious deeds of this war. Suffice it to say that the Ulstermen drove the Connacht army out of their lands, but not before Maeve captured the great bull she sought. The Ulster bull was taken to Connacht where it fought Ailill's bull, killed it, then wandered home unimpeded to Ulster. There may be a moral in there somewhere, but it escapes me. Next time I make the 45-minute climb from the car park up Knocknarea to view Maeve's tomb, perhaps it will come to me.

contributor:
✠ Paul Burns

3. The DOBHARCHU



Though partially covered by lichens, the general shape of the Dobharchu can be seen here, as portrayed on Grace Connolly's tombstone

Nobody wants to meet a Puca. More often than not this animal spirit is malevolent and is to be avoided. The Puca usually appears as a horse, though it can take the form of almost any animal. Several of my friends who are not well versed in Irish ways have named pets "Pooka," and frankly I am cautious around them.

There are other animal spirits sometimes confused with the Puca. One is the Each-Uisce, or water-horse; and the other--an especially evil variety--is called the Dobharchu, or water-dog.

A recent social history called *Echoes of a Savage Land*, by Sligo historian Joe McGowan, recounts that September 22, 1722, Grace Connolly went from her home to nearby Glencade Lake to bathe. When she did not return, her husband Traolach McLaughlin went to search for her, and was horrified to find Grace's mangled body on the lakeshore with a sated water fiend, the Dobharchu, lying asleep among the scattered remains. McLaughlin slew the beast, but immediately another of that fearsome species sprang from the lake and attacked him.

McLaughlin and his brother fled on horseback pursued for miles by the demon, but upon reaching Cashelgarran near Benbulbin the horses gave out. The brothers placed their horses across the entrance to that ancient fort and prepared to fight for their lives. The Dobharchu charged at them with such violence that it thrust its head and forepart completely through one of the horses, and McLaughlin buried his dagger in its heart. Grace Connolly's tombstone in Conwell cemetery near Kinlough has on it a carving of a strange beast being stabbed by a dagger.

Cashelgarran stone fort still stand beneath Benbulbin, and both monster and horse are buried nearby. Bathers are seldom seen in Glencade Lake anymore.

contributor:

✿ Paul Burns

4. The legend of the Dobharchú (Water hound)

From "Echoes of a Savage Land" by Joe McGowan

The legend of the Dobharchú (Water hound), stems from the bestial murder of Grainne Ni Conalaid at Glenade Lake, Co. Leitrim on September 24th 1722. The details were well known one time and the ballad sung at fairs on the streets of nearby Kinlough. Some say she went to the lake to wash clothes; the ballad tells she went to bathe. It is no matter. When she failed to return, her husband Traolach Mac Lochlainn went to look for her. He was aghast when he found her body lying by the lake with the 'beast lying asleep on her mangled breast!' The words of the following poem, written around the time of the incident, form part of the legend surrounding an event which excites discussion and controversy to the present day. The ballad, a lengthy one, was skilfully composed by a hedge schoolmaster of the time. An abbreviated version below brings the story vividly to life. Beginning with a description of the locality it goes on to record the dreadful occurrence: ...And whilst this gorgeous way of life in beauty did abound, From out the vastness of the lake stole forth the water hound, And seized for victim her who

shared McGloughlan's bed and board; His loving wife, his more than life, whom almost he adored. She, having gone to bathe, it seems, within the water clear, And not having returned when she might, her husband, fraught with fear, Hasting to where he her might find, when oh, to his surprise, Her mangled form, still bleeding warm, lay stretched before his eyes.

Upon her bosom, snow white once, but now besmeared with gore, The Dobharchú reposing was, his surfeiting being o'er. Her bowels and entrails all around tinged with a reddish hue: 'Oh, God', he cried, 'tis hard to bear but what am I to do?' He prayed for strength, the fiend lay still, he tottered like a child, The blood of life within his veins surged rapidly and wild. One long lost glance at her he loved, then fast his footsteps turned, To home, while all his pent up rage and passion fiercely burned.

He reached his house, he grasped his gun, which clenched with nerves of steel, He backwards sped, upraising his arm and then one piercing, dying, squeal Was heard upon the balmy air. But hark! What's that that came One moment next from out of its depth as if revenge to claim!

The comrade of the dying fiend with whistles long and loud Came nigh and nigher to the spot. McGloughlin, growing cowed Rushed to his home. His neighbours called, their counsel asked, And flight was what they bade him do at once, and not to wait till night.

He and his brother, a sturdy pair, as brothers true when tried, Their horses took, their homes forsook and westward fast they did ride. One dagger sharp and long each man had for protection too Fast pursued by that fierce brute, the Whistling Dobharchú.

The rocks and dells rang with its yells, the eagles screamed in dread. The ploughman left his horses alone, the fishes too, 'tis said, Away from the mountain streams though far, went rushing to the sea; And nature's laws did almost pause, for death or victory.

For twenty miles the gallant steeds the riders proudly bore With mighty strain o'er hill and dale that ne'er was seen before. The fiend, fast closing on their tracks, his dreaded cry more shrill; 'Twas brothers try, we'll do or die on Cashelgarron Hill. Dismounting from their panting steeds they placed them one by one Across the path in lengthways formed within the ancient dún, And standing by the outermost horse awaiting for their foe Their daggers raised, their nerves they braced to strike that fatal blow.

Not long to wait, for nose on trail the scenting hound arrived And through the horses with a plunge to force himself he tried, And just as through the outermost horse he plunged his head and foremost part, Mc Gloughlans dagger to the hilt lay buried in his heart.

"Thank God, thank God", the brothers cried in wildness and delight, Our humble home by Glenade lake shall shelter us tonight. Be any doubt to what I write, go visit old Conwell, There see the grave where sleeps the brave whose epitaph can tell.'

The story still survives in local tradition. A local man of Glenade, Patrick Doherty, now deceased, told me some years ago that the chase, which started at Frank Mc Sharry's of Glenade, faltered at Cashelgarron stone fort in Co. Sligo when Mac Lochlainn was forced to stop with the blacksmith there to replace a lost horseshoe. His version differs very little from the ballad. According to Patrick,

when the enraged monster caught up with them the horses were hurriedly drawn across the entrance to form a barrier. Giving the terrified man a sword the blacksmith advised him, 'When the creature charges he'll put his head right out through the horse. As soon as he does this you be quick and cut his head off.' The story is given credence today by the carved image engraved on Grace Connolly's tombstone in Conwell cemetery, Co. Leitrim. Cashelgarron stone fort, near where the chase ended and the Dobharchú met its gory end, still stands today nestled on a height under the sheltering prow of bare Benbulbin's head. Both monster and horse lie buried nearby.

contributor:

✿ Joe McGowan

5. Finn Mac Cumail and the Split Rock

In the townland of Kileenduff, about a mile and a half west of Easky in County Sligo, there is an enormous boulder on the south side of the road called the Split Rock, which skeptics say was dropped there by a glacier. Legend, however, has another explanation.



Everyone has heard of Finn Mac Cumail (sometimes McCool) and his legendary band that wandered around Ireland performing great deeds and combating evil. One day the Fianna, as the band was called, took a break from hunting on top of Sligo's Ox Mountains. The site was surrounded by large boulders, and one of group challenged Finn to a rock-throwing contest to see who could throw a stone into the sea, some 20 miles away. The challenger selected a small boulder, threw it, and it landed just short of the ocean near the mouth of the Easky River. Finn started to pick up a large stone, but then spotted an enormous boulder that no other member of the Fianna could even pick up. He hoisted it, reared back, and threw it as hard as he could. The boulder landed a great distance away, but it fell short of the sea. Finn was not one to take failure gracefully. Enraged by the laughter of the others, he leaped off the mountain and raced down to the boulder. He pulled out his sword, gave the rock a mighty whack, and split it in two.

It is said that one can safely walk through the gap two times, but if one attempts a third passage the gap will close and squish the person flat. Fortunately, I am a little too wide to attempt it even once.

contributor:

Paul Burns

6. THE BATTLES OF MOYTURA



This is a view of the plateau where the two battles of Moytura allegedly were fought some 3000 years ago. The photo was taken from atop Carrowkeel hill, and Moytura is in the background across Lough Arrow.

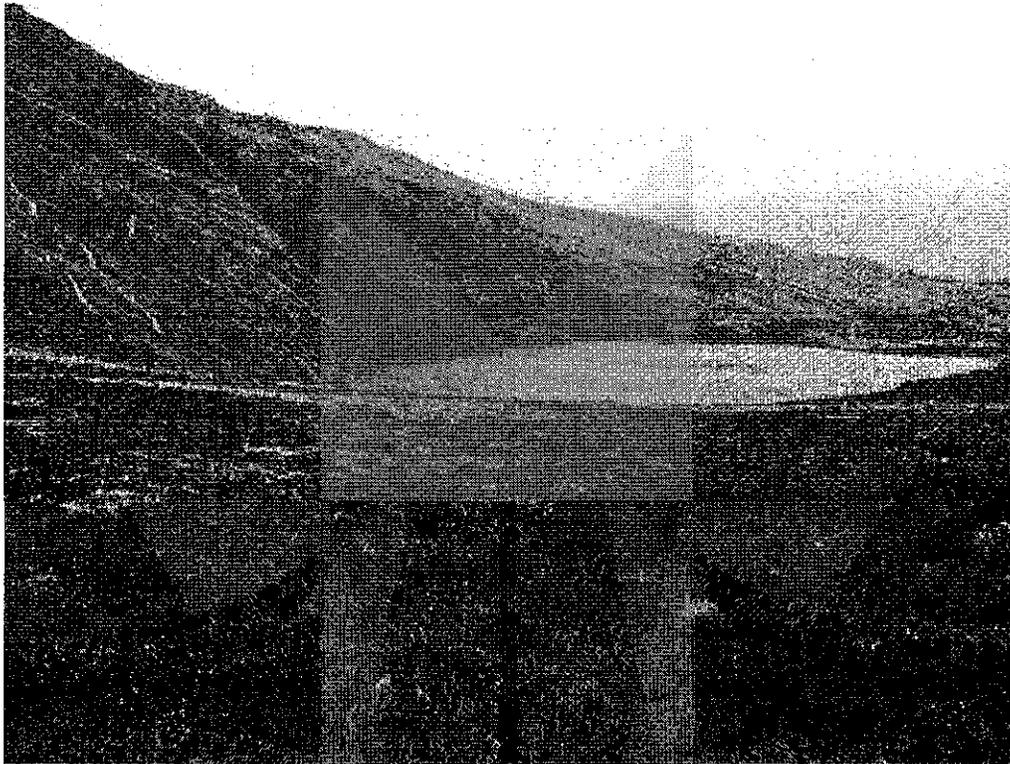
As everyone knows, the Celts were not the first settlers of Ireland. Long before they arrived one previous invader, the Tuatha De Danann, fought two others, the Fir Bolgs and the Formorians, in separate battles for control of Ireland. Both battles occurred on the Moytura plateau just east of Lough Arrow in southern Sligo. The De Dananns narrowly won the first battle and gave the losing Fir Bolgs their choice of one of Ireland's four sections. The Fir Bolgs chose Connacht which, of course, includes Sligo.

The Formorians, who were a seafaring people based on Tory Island off the coast of Donegal, were at first friendly to the De Danann, but this alliance eroded over time. Animosity grew to the point where the Formorians landed a vast army in Ballysadare Bay under the command of a giant named Balor of the Evil Eye. Balor had but one monstrous eye that had the power to destroy everything it gazed upon.

The De Danann, who also had magical powers, were led by King Nuadha of the Silver Arm, so called because an appendage lost in the war with the Fir Bolgs had been replaced with one made of that metal, although the lost hand was preserved and later reattached by magic. Nuadha's war chief was Lugh whose battle cry "Eire go bragh!" is heard to this day. During the long and bloody battle Balor slew Nuadha, then Lugh killed Balor with a slingshot that knocked his eye clear out of his head.

After that, the demoralized Formorian remnants fled back through Ballysadare Bay and left Ireland to the Tuatha De Danann. That is, until the Milesians arrived from Spain, but that is another story. Contributor: Paul Burns

7. The Aghree Water-Horse



This photo of Lough Aghree was taken on a day when the wind was blowing at gale-force.

Perhaps that dissipated the sulfur smell and kept the eel under water.

Or perhaps the photographer did not want to get close anyway.

In the parish of Skreen, County Sligo, there is a lake wedged against the Ox Mountains that is said to be the newest one in Ireland. It is in an especially barren and desolate location, and many weird things have been rumored about it. To this day, many people say they can detect the odor of sulfur around it, and one man still alive reported seeing a giant eel sticking its upper body out of the water (He at first mistook it for a man standing on the surface).

This body of water is called Lough Aghree, or Lake of the Heart. Not too long after the lake appeared, a farmer saw a horse near its shore. He easily caught the horse, found it to be gentle and yet strong, and he rode it happily for several years. One day, however, he struck the horse for the first time, whereupon its nature drastically changed. The horse reared violently and, before the farmer could spring free, the Each-Uisce, or water-horse (for that is what it was—an animal spirit similar to a Puca) plunged into the lake, farmer and all. Nothing was ever found of the farmer except his heart, which floated to the surface and gave the lake its name.

contributor:

☘ Paul Burns

Chapter Note 7

ACTS PASSED BY BRITIAN

1764-1765

1764

Sugar Act. Parliament, desiring revenue from its North American colonies, passed the first law specifically aimed at raising colonial money for the Crown. The act increased duties on non-British goods shipped to the colonies.

Currency Act. This act prohibited American colonies from issuing their own currency, angering many American colonists.

Beginnings of Colonial Opposition. American colonists responded to the Sugar Act and the Currency Act with protest. In Massachusetts, participants in a town meeting cried out against taxation without proper representation in Parliament, and suggested some form of united protest throughout the colonies. By the end of the year, many colonies were practicing nonimportation, a refusal to use imported English goods.

1765

Quartering Act. The British further angered American colonists with the Quartering Act, which required the colonies to provide barracks and supplies to British troops.

Stamp Act. Parliament's first direct tax on the American colonies, this act, like those passed in 1764, was enacted to raise money for Britain. It taxed newspapers, almanacs, pamphlets, broadsides, legal documents, dice, and playing cards. Issued by Britain, the stamps were affixed to documents or packages to show that the tax had been paid.

Organized Colonial Protest. American colonists responded to Parliament's acts with organized protest. Throughout the colonies, a network of secret organizations known as the Sons of Liberty was created, aimed at intimidating the stamp agents who collected Parliament's taxes. Before the Stamp Act could even take effect, all the appointed stamp agents in the colonies had resigned. The Massachusetts Assembly suggested a meeting of all the colonies to work for the repeal of the Stamp Act. All but four colonies were represented. The Stamp Act Congress passed a "Declaration of Rights and Grievances," which claimed that American colonists were equal to all other British citizens, protested taxation without representation, and stated that, without colonial representation in Parliament, Parliament could not tax colonists. In addition, the colonists increased their nonimportation efforts.

<http://memory.loc.gov/ammem/collections/continental/timeline.html>

1766-1767

1766

Repeal of the Stamp Act. Although some in Parliament thought the army should be used to enforce the Stamp Act (1765), others commended the colonists for resisting a tax passed by a legislative body in which they were not represented. The act was repealed, and the colonies abandoned their ban on imported British goods.

Declaratory Act. The repeal of the Stamp Act did not mean that Great Britain was surrendering any control over its colonies. The Declaratory Act, passed by Parliament on

the same day the Stamp Act was repealed, stated that Parliament could make laws binding the American colonies "in all cases whatsoever."

Resistance to the Quartering Act in New York. New York served as headquarters for British troops in America, so the Quartering Act (1765) had a great impact on New York City. When the New York Assembly refused to assist in quartering troops, a skirmish occurred in which one colonist was wounded. Parliament suspended the Assembly's powers but never carried out the suspension, since the Assembly soon agreed to contribute money toward the quartering of troops.

1767

Townshend Acts. To help pay the expenses involved in governing the American colonies, Parliament passed the Townshend Acts, which initiated taxes on glass, lead, paint, paper, and tea.

Nonimportation. In response to new taxes, the colonies again decided to discourage the purchase of British imports.

"Letters from a Farmer in Pennsylvania to the Inhabitants of the British Colonies." Originally published in a newspaper, this widely reproduced pamphlet by John Dickinson declared that Parliament could not tax the colonies, called the Townshend Acts unconstitutional, and denounced the suspension of the New York Assembly as a threat to colonial liberties.

<http://memory.loc.gov/ammem/collections/continental/timeline1b.html>

AMERICANS TAKE A STAND

1768-1769

1768

Massachusetts Circular Letter. Samuel Adams wrote a statement, approved by the Massachusetts House of Representatives, which attacked Parliament's persistence in taxing the colonies without proper representation, and which called for unified resistance by all the colonies. Many colonies issued similar statements. In response, the British governor of Massachusetts dissolved the state's legislature. **British Troops Arrive in Boston.** Although the Sons of Liberty threatened armed resistance to arriving British troops, none was offered when the troops stationed themselves in Boston.

1769

Virginia's Resolutions. The Virginia House of Burgesses passed resolutions condemning Britain's actions against Massachusetts, and stating that only Virginia's governor and legislature could tax its citizens. The members also drafted a formal letter to the King, completing it just before the legislature was dissolved by Virginia's royal governor.

1770-1772

1770

Townshend Acts Cut Back. Because of the reduced profits resulting from the colonial boycott of imported British goods, Parliament withdrew all of the Townshend Act (1767) taxes except for the tax on tea.

An End to Nonimportation. In response to Parliament's relaxation of its taxation laws, the colonies relaxed their boycott of British imported goods (1767).

Conflict between Citizens and British Troops in New York. After a leading New York Son of Liberty issued a broadside attacking the New York Assembly for complying with the Quartering Act (1765), a riot erupted between citizens and soldiers, resulting in serious wounds but no fatalities.

Boston Massacre. The arrival of troops in Boston provoked conflict between citizens and soldiers. On March 5, a group of soldiers surrounded by an unfriendly crowd opened fire, killing three Americans and fatally wounding two more. A violent uprising was avoided only with the withdrawal of the troops to islands in the harbor. The soldiers were tried for murder, but convicted only of lesser crimes; noted patriot John Adams was their principal lawyer.

1772

Attack on the "Gaspee." After several boatloads of men attacked a grounded British customs schooner near Providence, Rhode Island, the royal governor offered a reward for the discovery of the men, planning to send them to England for trial. The removal of the "Gaspee" trial to England outraged American colonists.

Committees of Correspondence. Samuel Adams called for a Boston town meeting to create committees of correspondence to communicate Boston's position to the other colonies. Similar committees were soon created throughout the colonies.

1773-1774

1773

Tea Act. By reducing the tax on imported British tea, this act gave British merchants an unfair advantage in selling their tea in America. American colonists condemned the act, and many planned to boycott tea.

Boston Tea Party. When British tea ships arrived in Boston harbor, many citizens wanted the tea sent back to England without the payment of any taxes. The royal governor insisted on payment of all taxes. On December 16, a group of men disguised as Indians boarded the ships and dumped all the tea in the harbor.

1774

Coercive Acts. In response to the Boston Tea Party, Parliament passed several acts to punish Massachusetts. The Boston Port Bill banned the loading or unloading of any ships in Boston harbor. The Administration of Justice Act offered protection to royal officials in Massachusetts, allowing them to transfer to England all court cases against them involving riot suppression or revenue collection. The Massachusetts Government Act put the election of most government officials under the control of the Crown, essentially eliminating the Massachusetts charter of government.

Quartering Act. Parliament broadened its previous Quartering Act (1765). British troops could now be quartered in any occupied dwelling.

The Colonies Organize Protest. To protest Britain's actions, Massachusetts suggested a return to nonimportation, but several states preferred a congress of all the colonies to discuss united resistance. The colonies soon named delegates to a congress -- the First Continental Congress -- to meet in Philadelphia on September 5.

The First Continental Congress. Twelve of the thirteen colonies sent a total of fifty-six delegates to the First Continental Congress. Only Georgia was not represented. One

accomplishment of the Congress was the Association of 1774, which urged all colonists to avoid using British goods, and to form committees to enforce this ban.

New England Prepares for War. British troops began to fortify Boston, and seized ammunition belonging to the colony of Massachusetts. Thousands of American militiamen were ready to resist, but no fighting occurred. Massachusetts created a Provincial Congress, and a special Committee of Safety to decide when the militia should be called into action. Special groups of militia, known as Minute Men, were organized to be ready for instant action.

1775

New England Restraining Act. Parliament passed an act banning trade between the New England colonies and any other country besides Great Britain.

New England Resists. British troops continued to attempt to seize colonial ammunition, but were turned back in Massachusetts, without any violence. Royal authorities decided that force should be used to enforce recent acts of Parliament; war seemed unavoidable.

Lexington and Concord. British troops planned to destroy American ammunition at Concord. When the Boston Committee of Safety learned of this plan, it sent Paul Revere and William Dawes to alert the countryside and gather the Minute Men. On April 19, Minute Men and British troops met at Lexington, where a shot from a stray British gun lead to more British firing. The Americans only fired a few shots; several Americans were killed. The British marched on to Concord and destroyed some ammunition, but soon found the countryside swarming with militia. At the end of the day, many were dead on both sides.

The Second Continental Congress. The Second Continental Congress convened in Philadelphia on May 10. John Hancock was elected president of Congress.

George Washington is named commander-in-chief. On June 10, John Adams proposed that Congress consider the forces in Boston a Continental army, and suggested the need for a general. He recommended George Washington for the position. Congress began to raise men from other colonies to join the army in New England, and named a committee to draft military rules. On June 15, Washington was nominated to lead the army; he accepted the next day. To pay for the army, Congress issued bills of credit, and the twelve colonies represented in the Congress promised to share in repaying the bills.

Bunker Hill. On June 12, British General Gage put martial law in effect, and stated that any person helping the Americans would be considered a traitor and rebel. When Americans began to fortify a hill against British forces, British ships in the harbor discovered the activity and opened fire. British troops -- 2,400 in number -- arrived shortly after. Although the Americans -- 1,000 in number -- resisted several attacks, eventually they lost the fortification.

Olive Branch Petition. Congress issued a petition declaring its loyalty to the king, George III, and stating its hope that he would help arrange a reconciliation and prevent further hostilities against the colonies. Four months later, King George III rejected the petition and declared the colonies in rebellion.

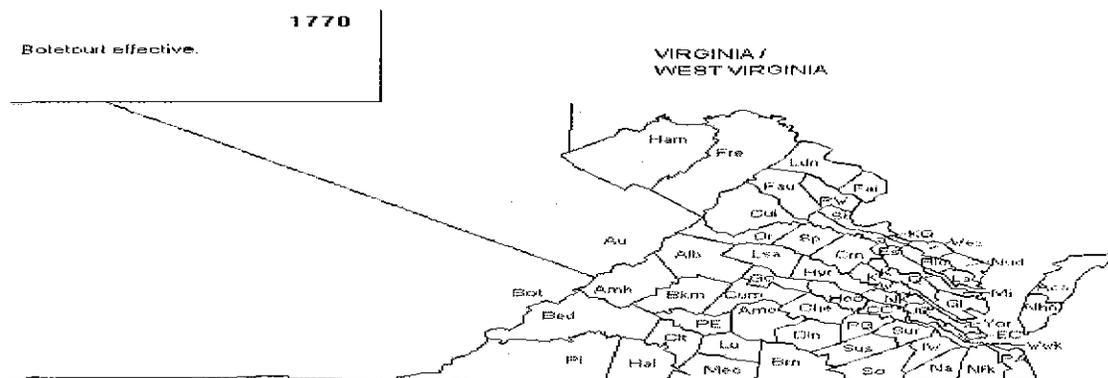
Congress Treaties with the Indians. Acting as an independent government, Congress appointed commissioners to create peace treaties with the Indians.

simple log structure shown at the right, was the first Presbyterian church in the Shenandoah Valley. <http://www.rootsweb.com/~vaaugust/>

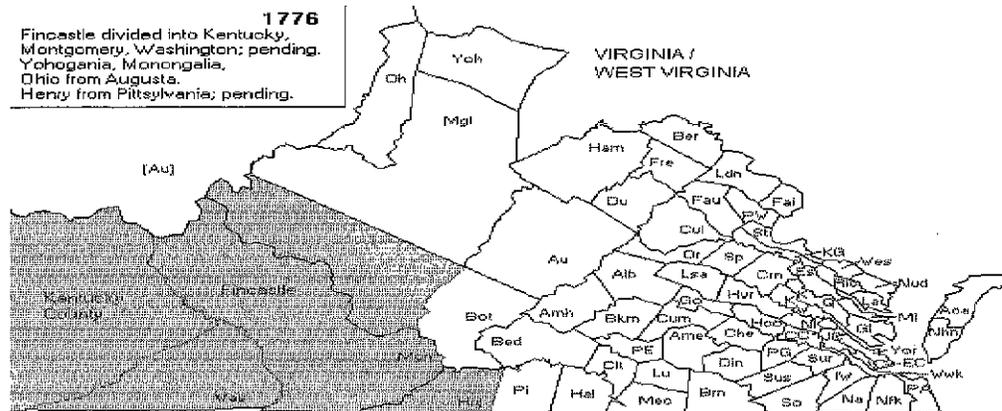
The log cabin is shown below (not at the right) for purposes of space.



The following is a Illustration of Virginia Counties in 1770



The following is an Illustration of the County map of Virginia in 1776,



Chapter Note 10

Daniel Boone Personal History

From internet website, <http://earlyamerica.com/lives/boone/index.html>.

The Adventures of Colonel Daniel Boon, Formerly a hunter

The publication of Daniel Boone's "Adventures" in 1784 served to immortalize Boone the frontiersman as an American legend and a true folk hero. Published by John Filson on Boone's 50th birthday, the narrative describes in Boone's own words his exploits in the Kentucky wilderness from May, 1769 to October of 1782. The Adventures of Col. Daniel Boone was subsequently published in The American Magazine in 1787 and again in a book by George Imlay in 1793. The latter publication is the source wherein we present the complete text.

Daniel Boone's Adventures is presented here for the first time on the Internet. His first-person narrative appears as he actually wrote it, using the grammar and syntax current in America in the 1700s. The only concession made-- and that only for the purpose of making Boone's personal account easier to read-- is the substitution of "s" in place of what appears as an "f" in the original text.

In his autobiographical narrative Boone tells of his passage through the Cumberland Gap, leading a party of settlers that cut the Wilderness Road in 1775. Boone's trailblazing efforts opened a door beyond the Alleghany Mountains, establishing a route used by thousands in the first westward migration. In his "Adventures" Boone-- a colonel in the Virginia militia-- describes his founding of Boonesborough on the Kentucky River, his capture by the Shawnee Indians, his adoption by Chief Black Fish as his son, and his daring escape on foot through the forests covering 160 miles in 4 days. In putting pen to paper, America's most famous of all "long hunters" recounts events of singular courage during this eventful 13-year period of his life, providing us with a fascinating insight into the character of an American icon.

Curiosity is natural to the soul of man and interesting objects have a powerful influence on our affections. Let these influencing powers actuate, by the permission or disposal of Providence, from selfish or social views, yet in time the mysterious will of Heaven is unfolded, and we behold our conduct, from whatever motives excited, operating to answer the important designs of heaven.

Thus we behold Kentucky, lately an howling wilderness, the habitation of savages and wild beasts, become a fruitful field; this region, so favourably distinguished by nature, now become the habitation of civilization, at a period unparalleled in history, in the midst of a raging war, and under all the disadvantages of emigration to a country so remote from the inhabited parts of the continent.

Here, where the hand of violence shed the blood of the innocent; where the horrid yells of savages, and the groans of the distressed, sounded in our ears, we now hear the praises and adorations of our Creator; where wretched wigwams stood, the miserable abode of savages, we behold the foundations of cities laid, that, in all probability, will equal the glory of the greatest upon earth. And we view Kentucky situated on the fertile banks of the great Ohio, rising from obscurity to shine with splendor, equal to any other of the states of the American hemisphere.

The settling of this region well deserves a place in history. Most of the memorable events I have myself been exercised in; and, for the satisfaction of the public, will briefly relate the circumstances of my adventures, and scenes of life, from my first movement to this country until this day.

It was on the first of May, in the year 1769, that I resigned my domestic happiness for a time, and left my family and peaceable habitation on the Yadkin River, in North Carolina, to wander through the wilderness of America, in quest of the country of Kentucky, in company with John Finley, John Stewart, Joseph Holden, James Monay, and William Cool.

We proceeded successfully, and after a long and fatiguing journey through a mountainous wilderness, in a westward direction, on the seventh day of June following we found ourselves on Red-River, where John Finley had formerly been trading with the Indians, and, from the top of an eminence, saw with pleasure the beautiful level of Kentucky.

Here let me observe, that for some time we had experienced the most uncomfortable weather as a prelibation of our future sufferings. At this place we encamped, and made a shelter to defend us from the inclement season, and began to hunt and reconnoitre the country. We found every where abundance of wild beasts of all sorts, through this vast forest. The buffalo were more frequent than I have seen cattle in the settlements, browsing on the leaves of the cane, or cropping the herbage on those extensive plains, fearless, because ignorant, of the violence of man. Sometimes we saw hundreds in a drove, and the numbers about the salt springs were amazing. In this forest, the habitation of beasts of every kind natural to America, we practiced hunting with great success, until the twenty-second day of December following.

This day John Stewart and I had a pleasing ramble, but fortune changed the scene in the close of it. We had passed through a great forest, on which stood myriads of trees, some gay with blossoms, others rich with fruits. Nature was here a series of wonders, and a fund of delight. Here she displayed her ingenuity and industry in a variety of flowers and fruits, beautifully coloured, elegantly shaped, and charmingly flavoured; and we were diverted with innumerable animals presenting themselves perpetually to our view.

In the decline of the day, near Kentucky river, as we ascended the brow of a small hill, a number of Indians rushed out of a thick cane-brake upon us, and made us prisoners. The time of our sorrow was now arrived, and the scene fully opened. The Indians plundered us of what we had, and kept us in confinement seven days, treating us with common savage usage. During this time we discovered no uneasiness or desire to escape, which made them less suspicious of us; but in the dead of night, as we lay in a thick cane-brake by a large fire, when sleep had locked up their senses, my situation not disposing me for rest, I touched my companion, and gently awoke him. We improved this favourable opportunity, and departed, leaving them to take their rest, and speedily directed our course towards our old camp, but found it plundered, and the company dispersed and gone home.

About this time my brother, Squire Boon, with another adventurer, who came to explore the country shortly after us, was wandering through the forest, determined to find me if possible, and accidentally found our camp. Notwithstanding the unfortunate circumstances of our company, and our dangerous situation, as surrounded with hostile savages, our meeting so fortunately in the wilderness made us reciprocally sensible of the utmost satisfaction. So much does friendship triumph over misfortune, that sorrows and sufferings vanish at the meeting not only of real friends, but of the most distant acquaintances, and substitute happiness in their room.

Soon after this, my companion in captivity, John Stewart, was killed by the savages, and the man that came with my brother returned home by himself. We were then in a dangerous, helpless situation, exposed daily to perils and death amongst savages and wild beasts, not a white man in the country but ourselves.

Thus situated, many hundred miles from our families in the howling wilderness, I believe few would have equally enjoyed the happiness we experienced. I often observed to my brother, You see now how little nature requires to be satisfied. Felicity, the companion of content, is rather found in our own breasts than in the enjoyment of external things; and I firmly believe it requires but a little philosophy to make a man happy in whatever state he is. This consists in a full resignation to the will of Providence; and a resigned soul finds pleasure in a path strewned with briars and thorns.

We continued not in a state of indolence, but hunted every day, and prepared a little cottage to defend us from the winter storms. We remained there undisturbed during the winter; and on the first day of May, 1770, my brother returned home to the settlement by himself, for a new recruit of horses and ammunition, leaving me by myself, without bread, salt or sugar, without company of my fellow creatures, or even a horse or dog. I confess I never before was under greater necessity of exercising philosophy and fortitude.

A few days I passed uncomfortably. The idea of a beloved wife and family, and their anxiety upon the account of my absence and exposed situation, made sensible impressions on my heart. A thousand dreadful apprehensions presented themselves to my view, and had undoubtedly disposed me to melancholy, if further indulged.

One day I undertook a tour through the country, and the diversity and beauties of nature I met with in this charming season, expelled every gloomy and vexatious thought. Just at

the close of day the gentle gales retired, and left the place to the disposal of a profound calm. Not a breeze shook the most tremulous leaf. I had gained the summit of a commanding ridge, and, looking round with astonishing delight, beheld the ample plains, the beautiful tracts below. On the other hand, I surveyed the famous river Ohio that rolled in silent dignity, marking the western boundary of Kentucky with inconceivable grandeur. At a vast distance I beheld the mountains lift their venerable brows, and penetrate the clouds. All things were still.

I kindled a fire near a fountain of sweet water, and feasted on the loin of a buck, which a few hours before I had killed. The sullen shades of night soon overspread the whole hemisphere, and the earth seemed to gasp after the hovering moisture. My roving excursion this day had fatigued my body, and diverted my imagination. I laid me down to sleep, and I awoke not until the sun had chased away the night.

I continued this tour, and in a few days explored a considerable part of the country, each day equally pleased as the first. I returned again to my old camp, which was not disturbed in my absence. I did not confine my lodging to it, but often reposed in thick cane-brakes, to avoid the savages, who, I believe, often visited my camp, but fortunately for me, in my absence.

In this situation I was constantly exposed to danger and death. How unhappy such a situation for a man tormented with fear, which is vain if no danger comes, and if it does, only augments the pain. It was my happiness to be destitute of this afflicting passion, with which I had the greatest reason to be affected. The prowling wolves diverted my nocturnal hours with perpetual howlings; and the various species of animals in this vast forest, the day time, were continually in my view.

Thus I was surrounded with plenty in the midst of want. I was happy in the midst of dangers and inconveniences. In such a diversity it was impossible I should be disposed to melancholy. No populous city, with all the varieties of commerce and stately structures, could afford so much pleasure to my mind, as the beauties of nature I found here.

Thus, through an uninterrupted scene of sylvan pleasures, I spent the time until the 27th day of July following, when my brother, to my great felicity, met me, according to appointment, at our old camp. Shortly after, we left this place, not thinking it safe to stay there longer, and proceeded to Cumberland River, reconnoitring that part of the country until March, 1771, and giving names to the different waters.

Soon after, I returned home to my family, with a determination to bring them as soon as possible to live in Kentucky, which I esteemed a second paradise, at the risk of my life and fortune.

I returned safe to my old habitation, and found my family in happy circumstances. I sold my farm on the Yadkin, and what goods we could not carry with us; and on the twenty-fifth day of September, 1773, bade a farewell to our friends, and proceeded on our journey to Kentucky, in company with five families more, and forty men that joined us in Powell's Valley, which is one hundred and fifty miles from the now settled parts of Kentucky.

This promising beginning was soon overcast with a cloud of adversity; for upon the tenth day of October, the rear of our company was attacked by a number of Indians, who killed six, and wounded one man. Of these my eldest son was one that fell in the action. Though we defended ourselves, and repulsed the enemy, yet this unhappy affair scattered our cattle, brought us into extreme difficulty, and so discouraged the whole company, that we retreated forty miles, to the settlement on Clinch River.

We had passed over two mountains, viz. Powell's and Walden's, and were approaching Cumberland mountain when this adverse fortune overtook us. These mountains are in the wilderness, as we pass from the old settlements in Virginia to Kentucky, are ranged in a S.W. and N.E. direction, are of a great length and breadth, and not far distant from each other. Over these, nature hath formed passes that are less difficult than might be expected from a view of such huge piles. The aspect of these cliffs is so wild and horrid, that it is impossible to behold them without terror. The spectator is apt to imagine that nature had formerly suffered some violent convulsion; and that there are the dismembered remains of the dreadful shock; the ruins, not of Persepolis or Palmyra, but of the world!

I remained with my family on Clinch until the sixth of June, 1774, when I and one Michael Stoner were solicited by Governor Dunmore of Virginia, to go to the Falls of the Ohio, to conduct into the settlement a number of surveyors that had been sent thither by him some months before; this country having about this time drawn the attention of many adventurers. We immediately complied with the Governor's request, and conducted in the surveyors, compleating a tour of eight hundred miles, through many difficulties, in sixty-two days.

I soon began this work, having collected a number of enterprising men, well armed. We proceeded with all possible expedition until we came within fifteen miles of where Boonsborough now stands, and where we were fired upon by a party of Indians that killed two, and wounded two of our number; yet, although surprised and taken at a disadvantage, we stood our ground. This was on the twentieth of March, 1775. Three days after, we were fired upon again, and had two men killed, and three wounded. Afterwards we proceeded on to Kentucky River without opposition; and on the first day of April began to erect the fort of Boonsborough at a salt lick, about sixty yards from the river, on the S. side.

On the fourth day, the Indians killed one of our men. We were busily employed in building this fort, until the fourteenth day of June following, without any farther opposition from the Indians; and having finished the works, I returned to my family, on Clinch.

In a short time, I proceeded to remove my family from Clinch to this garrison; where we arrived safe without any other difficulties than such as are common to this passage, my wife and daughter being the first white women that ever stood on the banks of Kentucky River.

On the twenty-fourth day of December following, we had one man killed, and one wounded, by the Indians, who seemed determined to persecute us for erecting this fortification.

On the fourteenth day of July 1776, two of Col. Callaway's daughters, and one of mine, were taken prisoners near the fort. I immediately pursued the Indians, with only eight men, and on the sixteenth overtook them, killed two of the party, and recovered the girls. The same day on which this attempt was made, the Indians divided themselves into different parties, and attacked several forts, which were shortly before this time erected, doing a great deal of mischief.

This was extremely distressing to the new settlers. The innocent husbandman was shot down, while busy in cultivating the soil for his family's supply. Most of the cattle around the stations were destroyed. They continued their hostilities in this manner until the fifteenth of April 1777, when they attacked Boonsborough with a party of above one hundred in number, killed one man, and wounded four. Their loss in this attack was not certainly known to us.

On the fourth day of July following, a party of about two hundred Indians attacked Boonsborough, killed one man, and wounded two. They besieged us forty-eight hours; during which time seven of them were killed, and, at last, finding themselves not likely to prevail, they raised the siege, and departed.

The Indians had disposed their warriors in different parties at this time, and attacked the different garrisons to prevent their assisting each other, and did much injury to the distressed inhabitants.

On the nineteenth day of this month, Col. Logan's fort was besieged by a party of about two hundred Indians. During this dreadful siege they did a great deal of mischief, distressed the garrison, in which were only fifteen men, killed two, and wounded one. The enemy's loss was uncertain, from the common practice which the Indians have of carrying off their dead in time of battle.

Col. Harrod's fort was then defended by only sixty-five men, and Boonsborough by twenty-two, there being no more forts or white men in the country, except at the Falls, a considerable distance from these; and all taken collectively, were but a handful to the numerous warriors that were every where dispersed through the country, intent upon doing all the mischief that savage barbarity could invent. Thus we passed through a scene of sufferings that exceeds description.

On the twenty-fifth of this month, a reinforcement of forty-five men arrived from North Carolina, and about the twentieth of August following, Col. Bowman arrived with one hundred men from Virginia. Now we began to strengthen, and from hence, for the space of six weeks, we had skirmishes with Indians, in one quarter or other, almost every day.

The savages now learned the superiority of the Long Knife, as they call the Virginians, by experience; being out-generalled in almost every battle. Our affairs began to wear a new aspect, and the enemy, not daring to venture on open war, practiced secret mischief at times.

On the first day of January 1778, I went with a party of thirty men to the Blue Licks, On Licking River, to make salt for the different garrisons in the country.

On the 7th day of February, as I was hunting to procure meat for the company, I met with a party of one hundred and two Indians, and two Frenchmen, on their march against Boonsborough, that place being particularly the object of the enemy.

They pursued, and took me; and brought me on the eighth day to the Licks, where twenty-seven of my party were, three of them having previously returned home with the salt. I, knowing it was impossible for them to escape, capitulated with the enemy, and, at a distance in their view, gave notice to my men of their situation, with orders not to resist, but surrender themselves captives.

The generous usage the Indians had promised before in my capitulation, was afterwards fully complied with; and we proceeded with them as prisoners to old Chelicothe, the principal Indian town on Little Miami, where we arrived, after an uncomfortable journey in very severe weather, on the eighteenth day of February, and received as good treatment as prisoners could expect from savages. On the tenth day of March following, I and the of my men were conducted by forty Indians to Detroit, where we arrived the thirtieth day, and were treated by Governor Hamilton, the British commander at that post, with great humanity.

During our travels, the Indians entertained me well; and their affection for me was so great, that they utterly refused to leave me there with the others, although the Governor offered them one hundred pounds sterling for me, on purpose to give me a parole to go home. Several English gentlemen there, being sensible of my adverse fortune, and touched with human sympathy, generously offered a friendly supply for my wants, which I refused, with many thanks for their kindness; adding, that I never expected it would be in my power to recompense such unmerited generosity.

The Indians left my men in captivity with the British at Detroit, and on the tenth day of April brought me towards Old Chelicothe, where we arrived on the twenty-fifth day of the same month. This was a long and fatiguing march, through an exceeding fertile country, remarkable for fine springs and streams of water. At Chelicothe I spent my time as comfortably as I could expect; was adopted, according to their custom, into a family, where I became a son, and had a great share in the affection of my new parents, brothers, sisters, and friends. I was exceedingly familiar and friendly with them, always appearing as chearful and satisfied as possible, and they put great confidence in me.

I often went a hunting with them, and frequently gained their applause for my activity at our shooting-matches. I was careful not to exceed many of them in shooting; for no people are more envious than they in this sport. I could observe, in their countenances and gestures, the greatest expressions of joy when they exceeded me; and, when the reverse happened, of envy.

The Shawanese king took great notice of me, and treated me with profound respect, and entire friendship, often entrusting me to hunt at my liberty. I frequently returned with the spoils of the woods, and as often presented some of what I had taken to him, expressive

of duty to my sovereign. My food and lodging were in common with them; not so good indeed as I could desire, but necessity made every thing acceptable.

I now began to meditate an escape, and carefully avoided their suspicions, continuing with them at Old Chelicothe until the first day of June following, and then was taken by them to the salt springs on Sciota, and kept there, making salt, ten days. During this time I hunted some for them, and found the land, for a great extent about this river, to exceed the soil of Kentucky, if possible, and remarkably well watered.

When I returned to Chelicothe, alarmed to see four hundred and fifty Indians, of their choicest warriors, painted and armed in a fearful manner, ready to march against Boonborough, I determined to escape the first opportunity.

On the sixteenth, before sun-rise, I departed in the most secret manner, and arrived at Boonsborough on the twentieth, after a journey of one hundred and sixty miles; during which, I had but one meal.

I found our fortress in a bad state of defence; but we proceeded immediately to repair our flanks, strengthen our gates and posterns, and form double bastions, which we completed in ten days. In this time we daily expected the arrival of the Indian army; and at length, one of my fellow prisoners, escaping from them, arrived, informing us that the enemy had, on account of my departure, postponed their expedition three weeks.

The Indians had spies out viewing our movements, and were greatly alarmed with our increase in number and fortifications. The Grand Councils of the nations were held frequently, and with more deliberation than usual. They evidently saw the approaching hour when the Long Knife would dispossess them of their desirable habitations; and, anxiously concerned for futurity, determined utterly to extirpate the whites out of Kentucky. We were not intimidated by their movements, but frequently gave them proofs of our courage.

About the first of August, I made an incursion into the Indian country, with a party of nineteen men, in order to surprise a small town up Sciota, called Paint-Creek-Town. We advanced within four miles thereof, where we met a party of thirty Indians on their march against Boonsborough, intending to join the others from Chelicothe. A smart fight ensued betwixt us for some time; at length the savages gave way, and fled. We had no loss on our side: the enemy had one killed, and two wounded. We took from them three horses, and all their baggage; and being informed, by two of our number that went to their town, that the Indians had entirely evacuated it, we proceeded no further, and returned with all possible expedition to assist our garrison against the other party. We passed by them on the sixth day, and on the seventh, we arrived safe at Boonsborough.

On the eighth, the Indian army arrived, being four hundred and forty-four in number, commanded by Capt. Duquesne, eleven other Frenchmen, and some of their own chiefs, and marched up within view of our fort, with British and French colours flying; and having sent a summons to me, in his Britannick Majesty's name, to surrender the fort, I requested two days consideration, which was granted.

It was now a critical period with us. We were a small number in the garrison: a powerful army before our walls, whose appearance proclaimed inevitable death, fearfully painted, and marking their footsteps with desolation. Death was preferable to captivity; and if taken by storm, we must inevitably be devoted to destruction. In this situation we concluded to maintain our garrison, if possible.

We immediately proceeded to collect what we could of our horses, and other cattle, and bring them through the posterns into the fort: and in the evening of the ninth, I returned answer, that we were determined to defend our fort while a man was living.

"Now," said I to their commander, who stood attentively hearing my sentiments, "We laugh at all your formidable preparations: but thank you for giving us notice and time to provide for our defence. Your efforts will not prevail; for our gates shall for ever deny you admittance."

Whether this answer affected their courage, or not, I cannot tell; but, contrary to our expectations, they formed a scheme to deceive us, declaring it was their orders, from Governor Hamilton, to take us captives, and not to destroy us; but if nine of us would come out, and treat with them, they would immediately withdraw their forces from our walls, and return home peaceably. This sounded grateful in our ears; and we agreed to the proposal.

We held the treaty within sixty yards of the garrison, on purpose to divert them from a breach of honour, as we could not avoid suspicions of the savages. In this situation the articles were formally agreed to, and signed; and the Indians told us it was customary with them, on such occasions, for two Indians to shake hands with every white man in the treaty, as an evidence of entire friendship. We agreed to this also, but were soon convinced their policy was to take us prisoners.

They immediately grappled us; but, although surrounded by hundreds of savages, we extricated ourselves from them, and escaped all safe into the garrison, except one that was wounded, through a heavy fire from their army.. They immediately attacked us on every side, and a constant heavy fire ensued between us, day and night, for the space of nine days.

In this time the enemy began to undermine our fort, which was situated sixty yards from Kentucky River. They began at the water-mark, and proceeded in the bank some distance, which we understood by their making the water muddy with the clay; and we immediately proceeded to disappoint their design, by cutting a trench across their subterranean passage. The enemy discovering our counter-mine, by the clay we threw out of the fort, desisted from that stratagem: and experience now fully convincing them that neither their power nor policy could effect their purpose, on the twentieth day of August they raised the siege, and departed.

During this siege, which threatened death in every form, we had two men killed, and four wounded, besides a number of cattle. We killed of the enemy thirty-seven, and wounded a great number. After they were gone, we picked up one hundred and twenty-five pounds

weight of bullets, besides what stuck in the logs of our fort; which certainly is a great proof of their industry.

Soon after this, I went into the settlement, and nothing worthy of a place in this account passed in my affairs for some time.

During my absence from Kentucky Col. Bowman carried on an expedition against the Shawanese, at old Chelicothe, with one hundred and sixty men, in July 1779. Here they arrived undiscovered, and a battle ensued, which lasted until ten o'clock A.M. when Col. Bowman, finding he could not succeed at this time, retreated about thirty miles. The Indians, in the mean time, collecting all their forces, pursued and overtook him, when a smart fight continued near two hours, not to the advantage of Col. Bowman's party.

Col. Harrod proposed to mount a number of horse, and furiously to rush upon the savages, who at this time fought with remarkable fury. This desperate step had a happy effect, broke their line of battle, and the savages fled on all sides. In these two battles we had nine killed, and one wounded. The enemy's loss uncertain, only two scalps being taken.

On the twenty-second day of June 1780, a large party of Indians and Canadians, about six hundred in number, commanded by Col. Bird, attacked Riddle's and Martin's stations, at the forks of Licking River, with six pieces of artillery.

They carried this expedition so secretly, that the unwary inhabitants did not discover them, until they fired upon the forts; and, not being prepared to oppose them, were obliged to surrender themselves miserable captives to barbarous savages, who immediately after tomahawked one man and two women, and loaded all the others with heavy baggage, forcing them along toward their towns, able or unable to march. Such as were weak and faint by the way, they tomahawked. The tender women, and helpless children, fell victims to their cruelty. This, and the savage treatment they received afterwards, is shocking to humanity, and too barbarous to relate.

The hostile disposition of the savages, and their allies, caused General Clark, the commandant at the Falls of the Ohio, immediately to begin an expedition with his own regiment, and the armed force of the country, against Pecaway, the principal town of the Shawanese, on a branch of Great Miami, which he finished with great success, took seventeen scalps, and burnt the town to ashes, with the loss of seventeen men.

About this time I returned to Kentucky with my family; and here, to avoid an enquiry into my conduct, the reader being before informed of my bringing my family to Kentucky, I am under the necessity of informing him that, during my captivity with the Indians, my wife, who despaired of ever seeing me again, expecting the Indians had put a period to my life, oppressed with the distresses of the country, and bereaved of me, her only happiness, had, before I returned, transported my family and goods, on horses, through the wilderness, amidst a multitude of dangers, to her father's house in North-Carolina.

Shortly after the troubles at Boonsborough, I went to them, and lived peaceably there until this time. The history of my going home, and returning with my family, forms a

series of difficulties, an account of which would swell a volume, and being foreign of my purpose, I shall purposely omit them.

I settled my family in Boonsborough once more; and shortly after, on the sixth day of October 1780, I went in company with my brother to the Blue Licks; and, on our return home, we were fired upon by a party of Indians. They shot him, and pursued me, by the scent of their dog, three miles; but I killed the dog, and escaped. The winter soon came on, and was very severe, which confined the Indians to their wigwams.

The severity of this winter caused great difficulties in Kentucky. The enemy had destroyed most of the corn the summer before. This necessary article was scarce, and dear; and the inhabitants lived chiefly on the flesh of buffalo. The circumstances of many were very lamentable: however, being a hardy race of people, and accustomed to difficulties and necessities, they were wonderfully supported through all their sufferings, until the ensuing autumn, when we received abundance from the fertile soil.

Towards Spring, we were frequently harassed by Indians; and, in May 1782, a party assaulted Ashton's station, killed one man, and took a Negro prisoner. Capt. Ashton, with twenty-five men, pursued, and overtook the savages, and a smart fight ensued, which lasted two hours; but they being superior in number, obliged Captain Ashton's party to retreat, with the loss of eight killed, and four mortally wounded; their brave commander himself being numbered among the dead.

The Indians continued their hostilities; and, about the tenth of August following, two boys were taken from Major Hoy's station. This party was pursued by Capt. Holder and seventeen men, who were also defeated, with the loss of four men killed, and one wounded. Our affairs became more and more alarming. Several stations which had lately been erected in the country were continually infested with savages, stealing their horses and killing the men at every opportunity. In a field, near Lexington, an Indian shot a man, and running to scalp him, was himself shot from the fort, and fell dead upon his enemy.

Every day we experienced recent mischiefs. The barbarous savage nations of Shawanese, Cherokees, Wyandots, Tawas, Delawares, and several others near Detroit, united in a war against us, and assembled their choicest warriors at old Chelicothe, to go on the expedition, in order to destroy us, and entirely depopulate the country.

Their savage minds were inflamed to mischief by two abandoned men, Captains M'Kee and Girty. These led them to execute every diabolical scheme; and, on the fifteenth day of August, commanded a party of Indians and Canadians, of about five hundred in number, against Briant's station, five miles from Lexington. Without demanding a surrender, they furiously assaulted the garrison, which was happily prepared to oppose them; and, after they had expended much ammunition in vain, and killed the cattle round the fort, not being likely to make themselves masters of this place, they raised the siege, and departed in the morning of the third day after they came, with the loss of about thirty killed, and the number of wounded uncertain. Of the garrison four were killed, and three wounded.

On the eighteenth day Col. Todd, Col. Trigg, Major Harland, and myself, speedily collected one hundred and seventy-six men, well armed, and pursued the savages. They had marched beyond the Blue Licks to a remarkable bend of the main fork of Licking River, about forty-three miles from Lexington, where we overtook them on the nineteenth day. The savages observing us, gave way; and we, being ignorant of their numbers, passed the river. When the enemy saw our proceedings, having greatly the advantage of us in situation, they formed the line of battle, from one bend of Licking to the other, about a mile from the Blue Licks.

An exceeding fierce battle immediately began, for about fifteen minutes, when we, being overpowered by numbers, were obliged to retreat, with the loss of sixty-seven men, seven of whom were taken prisoners. The brave and much-lamented Colonels Todd and Trigg, Major Harland, and my second son, were among the dead. We were informed that the Indians, numbering their dead, found they had four killed more than we; and therefore, four of the prisoners they had taken were, by general consent, ordered to be killed, in a most barbarous manner, by the young warriors, in order to train them up to cruelty; and then they proceeded to their towns.

On our retreat we were met by Col. Logan, hastening to join us, with a number of well armed men. This powerful assistance we unfortunately wanted in the battle; for notwithstanding the enemy's superiority of numbers, they acknowledged that, if they had received one more fire from us, they should undoubtedly have given way. So valiantly did our small party fight, that, to the memory of those who unfortunately fell in the battle, enough of honour cannot be paid. Had Col. Logan and his party been with us, it is highly probable we should have given the savages a total defeat.

I cannot reflect upon this dreadful scene, but sorrow fills my heart. A zeal for the defence of their country led these heroes to the scene of action, though with a few men to attack a powerful army of experienced warriors. When we gave way, they pursued us with the utmost eagerness, and in every quarter spread destruction. The river was difficult to cross, and many were killed in the flight, some just entering the river, some in the water, others after crossing, in ascending the cliffs. Some escaped on horseback, a few on foot; and, being dispersed every where in a few hours, brought the melancholy news of this unfortunate battle to Lexington. Many widows were now made. The reader may guess what sorrow filled the hearts of the inhabitants, exceeding any thing that I am able to describe.

Being reinforced, we returned to bury the dead, and found their bodies strewed every where, cut and mangled in a dreadful manner. This mournful scene exhibited a horror almost unparalleled: Some torn and eaten by wild beasts; those in the river eaten by fishes; all in such a putrified condition, that no one could be distinguished from another.

As soon as General Clark, then at the Falls of the Ohio, who was ever our ready friend, and merits the love and gratitude of all his countrymen, understood the circumstances of this unfortunate action, he ordered an expedition, with all possible haste, to pursue the savages, which was so expeditiously effected, that we overtook them within two miles of their towns, and probably might have obtained a great victory, had not two of their

number met us about two hundred poles before we came up. These returned quick as lightning to their camp with the alarming news of a mighty army in view.

The savages fled in the utmost disorder, evacuated their towns, and reluctantly left their territory to our mercy. We immediately took possession of Old Chelicothe, without opposition, being deserted by its inhabitants. We continued our pursuit through five towns on the Miami rivers, Old Chelicothe, Pecaway, New Chelicothe, Will's Towns, and Chelicothe, burnt them all to ashes, entirely destroyed their corn, and other fruits, and every where spread a scene of desolation in the country. In this expedition we took seven prisoners and five scalps, with the loss of only four men, two of whom were accidentally killed by our own army.

This campaign in some measure damped the spirits of the Indians, and made them sensible of our superiority. Their connections were dissolved, their armies scattered, and a future invasion put entirely out of their power; yet they continued to practice mischief secretly upon the inhabitants, in the exposed parts of the country.

In October following, a party made an excursion into that district called the Crab Orchard, and one of them, being advanced some distance before the others, boldly entered the house of a poor defenceless family, in which was only a Negro man, a woman and her children, terrified with the apprehensions of immediate death. The savage, perceiving their defenceless situation, without offering violence to the family, attempted to captivate the Negro, who happily proved an over-match for him, threw him on the ground, and, in the struggle, the mother of the children drew an axe from a corner of the cottage, and cut his head off, while her little daughter shut the door. The savages instantly appeared, and applied their tomahawks to the door. An old rusty gun-barrel, without a lock, lay in a corner, which the mother put through a small crevice, and the savages, perceiving it, fled. In the mean time, the alarm spread through the neighbourhood; the armed men collected immediately, and pursued the ravagers into the wilderness. Thus Providence, by the means of this Negro, saved the whole of the poor family from destruction.

From that time, until the happy return of peace between the United States and Great Britain, the Indians did us no mischief. Finding the great king beyond the water disappointed in his expectations, and conscious of the importance of the Long Knife, and their own wretchedness, some of the nations immediately desired peace; to which, at present, they seem universally disposed, and are sending ambassadors to General Clark, at the Falls of the Ohio, with the minutes of their Councils; a specimen of which, in the minutes of the Piankashaw Council, is subjoined.

To conclude, I can now say that I have verifies the saying of an old Indian who signed Col. Henderson's deed. Taking me by the hand, at the delivery thereof, "Brother," says he, "we have given you a fine land, but I believe you will have much trouble in settling it."

My footsteps have often been marked with blood, and therefore I can truly subscribe to its original name. Two darling sons, and a brother, have I lost by savage hands, which have also taken from me forty valuable horses, and abundance of cattle. Many dark and

sleepless nights have I been a companion for owls, separated from the cheerful society of men, scorched by the summer's sun, and pinched by the winter's cold, an instrument ordained to settle the wilderness. But now the scene is changed: peace crowns the sylvan shade.

What thanks, what ardent and ceaseless thanks are due to that all-superintending Providence which has turned a cruel war into peace, brought order out of confusion, made the fierce savages placid, and turned away their hostile weapons from our country! May the same Almighty Goodness banish the accursed monster, war, from all lands, with her hated associates, rapine and insatiable ambition! Let peace, descending from her native heaven, bid her olives spring amidst the joyful nations; and plenty, in league with commerce, scatter blessings from her copious hand!

APPENDIX D

ALLEN WOOD

Allen Wood

B: about 1773, ,Mason, Ky

D: unknown

Ara (Araminta) Jane Porter

B: about 1776, (possibly), Mason, Ky

D: ,Hancock, Ill.

M: 11 Janurary 1797

Children:

John Wood

B: 1 May 1798, ,,Ky

D: 30 April 1862, Centerville, Appanoose, Iowa

M: about 1813, ,,Ky, Nancy Ann Scott

M: 24 January 1821, ,Ripley, Indiana, Rebecca Belt

Aaron Wood

B: about 1800, ,,Ky

D: unknown

Thomas Wood

B: about 1805, ,,Ohio

D: unknown

M: Elizabeth Belt

Chapter Note 10



First Virginia Regiment of Foot, 1775-1783

The following information is from: <http://www.myrevolutionarywar.com/states/va/index.htm>

LINEAGE

- Authorized 21 August 1775 in the Virginia State Troops as the First Virginia Regiment.
- Organized 21 October 1775 at Williamsburg as a provincial defense unit composed of six musket and two rifle companies under the command of Patrick Henry. Each company was to consist of 68 enlisted men, with officers to include a captain, lieutenant and ensign (second lieutenant). Six of the companies were armed with muskets, and two with rifles.
- Adopted 1 November 1775 into the Continental Army.
- Reorganized 11 January 1776 to consist of 10 companies by raising two more musket companies.
- Assigned 27 February 1776 to the Southern Department.
- Relieved 20 July 1776 from the Southern Department and assigned to the Main Army.
- Assigned 5 October 1776 to Weedon's Brigade, an element of the Main Army.
- Relieved 17 October 1776 from Weedon's Brigade and assigned to Stirling's Brigade, an element of the Main Army.
- Relieved 22 May 1777 from Stirling's Brigade and assigned to the 1st Virginia Brigade, an element of the Main Army.
- Reorganized 1 November 1777 to consist of 8 companies
- Consolidated 12 May 1779 with the 9th Virginia Regiment and redesignated as the 1st Virginia Regiment, to consist of 9 companies
- Relieved 4 December 1779 from the 1st Virginia Brigade and assigned to the Southern Department.
- Captured 12 May 1780 by the British Army at Charleston, South Carolina.
- Disbanded 15 November 1783

ENGAGEMENTS

Chesapeake Bay

- **Time Period:** 4 September 1775 - 31 August 1776
- **Area:** Chesapeake Bay and adjacent coastal areas
- **Explanation:** Engagements with Lord Dunmore's land and naval forces

of August was far advanced, before they were in a condition to open the campaign. When all things were ready, the British commanders resolved to make their first attempt on Long Island. This was preferred to New York, as it abounded with those supplies which their forces required.

While Gen. George Washington marched his troops south and fortified New York, the British were taking steps to quell the rebellion with massive force. In February, Gen. Cornwallis was sent from England with a convoy loaded with troops to North Carolina. At the same time Gen. Clinton headed south from New England with another convoy. The plan was for the 2 forces to join up with the southern Tories and keep the South for the crown.

This action deserves an essay of its own, but to make a long story short, the Tories were already beaten by the patriots by the time the fleets arrived. Then poor planning, bad weather, and a determined patriot defense kept the British troops from landing.

The British landed without opposition, between two small towns, Utrecht and Gravesend. The American works protected a small peninsula having Wallabout Bay to the left, and stretching over to Red-Hook on the right, and the East-River being in their rear. Gen. Sullivan, with a strong force, was encamped within these works at Brooklyne. From the east-side of the narrows runs a ridge of hills covered with thick wood, about five or six miles in length, which terminates near Jamaica. There were 3 passes through these hills, one near the narrows, a second on the Flatbush road, and a third on the Bedford road, and they are all defensible. These were the only roads which could be passed from the southside of the hills to the American lines, except a road which led round the easterly end of the hills to Jamaica. The Americans had 800 men on each of these roads, and colonel Miles was placed with his battalion of riflemen, to guard the road from the south of the hills to Jamaica, and to watch the motions of the British.

On August 26th, Gen. de Heister, with his Hessians, took post at Flatbush, in the evening. In the following night the greater part of the British army, commanded by Clinton, marched to gain the road leading round the easterly end of the hills to Jamaica, and to turn the left of the Americans. He arrived about 2 hours before day, within half a mile of this road. One of his parties fell in with a patrol of American officers, and took them all prisoners, which prevented the early transmission of intelligence. Upon the first appearance of day Gen. Clinton advanced, and took possession of the heights over which the road passed. Gen. Grant, with the left wing, advanced along the coast by the west road, near the narrows; but this was intended chiefly as a feint.

The guard which was stationed at this road, fled without making any resistance. A few of them were afterwards rallied, and lord Stirling advanced with 1500 men, and took possession of a hill, about 2 miles from the American camp, and in front of Grant.

On August 27th an attack was made very early in the morning by the Hessians from Flatbush, under general de Heister, and by Grant on the coast, and was well supported for a considerable time by both sides. The Americans who opposed de Heister were first informed of the approach of Clinton, who had come round on their left. They immediately began to retreat to their camp, but were intercepted by the right wing under Clinton, who got into the rear of their left, and attacked them with his light infantry and dragoons, while returning to their lines. They were driven back till they were met by the Hessians. They were thus alternately chased and intercepted, between de Heister and Clinton. Some of their regiments nevertheless found their way to the camp. The Americans under Stirling, consisting of Miles' 2 battalions, Cols. Atlee's, Smallwood's, and Hache's, regiments, who were engaged with Grant, fought with great resolution for about 6 hours. They were uninformed of the movements made by Clinton, till some of the

troops under his command, had traversed the whole extent of country in their rear. Their retreat was thus intercepted, but several notwithstanding, broke through and got into the woods. Many threw themselves into the marsh, some were drowned, and others perished in the mud, but a considerable number escaped by this way to their lines.

The king's troops displayed great valour throughout the whole day. The variety of the ground occasioned a succession of small engagements, pursuits and slaughter, which lasted for many hours. British discipline in every instance, triumphed over the native valour of raw troops, who had never been in action, and whose officers were unacquainted with the stratagems of war.

The loss of the British and Hessians was about 450. The killed, wounded and prisoners of the Americans, including those who were drowned or perished in the woods or mud, considerably exceeded a thousand. Among the prisoners of the latter were two of their general officers, Sullivan and lord Stirling. Three Colonels, 4 lieutenant colonels, 3 majors, 18 captains, 43 lieutenants, and 11 ensigns. Smallwood's regiment, the officers of which were young men of the best families in the state of Maryland, sustained a loss of 259 men. The British after their victory were so impetuous, that it was with difficulty, they could be restrained from attacking the American lines.

In the time of, and subsequent to the engagement, Washington drew over to Long Island, the greatest part of his army. After he had collected his principal force there, it was his wish and hope, that Sir William Howe, would attempt to storm the works on the island. These though insufficient to stand a regular siege, were strong enough to resist a coup de main. The remembrance of Bunker's-hill, and a desire to spare his men, restrained the British general from making an assault. On the contrary he made demonstrations of proceeding by siege, and broke ground within three hundred yards to the left at Putnam's redoubt. On August 30th though general Washington wished for an assault, yet being certain that his works would be untenable, when the British batteries should be fully opened, he called a council of war, to consult on the measures proper to be taken. It was then determined that the objects in view were in no degree proportioned to the dangers to which, by a continuation on the island, they would be exposed. Conformably to this opinion, dispositions were made for an immediate retreat. This commenced soon after it was dark from 2 points, the upper and lower ferries, on East river. Gen. McDougal, regulated the embarkation at one, and colonel Knox at the other.

The intention of evacuating the island, had been so prudently concealed from the Americans, that they knew not whither they were going, but supposed to attack the enemy. The field artillery, tents, baggage, and about 9000 men were conveyed to the city of New York over East River, more than a mile wide, in less than 13 hours, and without the knowledge of the British, though not 600 yards distant. Providence, in a remarkable manner favored the retreating army. For some time after the Americans began to cross the state of the tide, and a strong north-east wind made it impossible for them to make use of their sail boats, and their whole number of row boats was insufficient for completing the business, in the course of the night.

But about 11:00 A.M., the wind died away, and soon after sprung up at south-east, and blew fresh, which rendered the sail boats of use, and at the same time made the passage from the island to the city, direct, easy and expeditious. Towards morning an extreme thick fog came up, which hovered over Long-Island, and by concealing the Americans, enabled them to complete their retreat without interruption, though the day had begun to dawn some time before it was finished. By a mistake in the transmission of orders, the American lines were evacuated for about 45 minutes, before the last embarkation took

place, but the British though so near, that their working parties could be distinctly heard, being enveloped in the fog knew nothing of the matter. The lines were repossessed and held till 6:00 A.M. when every thing except some heavy cannon was removed.

Gen. Mifflin, who commanded the rear guard left the lines, and under the cover of the fog got off safe. In about half an hour the fog cleared away, and the British entered the works which had been just relinquished. Had the wind not shifted, the half of the American army could not have crossed, and even as it was, if the fog had not concealed their rear, it must have been discovered, and could hardly have escaped. Sullivan, who was taken prisoner on Long Island, was immediately sent on parole.

Kip's Bay

The Battle of Kip's Bay September 15 , 1776 in Kips Bay, New York New York Campaign

Americans Commanded by Col. William Douglas

Forces	Killed	Wounded	Captured
900	60*	-	320

*Killed or Wounded

British Commanded by Gen. William Howe

Forces	Killed	Wounded	Captured
4000	12*	-	-

*Killed or Wounded

Conclusion: British Victory

On September 13, Gen. William Howe began to move his army across the East River to Kips Bay, there he hoped to cut Gen. George Washington off. 4,000 British stormed ashore at Kips Bay and routed the new American recruits in the area. This put the troops still on Manhattan in danger of being cut off. Gen. Israel Putnam led them to safety. Once again, Howe did not pursue the Americans immediately. He decided to wait until all of his troops were ashore before he started his advance.

Legend has it that Howe was held up by a patriotic woman named Mrs. Murray. He dallied at her home near Kips Bay for refreshments while the Americans escaped.

Washington himself had tried to get Putnam's men to make a stand, but to no avail. He had to be forcibly removed by his aides from the area when the British advance units appeared.

Harlem Heights

The Battle of Harlem Heights September 16 , 1776 in Harlem, New York New York Campaign

Americans Commanded by Gen. George Washington

Forces	Killed	Wounded	Captured
2,000	30	100	

British Commanded by Gen. William Howe

Forces	Killed	Wounded	Captured
5,000	14	157	-

*Killed or Wounded

Conclusion: American Victory

The Battle of Harlem Heights, though a minor engagement, showed the American troops they could win in battle after the loss on Long Island and the embarrassment of Kip's Bay.

After the British landing at Kip's Bay on the 15th, Gen. William Howe and his army advanced on the east side of Manhattan while the Americans advanced on the west side. On the 16th, the Americans still controlled northern Manhattan after the British had captured the southern portion of the Island. American skirmishers met British troops. The Americans held their position under fire, but began to retreat northward toward the main American lines as the number of British troops involved began to rise. The fighting ranged north before Gen. George Washington decided to send troops forward in 2 flanking maneuvers, one under Maj. Leitch and the other under Col. Knowlton. A third force of Americans made a feint to attack the British in their front.

One of Howe's subordinates made a critical mistake during the fight. A Fox Horn was sounded before the fight was over. A Fox Horn was used by fox hunters and signaled to other hunters that the fox had given up and was ready to be killed. The American force heard the horn and all this did was to motivate the men to fight even harder. Although the Americans attacked before the British were surrounded and Leitch and Knowlton were both mortally wounded, the British found themselves attacked on 3 sides and began their retreat.

The number of troops grew to nearly 5,000 on each side as the British were pushed back. Washington called off the attack after 6 hours because the Americans were not ready for a general engagement with the full British army.

White Plains

The Battle of White Plains
October 26, 1776 in New York
New York Campaign

Americans Commanded by Gen. George Washington

Forces	Killed	Wounded	Captured
14,500	28	126	

British Commanded by Gen. William Howe

Forces	Killed	Wounded	Captured
14,000	313*	-	-

*Killed or Wounded

Conclusion: American Victory

The events leading up to the Battle of White Plains in October flowed from the British defeat of Gen. George Washington's troops in the Battle of Long Island that previous summer. The American commander evacuated Long Island with his army, estimated at 14,000 men, intact to fight again another day.

Gen. William Howe, British Commander-In-Chief and his tory sympathizers, had a stronghold in New York City, while patriot fervor was stronger in upstate New York. Westchester County was considered to be the neutral ground though lower Westchester was more loyalist oriented.

Washington had concentrated his forces in Ft. Washington and Kings Bridge and slowly moved north to White Plains along the Albany Road. The rear, brought up by Gen. Charles Lee's Virginia Division, laden by baggage and provision, started out on October 18th travelling the west side of the Bronx River and took nine days to reach White Plains. There they joined Washington's advance unit which started arriving on the 21st and were fortifying Chatterton, Purdy, Merritt, Hatfield and Miller hills. Along the way, occasional skirmishes broke out across the Bronx River as the rival forces from time to time tested one another. There is the story of Col. Rufus Putnam reconnoitering for the colonials who stopped, reportedly at Wayside Cottage to pick up intelligence on British strength and local tory symphony.

Howe landed about 4,000 men at Throg's Neck on the 12th, with the intention of encircling Washington's army and bringing the rebellion to an early end. He was met by Col. Ed Hand's crack Pennsylvania riflemen who destroyed the bridge and causeway leading from Throg's Neck to the Westchester mainland. Howe's men were isolated for 6 days before they re-embarked and landed at Pell's Point in Pelham Manor on the 18th. Col. John Glover and his weakened brigade of Marblehead troops fortunately were posted in the right position, as a rearguard to Washington's northerly movement, assigned to protect the Boston and White Plains Post Roads. Glover commanded 3 regiments under Cols. Baldwin, Read and Shepherd. Glover placed his regiments in a succession of ambush points along the route of Howe's army. The ensuing enfilade and leapfrog ambush tactics triggered by Glover's daring headlong charge into the British and Hessian advance guard was cited later by the colonials, for training purposes, on how a small force could hold up a larger advancing troop. A few historians have theorized that the Hessian losses, not reported, could have been as high as 800 men. Assuming this to be true, "the Battle of Pelham" could have exceeded the 500 estimated combined number of soldiers killed at the Battle of White Plains.

Howe, normally cautious and deliberative, became even more so. The main body of the British and Hessian mercenaries proceeded up North Avenue in New Rochelle. The first column, under Gen. Henry Clinton, marched up Quaker Ridge Road to Weaver to Old Mamaroneck Road through East Scarsdale towards White Plains. The second column of Hessians marched up Mamaroneck Road to Secor Farm and bivouacked in the Heathcote area. Howe took up quarters at the Griffen House on October 25th and remained until November 4th.

Many Scarsdale families, (Varians, Barkers, Griffens and Cornells) of patriotic persuasion, fled as the British advanced in strength. The Secors and Tompkins, among the few exceptions, stayed to later recount for posterity their eyewitness accounts of unfolding events in Scarsdale. The Hessians, particularly in the forefront of the advance, pillaged and plundered the countryside regardless of friend or foe. (Helen Hultz reports that Hessian sabre marks can still be seen on the Wayside Cottage door where legend has it the Varians managed to hide their cow in an underground area.) Caleb Tompkins drove the family cattle before him to safety behind Washington's lines in White Plains. One account states that at one point he hid in a swampy area immersed up to his neck.

British movement, as previously reported, did not go unchallenged. On October 22nd, Washington dispatched Col. Haslett's Delaware Regiment and Col. Green's 1st and 3rd

Virginia Regiments, 750 men in all, to harass the right wing of Howe's army stationed in Heathcote where Col. Rogers Queen's "American" Rangers (loyalists) were encamped. Haslett's guides in a nighttime raid, ran into Roberts' pickets. Fierce hand-to-hand fighting ensued. The brief skirmish left 25 British dead (buried in an orchard near the school house that served as Rogers' headquarters). Haslett returned with 36 prisoners including John and James Angevine - whose house at 164 Mamaroneck Road still stands. Thereafter, the Queen's Rangers became ineffective and disintegrated as a fighting unit though whether as a result of this engagement, history does not make clear.

October 28th is officially listed as the opening day of the Battle of White Plains. Bugles and drums called to battle the thousands of British and Hessians in camps and bivouacs throughout the Scarsdale area. Caleb Secor, standing on his property, observed Howe's forces marching through Scarsdale's roads and byways preceded by an enforced labor battalion made up of prisoner and local patriots who cleared the roads, removed the fences and built bridges as the British advanced. All roads were military highways mixing the last of the autumnal hues with the bright British redcoats and the Hessian blues.

Howe's battle plan called for a pincer movement in attacking Chatterton Hill (within 1 mile of Scarsdale). One arm of the pincer was led by Lt. Gen. DeHeister, who commanded the Hessians moving westward down Mamaroneck Road to Post Road fanning out through Scarsdale - mainly in Greenacres, and into parts of Fox Meadow, possibly as far as Olmstead Road. Fenimore Road, no more than a cowpath leading towards Hartsdale/Greenburgh, was the direction the Hessians were taking.

Washington directed Maj. Gen. Joseph Spencer and 2,500 troops to block the Hessians from approaching Chatterton Hill. The colonials moved across the Bronx River and engaged the Hessians throwing them back with their musket volleys using all of Greenacres as a battlefield.

The tide of battle changed abruptly as the Hessians' Col. Ralle and his mounted dragons rode onto the fields of Greenacres, and together with the superior number of their fellow Hessians routed the continentals who broke and ran to the other side of the Bronx River with the Hessians in hot pursuit at the ford (1/4 mile from Scarsdale) and taking refuge behind the defense fortification at Chatterton Hill. So went the first day of the battle of White Plains. The casualties in Scarsdale were 22 killed, 24 wounded and 1 missing. The British eventually pushed the colonials off of Chatterton Hill but paid a price in doing so. After the redcoats were thrown back following a couple of uphill charges, Col. Ralle and his calvary, once again, came onto the scene and carried the day for the British. Howe's procrastination and the heavy rains that subsequently fell turned what might have been a big British victory into a defeat of sorts. On November 4th, Howe inexplicably turned his forces south to move onto a 2,000 man continental detachment holding Ft. Washington.

Washington's army once again escaped intact heading north, eventually across the Hudson River, and subsequently scored pivotal victories at Princeton and Trenton (New Jersey) where Col. Ralle was killed with many of his fellow Hessians who met the same fate or were taken prisoner.

Thus was Washington to avenge the opening day battle in Scarsdale where Col. Ralle and the Hessians carried the day.

Fort Washington

The Battle of Fort Washington
November 16, 1776 in Fort Washington, New York

Americans Commanded by Col. Robert McGaw

Forces	Killed	Wounded	Captured
2,967	53	96	2,818

British Commanded by Baron W. Knyphausen

Forces	Killed	Wounded	Captured
8,000	78	374	-

Conclusion: British Victory

Heavy rains spoiled Maj. Gen. William Howe's planned second attack on the American army near White Plains on October 31. The next day, the Americans were found to be apparently well entrenched at North Castle Heights. The rebel earthworks were composed largely of cornstalks pulled from nearby fields, whose roots, full of clinging soil, faced outward. Howe may have been discouraged by these illusory defenses, but his goal remained the complete removal of American troops from Manhattan, not the annihilation of Washington's army. His attention returned to Fort Washington which the American commander in chief had left garrisoned under Col. Robert Magaw after a general rebel evacuation of the island.

On the night of November 2 a defector, William Demont, entered the camp of Lord Hugh Percy at McGowan's Pass, south of Fort Washington. Demont had been Magaw's adjunct; the deserter placed the plans of the fort into Percy's hands. Although Howe had probably already begun to arrange operations against Fort Washington, exact knowledge of the fortification and its defenses would assist his attack.

Fort Washington's works, built the previous July, covered a hill 230 feet high and a mile long. Vertical cliffs rendered the fort unassailable from the Hudson River below. Additional protection was provided by Fort Tyron on the north, Laurel Hiss on the east, and the old Harlem Heights defenses on the south. Fort Lee stood opposite Fort Washington in New Jersey. Between the 2 forts ran a line of sunken obstructions to prevent British ships from passing up the Hudson.

The natural defenses afforded by Fort Washington's position were superior, but the fort itself was less than ideal. A pentagonal earthwork without ditches or palisades, the structure lacked barracks, bombproofs, and an interior source of water. A captain stationed in the fort noted that it had none of "those exterior, multiplied obstacles and defenses, that...could entitle it to the name of fortress, in any degree capable of withstanding a siege." This weakness, recognized by some of the garrison went unnoticed by Maj. Gen. Nathaniel Greene, who was in charge of both forts.

Washington had been out of touch with Greene since October 22. Now, as Howe began moving south to direct the seizure of Fort Washington, the American commander had to

consider the fort's defensibility. On November 5, 3 British vessels passed over the river barricades in the Hudson amidst rebel artillery fire and anchored, undamaged, at the northern tip of the island, Washington, in the process of deploying most of his troops in Westchester County, was much alarmed by this news and wrote to Greene on November 8, "I am inclined to think it will not be prudent to hazard the men and stores," but "as you are on the spot, I leave it to you to give such orders as to evacuating Mount Washington as you judge best."

Greene replied that the fort served some purpose beyond the prevention of ship passage up the Hudson. It hampered British communication between the island and the country to the north, compelled the maintenance of British troops at Kingsbridge (which connected Manhattan to Westchester County), and was clearly regarded as important by the British, or else they would not attempt its capture. These arguments were offset by Greene's assurance that if the situation grew dangerous, the stores and men could be shifted to Fort Lee at any time. Magaw said the garrison could hold out through December. But Washington's second in command, Maj. Gen. Charles Lee, expressed ominous concern. In a letter to Joseph Reed, the adjutant general, Lee wrote, "I cannot conceive what circumstances give to Fort Washington so great a degree of value and importance as to counterbalance the probability or almost certainty of losing 1,400 of our best troops."

With some 2,000 of his troops, Washington moved down the west side of the Hudson and reached Fort Lee on November 13. Meanwhile, Greene had reinforced Magaw's original garrison of about 2,000 men (Lee's figure was low) with an additional 900. Greene continued to favor a defense of the fort, and Washington finally relied upon his subordinate's judgment. The commander in chief would later write that Congress's desire to retain the area's defense and his own wish to keep an impediment in the enemy's way "caused that warfare in my mind and hesitation which ended in the loss of the garrison." On November 4, Howe dispatched several brigades to march quickly south and reinforce Brig. Wilhelm von Knyphausen. His division had crossed the river at Kingsbridge on November 2 and began harassment of the rebels in the northern outpost of Fort Tyron. During the night of November 14, 30 British flatboats sailed up the river past Fort Washington undetected by the Americans. The following day the enemy approached the fort in force.

Cornwallis and Brig. Edward Mathew were to approach from across the Harlem River on the east, and Percy was to strike from the south. A British officer was sent to summon Magaw to surrender with the threat of no quarter if the fort was stormed. Magaw flatly refused. He had dispersed his forces at the various outposts on the three sides of the fort, posting minor detachments in between. The Americans covered a large perimeter of four to five miles. Early on the morning of November 16, Knyphausen opened the attack against Col. Moses Rawlings's Virginia and Maryland riflemen who managed to stall the Germans temporarily. Percy advanced on Lt. Col. Lambert Cadwalader's Pennsylvanians but them halted (to the Americans' surprise) to wait for a signal gun from Cornwallis or Mathew. Washington, Greene, Maj. Gen. Israel Putnam, and Brig. Gen. Hugh Mercer crossed to Fort Washington as the firing commenced, but they could do nothing to help Magaw and so returned to Fort Lee to watch the developing action.

Mathew, who had been somewhat delayed by the tide pushed across the river and established a foothold on Laurel Hill. Cornwallis followed with more troops. Once the signal had gone out to Percy, pressure on the Americans began to mount. Rawlings was force back and Cadwalader withdrew. Confusion was rampant within the reduced

perimeter; the retreating Americans poured into the fort. By 3:00 P.M. the Germans had reached Fort Washington from the north, and the British were in view on the east and south. Despite the original surrender terms, another flag was sent into Magaw to ask for capitulation. Realizing that to stand now would create a bloodbath within the crowded fort, Magaw surrendered.

The attack cost the British and Germans 67 killed, 335 wounded, and 6 missing. The Americans suffered 54 killed and 2,858 captured, including probably more than 1,000 wounded. The loss of all their arms and equipment was especially damaging.

Fort Lee was now untenable and Washington began transporting the ammunition out of the fort. On the night of November 19 the British brought boats through the Harlem River and carried a force under Cornwallis across the Hudson in the rain. They landed about 6 mile north of Fort Lee and began marching southward. Washington and Greene roused the garrison to a hundred flight and led them to Hackensack, then toward Newark and New Brunswick. Cornwallis marched into the empty fort on November 20 and found tents, military baggage, 50 canon, and 1,000 barrels of flour. More than 100 skulkers were rounded up in the neighborhood, a few were killed.

Cornwallis pursued the Americans with some reinforcements sent from Howe and routed them at each New Jersey town where they stopped. Many of Howe's officers believed he would maintain this drive. As Lt. Frederick Mackenzie noted in his diary for November 21, "This is now the time to push these rascals, and if we do, and not give them time to recover themselves, we may depend upon it they will never make head again. A body of troops landed at this time at Amboy might, in conjunction with those already in Jersey, push on to Philadelphia, with very little difficulty." But Howe had begun preparations for an offensive in Rhode Island. He knew there was not time enough before winter's arrival to employ the same troop force in both New Jersey and Rhode Island.

In addition, Howe was criticized by some for sparing the garrison at Fort Washington. Capt. Lt. Archibald Robertson considered the rebels' losses "trifling." Thomas Jones, a former justice of the New York Supreme Court being held prisoner in Connecticut, believed that a general slaughter would have struck panic through the rebel countryside and forced congressional submission. "The most rigid severity at the first would have been the greatest mercy and lenity in the end." Of the nearly 2,000 Americans captured in the fall of the fort, over 100 were officers. Many of these were paroled and walked the New York streets in their uniforms to the chagrin and even fear of the loyalists and British. The soldiers were eventually put aboard prison ships in the harbor to languish; large numbers of them died under the atrocious conditions.

But Howe's victory had been decisive, and for the Americans, the aftereffects were serious. The loss of the garrison troubled Washington because the enlistments of many of his remaining troops were to expire in less than two months. An alarming percentage of his men were unfit for duty from sickness or want of clothes and shoes. Perhaps even more significant was the tremendous loss of precious material. The British had seized 146 canon, 12,000 shot and shell, 2,800 muskets, and 400,000 cartridges. American resources had been dispersed and inadequate before this capture; now they were stretched very thin indeed. Washington would soon make his winter headquarters in New Jersey for a number of reasons, one of which was to protect the invaluable forges and furnaces in the northwestern part of the state.

The blame for squandering the men and supplies in the 2 forts rested naturally with Magaw, Greene, and Washington. Greene recognized that the lines around Fort Washington had been too extensive for 2,900 men to defend, especially in a disordered

state. Since Washington had some early doubts about the fort's impregnability, his vacillation, finally favoring Greene's discretion, was inexcusable. Washington's trusted friend Reed termed this a "fatal indecision of mind." Many British were light-headed after their successful New York campaign and felt that the end of the war must be near. But Washington's error was not fatal. Nor was his disappointment so deep that he rejected thoughts of raising a new army.

HISTORY

The First Virginia Regiment was authorized by the Virginia Convention of July 17, 1775, as a provincial defense unit composed of six musket and two rifle companies under the command of Patrick Henry. Each company was to consist of 68 enlisted men, with officers to include a captain, lieutenant and ensign (second lieutenant). Six of the companies were armed with muskets, and two with rifles.

In September the companies began arriving in Williamsburg from the surrounding counties where each was recruited. The regiment encamped behind the College of William and Mary where the men were trained in military drill and maneuvers. On December 28, 1775, the Continental Congress in Philadelphia recommended that each regiment should have 10 companies, and the First Virginia soon raised two more musket companies.

The First, along with the Second Regiment saw service in the Tidewater area fighting the troops of Virginia's Royal Governor, Lord Dunmore. Dunmore raised two Loyalists regiments and a small unit made up of runaway slaves to reclaim the wayward government of the colony. Two British Grenadier companies soon augmented his force. Members of the First Virginia engaged Dunmore's troops at Hampton, Jamestown and Norfolk. On December 9th, 1775, three companies from the First joined the Second Virginia Regiment in defeating Dunmore's troops at the Battle of Great Bridge near Norfolk. Dunmore made several more attempts to gain a stronghold on the colony but in August 1776 he abandoned Virginia.

On February 15, 1776, the Regiment was accepted into the new Continental Line authorized by Congress in Philadelphia. At this time, Patrick Henry, commander of all the Virginia forces, was given a Continental commission as a Colonel, commanding only the First Virginia. Recognizing this as a demotion, Henry refused the commission and resigned effective February 28, 1776. To protest Henry's demotion the officers in the First asked to be discharged but Henry persuaded them to stay with the army.

The battle of Harlem Heights

Between February and August 1776, the First Virginia trained in Williamsburg with other regiments under the command of General Andrew Lewis. On August 16, the Regiment began the long march north to join General Washington's Grand Army, in New York City. Before leaving, the men of the First and Second Regiments were asked to re-enlist for three years, or for the duration of the war. Although most of the men of the Second refused to sign up for such a long term, nearly all of the First Virginia re-enlisted.

Harlem Heights

On September 15, 1776, the First Virginia, along with the Third Virginia joined Washington's army near Harlem Heights, New York. Having recently suffered the humiliation of being chased out of New York City and subsequently out-maneuvered by the British, Washington's Continentals looked to the Virginians for new strength and hope. The following day three companies of the Virginians joined Lt. Col. Thomas Knowlton's Connecticut Rangers in reconnoitering the enemy lines. Running into a detachment of British, the Continentals soon found themselves in heated battle and managed to force the British to withdraw. Maryland troops joined the battle, but Washington soon called his troops back, not willing to risk a full-scale engagement. During the engagement, Major Andrew Leitch of the First Virginia was mortally wounded, as was Lt. Col. Knowlton. The success and heroism shown by the Continental troops in this relatively small engagement was a much needed morale boost for the Americans.

In order to avoid a full-scale engagement Washington continued to retreat from Howe's slow-moving British redcoats. On the night of October 21, 600 Continentals, with 160 men from the First and Third Virginia Regiments attacked a Tory force of about 500 men including Robert Roger's "Queen's American Rangers." The Tories suffered twenty killed and 36 captured, while the Continentals claimed only 12 wounded.

Trenton and Princeton

By the end of December 1776, Washington's immediate army had shrunk from casualties, disease, desertion, and the termination of enlistments to about 2,500 men fit for duty. In the hope of seizing another morale victory, if not a strategic one, Washington decided on a daring attack on Hessian troops at Trenton, New Jersey. In the early morning hours of December 26, Washington's small band, including the First Virginia, crossed the Delaware River, reaching the outskirts of Trenton about 8:00 am. The surprised Hessians tried in vain to hold off the Americans, but by 9:45 am the Germans were forced to surrender.

Within a few days of the American victory at Trenton, British troops marched to the town to engage Washington's small army. The two armies began firing on each other across a creek but darkness soon put an end to the fighting. When dawn arrived the next morning, the British were surprised to find that Washington's army had quietly pulled out in the dark. The Continentals had marched all night to the village of Princeton where they stumbled into a British force just setting out for Trenton. The Americans were divided into two groups, with the Virginians part of Green's division under Gen. Hugh Mercer, guarding the road to Trenton. The remaining Americans proceeded to attack Princeton from the west.

Col. Mawhood's two British regiments had already departed Princeton when Mercer's troops were spotted behind them. The British turned back toward Princeton and engaged Mercer's troops. With about 300 men on each side facing one another, the British soon charged with bayonets. Mercer was one of the first to fall victim to the bayonet charge. Twenty one year old Captain John Fleming of the First Virginia rallied the Regiment but was soon killed, and 18 year old second lieutenant Bartholomew Yates was mortally wounded.

Confusion ensued for the Americans, with the Virginia regiments in the heaviest fighting and suffering the most casualties. With the appearance of Washington on the battlefield the Americans rallied, forcing the British to flee, throwing down their weapons as they ran.

During the heavy fighting Lieutenant Yates was shot in the side, and as he lay on the ground, the British shot him again in the chest, bayoneted him 13 times and clubbed him in the head. He survived for a week before dying. A tribute to Captain Fleming read: "(he) behaved and died as bravely as a Caesar would have done, ordering his men to dress [form a line] before firing, though the enemy was within 40 yards of him, advancing fast with abusive threats what they would do. However, they were mistaken, and most of them cut to pieces."

The First Virginia spent the winter with Washington's army at Morristown, New Jersey. The fifteen Virginia Regiments had a total of 2,925 men fit for duty, averaging less than 200 men each. Troop strength was low because of expired enlistments, disease, and battle casualties. The First Virginia could only muster 64 privates present and fit for duty, and all troops were in need of clothing and other necessities.

Washington's troops spent the winter and spring recruiting and rebuilding the army. The main British Army under General Howe in New York made several forays into New Jersey. Washington waited for Howe to move out of New York, expecting him to move his army north to join General Burgoyne near Albany. Instead, Howe eventually sailed his troops to Head of Elk, Maryland where they began to march on Philadelphia.

On August 24, 1777, Washington's Army of 16,000 regulars and militia marched through Philadelphia to Wilmington, Delaware, and by September 11, the two armies were poised for battle near Brandywine Creek, Pennsylvania.

Howe divided his force for a frontal attack on the Americans and a flanking attack on the American right. Washington tried to counter the British flanking movement, ordering Green's division, including the First Virginia, to support the outflanked Americans under General Sullivan. Greene's men covered almost four miles in 45 minutes, arriving to find Sullivan's men retreating in a rout. Greene's Virginians opened their line to allow the panicked Americans through and then held off the advancing British to allow Washington's Army to fall back and retire in order. Greene's troops held out against an enemy force three times larger until nightfall, preventing the British from destroying the entire American army.

Although Washington's Army had been outmaneuvered at Brandywine, they had fought a larger British force and managed to hold them off until dark. The American's spirits were high and Washington was anxious for another chance to engage the enemy. The British continued their march to Philadelphia, with Washington looking for an opportunity to make a stand against them. On September 15 he marched his army into battle formation before the British but a severe storm rendered the American's ammunition useless and drove them from the field. The British entered Philadelphia unopposed on September 26.

Continuing to look for a favorable opportunity to engage the British, Washington decided to attack a large enemy force garrisoned at Germantown, Pennsylvania. Washington devised a plan that included dividing his force into several divisions that would march separately through the night and attack from different directions simultaneously at dawn on October 4th.

As part of Muhlenberg's Brigade, the First Virginia arrived an hour after Sullivan's troops began the attack on the main British camp. A heavy fog made the complex plan even more confusing and some of the American troops even began to fire on one another.

When the fighting started, a small enemy force retreated into the Chew House, a heavy stone manor that proved almost impervious to canon attack. A large part of the American force was delayed trying to force the British inside the house to surrender. In the mean time Sullivan and Greene's troops managed to attack the main British force, with Greene's Virginians driving through the British line in a bayonet charge that carried to the enemy's camp. Prisoners were taken by the First Virginia, but with the rest of the American attack still in confusion or stalled at the Chew House, the Virginians found themselves surrounded by the enemy and forced to fight their way out. The Virginians lost 100 prisoners they had taken, and in the process, nearly all of the Ninth Virginia Regiment was captured. The battle ended with the Americans withdrawing and Greene's division holding off a determined British attack as the Americans fell back.

Over the next two months both Washington and Howe looked for favorable opportunities to renew the fighting but neither found one to his liking.

The winter of 1777-1778 saw the First Virginia Regiment with Washington's Army at Valley Forge. The troops built log huts and many of the officers of the Virginia Regiments were sent home during the winter to recruit for their vastly under-strength units. The American Army at Valley Forge, including the men of the First Virginia, were taught the new American Drill under the command of Baron von Steuben. During the winter, General Howe returned to England, and General Clinton took command of the British in Philadelphia. By June, Clinton decided to move his army back to New York City, and Washington saw an opportunity to take on the British with his newly trained Army.

On June 28, Washington ordered General Charles Lee with 2,000 men to attack the rear of the marching British column. Lee's force joined by 1,500 Americans under General Charles Scott, soon found themselves facing the entire British Army. General Lee retreated while the Americans under General Scott held until surrounded and then they too retreated in good order. Falling back about two miles, the retreating Americans ran into General Washington riding ahead of the main American Army.

Washington managed to halt the retreat and form the Americans into a line of battle while more troops arrived to extend the line on high ground. When the British arrived they made several attacks but without coordination each was repulsed. In Sterling's Brigade, the First Virginia, alongside the First and Third New Hampshire Regiments, attacked the 42nd Royal Highland Regiment. Both sides exchanged volleys at short range with the Highlanders forced to retreat from the field. Several men of the First Virginia were killed,

including Major Edmund Dickinson, while the Highlanders sustained heavy casualties.

By the end of the afternoon, heat had also taken the lives of men on both sides of the field. Both armies rested overnight and Clinton moved the British on toward New York early the next morning. With the Americans standing up to and repulsing the British the battle was considered a great victory for Washington and his Army.

By September 1778, the entire Virginia Continental Line was reduced in strength due to the hardships of campaign and disease and the three-year enlistments of many of the soldiers was about to expire. A board of officers met at White Plains, New York to consolidate the fifteen Virginia regiments to eleven. The remains of the 9th Virginia, which had suffered the capture of many of its men at Germantown, was absorbed into the First, but this only filled six of the prescribed eight companies.

In May of 1779, and again in September 1779, the Virginia Regiments were consolidated to create regiments of acceptable strength. The First Virginia was consolidated with the 10th and later the 5th, 7th, 11th Regiments. On May 7, Washington ordered Colonel Richard Parker, commander of the First Virginia to return to the state to recruit new troops to reinforce General Benjamin Lincoln in Charleston, South Carolina. At the same time, the men of the First Virginia were placed under the temporary command of Colonel William Davies in Parker's absence.

Stony Point

By the summer of 1779 the war in the north had become a stalemate, with Clinton and the main British Army quartered in New York and Washington's main army at various points outside the city. Washington decided to have his newly formed light infantry attack a British fort at Stony Point, New York. Under the command of General Anthony Wayne, 1,500 Americans, including men from the First Virginia and other Virginia Regiments, attacked the fort in the early morning hours of July 16. Using only their bayonets, the Americans captured the fort and 400 British troops in just fifteen minutes. Fifteen Americans were killed in the attack, including a private from the First Virginia.

In August, members of the First Virginia took part in another raid on a small British fort at Paulus Hook, New Jersey. Major Henry Lee and his cavalry, supported by handpicked infantry, including 21 men from the First and 10th Virginia, captured 158 British at the fort during the daring raid. The rest of the First Virginia was called on to support Lee as his force made their return through enemy territory.

In December, under the command of General William Woodford, the First Virginia, along with most of the Virginia troops in the north, began the long march south to join General Lincoln's army in the Carolinas.

General Woodford arrived in Charleston on April 7, 1780 with the remains of his Virginia troops. With Woodford were only 700 of the 2,000 men that had started the march in December. Many of the troops had their terms of enlistment expire during the four-month march; others had fallen ill or deserted. Woodford's men were organized into a brigade made up of the First, Second and Third Continental Regiments. Colonel William Russell was commander of the First Virginia at this time.

Colonel Richard Parker had arrived with his newly raised regiment on March 31, now referred to as the First Virginia Detachment and separate from the First Virginia Continental Regiment. Parker was joined by the Second Virginia Detachment under the command of Colonel William Heath.

The British under General Clinton arrived by sea and began the siege of Charleston on April 14. By April 21 the Americans in the city were cut off on the landside as well. On April 24, Colonel Parker was killed during a British assault. Henry Lee described his death: "Always beloved and respected, late in the siege he received a ball in the forehead, and fell dead in the trenches, embalmed in the tears of his faithful soldiers, and honored by the regret of the whole army."

By May 7 provisions were low with casualties mounting daily. After conferring with his officers, Lincoln agreed to surrender terms on May 12, 1780. Over 5,000 American troops were captured, including almost all of the Virginia Continental Line. The terms of surrender stipulated that the militia would be allowed to go home, while the regulars would be imprisoned within the town. The officers were soon moved to quarters outside the city, awaiting exchange. Some months later many of the captured were moved to harsher conditions aboard British prison ships where many perished or remained until the end of the war.

Some men of the First Virginia managed to escape capture, perhaps by posing as militia when they were allowed to leave. In addition, several lieutenants were not in Charleston with their companies and were not captured. Some of these men found service with other units in the months after the fall of Charleston. The "new" Ninth Virginia Regiment, in garrison at Fort Pitt was the only Virginia Continental Regiment to remain in the field.

Many individuals who served with the First Virginia and were not in captivity participated in the battles that followed, including the victories at Cowpens, Guilford Courthouse and Yorktown. These included men whose enlistments in the First Virginia expired and who later reenlisted with other units, as well as officers who were promoted to higher ranks in other units.

On February 12, 1781, a board of officers met at Chesterfield Court House, Virginia and created the First Virginia Regiment as a "paper" organization. With over 1,300 Virginia Continentals still held prisoner at Charleston, South Carolina, the reorganization was largely designed to establish relative seniority of the officers. The personnel who had managed to escape capture were formed into a temporary battalion under Lt. Col. Thomas Posey.

In May 1782, with most of the fighting over, another board of officers met and created new First and Second Regiments from new recruits and veterans. On January 1, 1783, the various Virginia troops still in service were consolidated into one large battalion, designated the First Virginia Regiment, and a small battalion of two companies, designated the Second. Most of Virginia's Continental's were mustered out of service in June 1783, with the final three companies of the first being discharged in July or August.

ENGAGEMENTS

Northern New Jersey

- **Time Period:** 20 November 1776 - 26 June 1777
- **Area:** Staten Island and Northern New Jersey
- **Explanation:** Engagements from capture of Fort Lee to British withdrawal to start the invasion of Pennsylvania

Trenton - Princeton

- **Time Period:** 8 December 1776 - 6 January 1777
- **Area:** Southern New Jersey
- **Explanation:** Engagements from Washington's retreat across the Delaware River to his encampment at Morristown

The British followed up their success on Long Island with a series of landings on Manhattan Island which compelled Washington to retire northward to avoid entrapment. When Forts Mifflin and Mifflin on the Hudson above Manhattan were lost in mid-November 1776, Washington retreated across New Jersey with General Howe in close pursuit, escaping finally over the Delaware into Pennsylvania with about 3,000 men. Howe then went into winter quarters in New York City, leaving garrisons at Newport, R. I., and in several New Jersey towns. In December 1776, Washington determined to make a surprise attack on the British garrison in Trenton, a 1,400-man Hessian force, in the hope that a striking victory would lift the badly flagging American morale. Reinforcements had raised Washington's army to about 7,000 and on Christmas night (25-26 December) he ferried about 2,400 men of this force across the ice-choked Delaware. At 0800 hours they converged on Trenton in two columns, achieving complete surprise. After only an hour and a half of fighting, the Hessians surrendered. Some 400 of the garrison escaped southward to Bordentown, N. J., when two other American columns failed to get across the Delaware in time to intercept them. About 30 were killed and 918 captured. American losses were only 4 dead and a like number wounded.

After the successful coup at Trenton, Washington recrossed the Delaware into Pennsylvania with his Hessian prisoners. But he reoccupied Trenton on 30 - 31 December 1776, and collected there a force of 5,200 men, about half militia. Meanwhile, Maj. Gen. Charles Cornwallis, British commander in New Jersey, who was in New York at the time of the attack on Trenton, returned gathering troops as he came. He entered Trenton with some 6,000 British regulars on 2 January and faced Washington's forces, which had withdrawn southward behind Assunpink Creek. The Americans were in a most precarious position with their backs to the Delaware. Fortunately, Cornwallis delayed his attack until the following morning. This gave Washington's men an opportunity to steal off quietly by a side road during the night of 2 - 3 January, leaving their campfires burning brightly. They slipped southward and eastward undetected around the enemy's flank and by morning of the 3rd had arrived at Princeton, where they encountered a column of British regulars led by Col. Charles Mawhood just leaving the town to join Cornwallis. In a brief engagement the Americans defeated the British, inflicting losses of 400-600 killed, wounded, and prisoners at a cost of 30 patriots killed and wounded. Mawhood's force

retired in disorder toward Trenton and New Brunswick while Washington moved on north to Morristown, where thickly wooded hills provided protection against a British attack. Here he established his winter headquarters on the flank of the British line of communications, compelling General Howe to withdraw his forces in New Jersey back to New Brunswick and points eastward.

Defense of Philadelphia

- **Time Period:** 25 August - 19 December 1777
- **Area:** Eastern Pennsylvania, Maryland and Delaware
- **Explanation:** Engagements from British landing at Head of Elk to Washington's encampment at Valley Forge

The campaign to seize Philadelphia, the second major phase of British strategy in 1777, began in late July. Some 15,000 troops under Howe's command sailed from New York on 23 July and landed at Head of Elk (now Elkton), Maryland, a month later (25 August). Washington, with about 11,000 men, took up a defensive position blocking the way to Philadelphia at Chad's Ford on the eastern side of Brandywine Creek in Pennsylvania. Howe attacked on 11 September, sending Cornwallis across the creek in a wide-sweeping flanking movement around the American right, while his Hessian troops demonstrated opposite Chad's Ford. Maj. Gen. Nathanael Greene's troops staved off Cornwallis' threatened envelopment of Washington's whole force, and the Americans fell back to Chester in a hard-pressed but orderly retreat. Patriot losses in this engagement totaled about 1,000 killed, wounded, and prisoners. British casualties were less than 600.

After their victory at Brandywine the British forces under Howe maneuvered in the vicinity of Philadelphia for two weeks, virtually annihilating a rear guard force under Brig. Gen. Anthony Wayne at Paoli on 21 September 1777, before moving unopposed into the city on 26 September. Howe established his main encampment in nearby Germantown, stationing some 9,000 men there. Washington promptly attempted a coordinated attack against this garrison on the night of 3 - 4 October. Columns were to move into Germantown from four different directions and begin the assault at dawn. Two of the columns, both made up of militia, never appeared to take part in the attack, but in the early phases of the fighting the columns under Greene and Mifflin achieved considerable success. However, a dense early morning fog which resulted in some American troops firing on each other while it permitted the better disciplined British to re-form for a counterattack and a shortage of ammunition contributed to the still not fully explained retreat of the Americans, beginning about 0900. Howe pursued the Colonials a few miles as they fell back in disorder, but he did not exploit his victory. American losses were 673 killed and wounded and about 400 taken prisoner. British losses were approximately 533 killed and wounded.

Philadelphia - Monmouth

- **Time Period:** 20 December 1777 - 10 July 1778
- **Area:** Pennsylvania, Delaware and New Jersey
- **Explanation:** Operations relating to the British occupation of Philadelphia and withdrawal to Sandy Hook

After conclusion of the Franco-American Alliance (6 February 1778) British forces in America had to give consideration to the new threat created by the powerful French fleet. General Clinton, who relieved Howe as British commander in America on 8 May 1778, decided to shift the main body of his troops from Philadelphia to a point nearer the coast where it would be easier to maintain close communications with the British Fleet. Consequently, he ordered evacuation of the 10,000-man garrison in Philadelphia on 18 June. As these troops set out through New Jersey toward New York, Washington broke camp at his winter headquarters in Valley Forge, and began pursuit of Clinton with an army of about 13,500 men. Advance elements under Mad. Gen. Charles Lee launched the initial attack on the British column as it marched out of Monmouth Courthouse (now Freehold), N. J., on 28 June, an extremely hot day. For reasons not entirely clear Lee did not follow up early advantages gained, and when British reinforcements arrived on the scene he ordered a retreat. This encouraged Clinton to attack with his main force. Washington relieved Lee and assumed personal direction of the battle, which continued until dark without either side retiring from the field. But, during the night, the British slipped away to Sandy Hook, N. J., from where their fleet took them to New York City. The British reported losses of 65 killed, 155 wounded, and 64 missing; the Americans listed 69 killed, 161 wounded, and 130 missing. General Lee was subsequently court-martialed and suspended from service for disobedience and misbehavior. Washington's army moved northward, crossed the Hudson, and occupied positions at White Plains, N.Y.

Charleston Campaign

Time Period: March 29- May 12, 1780

Area: Charleston, South Carolina

Explanation: none

The 2 engagements at Charleston, South Carolina, are reflected on a single streamer. The first campaign blunted the British threat in the southern theater for 3 years, and the second, while a defeat for the Americans, did not result in a cessation of hostilities in the south. Guerrillas began to harry British posts and lines of communications, and the American grass roots strength began once again to assert itself and to deny the British the fruits of military victory won in the field.

This is an example of the experiences of one regiment, there are fourteen more regiments that Allan Wood could have belonged to. For additional information see <http://www.myrevolutionarywar.com/states/va/index.htm>

Culpeper in Denmore's War By Kyle Willyard

Copied from: <http://www.liming.org/nwta/culdunmore.html>

On an August day in 1774, a company of forty men headed west from the county of Culpeper. They were on their way to join forces under Colonel Andrew Lewis who, by orders of Virginia's governor Dunmore, was preparing to march on Indian Nations, principally Shawnee, that were attacking along the frontier in the latest of sporadic uprisings.

At the head of the company was Colonel John Fields, a veteran of the French and Indian War and one of the most prestigious men in the county. Colonel Fields was born in Culpeper County in 1720. He married Anna Rogers Clark, sister of General George Rogers Clark. In 1756, he entered the military to help protect the frontier and served as a captain under Forbes in 1758. In 1764 he served under Bouquet as a major. It was with this tide that many still addressed him. After serving in the legislature in 1765, he was made colonel of the militia.

Only a month before, a party under Colonel Fields was on an exploring trip down the Kanawha River when they were attacked by Indians. Field's son Ephraim and a negro maid were captured. Colonel Fields and the rest of the party narrowly escaped. (Thwaites and Kellogg, p.113)

Enraged by the event and eager for revenge, Colonel Fields returned to Culpeper County and enlisted a company of men for the purpose of joining Lewis.

Along with Colonel Fields, were two of his son-in-laws, Lawrence and George Slaughter. In less than two years, George would find himself a captain and over a company of the Culpeper Minutemen. After the revolution, he traveled west with George Rogers Clark, and later commanded a fort at the falls of the Ohio. (Thwaites and Kellogg, p.197)

By September 8th, Field's company had joined Lewis at Camp Union on the Great levels. By the 10th, they were on the move again. Shortly after leaving Camp Union, some of the Culpeper men were out hunting when a man named Clay was shot by an Indian. According to accounts, "the Indian was killed before he scalped him."

Continuing west, they traveled through country that few Englishmen, only longhunters, surveyors and explorers, had seen before. Crossing Gaulty Mountain, they marched down the New River some eight or nine miles, where they found sulphur springs, "the Vapour of which kindles quick as Gunpowder and burns with a surprizing force." (Thwaites and Kellogg, p.284)

They traveled through the steep narrow gorges of the New River, marching upwards of 10 miles a day. On the 23rd, they encamped at the mouth of the Elk River. Many of the men were put to work building canoes that would be used to transport supplies across the river. On the 30th, the army crossed the Elk River and continued.

In his papers entitled "An Extract from a Journal kept by An Officer in the Army under Col. Andw. Lewis on the expedition against Our Enemy Ohio Indians," Colonel William Fleming gives one of the best accounts of the expedition. Fleming writes on October 1st, "The Troops were ordered to form two Colums in their march from this, each Colum made two grand divisions... Bullocks, Pack horses fell in betwinxt the Front; Rear

divisions, and had each Flank covered with One hundred Men." Colonel Fields company formed one of the right flank guards.

Fleming writes on the 5th, "We marched this day about twelve miles through several defiles, over three or four muddy runs with very high, Steep banks, in many Places the hills came so cloase to the river that the two Colums were obliged to march in One path."

The army reached the Ohio on the 6th. Spies were sent out every day to gain intelligence about the Indian's strength. Large parties of Indians had been spotted for the past several days.

On the 8th, Colonel Lewis was encamped at Point Pleasant with 800 men, "most of them Woodsmen well Armed, such as may be depended on." The camp was made on a peninsula of land bounded on the West by the Ohio, the South by the New River and on the East by a creek.

On the evening of October the 9th, a war party from the united tribes of Shawnee, Delaware, Mingoes, Taways and several other Nations crossed the Ohio in over 70 rafts. The plan was to attack the army camp by surprise. They had left warriors posted on the north shore of the Ohio to kill any soldiers that might try to retreat across the river.

Some men had left the camp on the morning of the 10th. About three miles from the encampment, they were attacked by a large party of Indians just after day break. Not long after, the men were being chased back into camp. The battle that followed was one of the fiercest ever fought between the colonists and the Eastern Indians. Fleming gives the best account of what happened.

He writes, "Imagining this to be some scouting party, Col. Lewis ordered a detachment from every Company. so as to make up One hundred fifty men from each line, to go in quest of them." Colonel Lewis's brother, Charles, also a colonel, led one of two detachments that marched out of camp. Fleming continues, "We Marched Briskly - 3/4 of a mile or better from Camp, the Sun then, near an hour high, when a few guns were fired on the Right, succeeded by a heavy fire, which in an Instant extended to the left and the two lines were hotly engaged." Colonel Charles Lewis received a mortal wound at the start of the engagement, and was led off the field. Soon after, Fleming received a serious wound to the breast and arm and was "Obleedged to quit the Field."

It was now realized that the Indians had a greater force than was first thought. Reinforcements were ordered up from the camp. Colonel Fields raced to the front with reinforcements. He arrived just in time for the men there had just been pushed back 150 to 200 yards. With the aid of the fresh troops, the ground was quickly regained and the enemy began to give ground.

Shortly after arriving on the scene, Colonel Fields was killed. According to Colonel William Preston, Fields was "shot at a great tree by two Indians on his Right while one on his left was amusing him with talk the Col. endeavouring to get a shot at him. Captain Shelby then took command of the wing. (Thwaites and Kellogg, p.294)

As the day progressed, the pinnacle of land that the Indians supposed would entrap the army actually may have worked to its advantage. When the battle began, the army's front was narrow (bounded by water on each flank) so, the men were compact. Every enemy bullet had a better chance of hitting someone because of the close quarters. But, as the Indians were pushed back, the army was not so constricted and the Indian line was forced to spread thin to contain the advance of the army, lest they should be flanked. What followed was a melee of close quarter hand to hand fighting.

The fierce fighting went on for hours. Fleming writes, "We at last with difficulty dislodged them from a fine long ridge... This advantageous post being gained about 1 o'Clock all the efforts of the enemy to regain it proved fruitless."

This was not the fight the Indians had envisioned. They believed this would be an easy victory. Fleming continues, "About 3 or 4 o'Clock the Enemy growing quite dispirited; all the attempts of their Warriors to rally them proving vain they carried off their dead & wounded, giving us now & then a shot to prevent a pursuit; so that about an hour by sun we were in full possession of the field of Battle."

Colonel Fleming wrote, "We had 7 or 800 Warriors to deal with, Never did Indians stick closer to it, nor behave bolder. the Engagement lasted from half an hour after [sunrise], to the same time before Sunset. And let me add I believe the Indians never had such a Scourging for the English before. they Scalpd many of their own dead to prevent their falling into Our hands, burried numbers, threw many into the Ohio and no doubt carried off many wounded. We found 70 Rafts. we tooke 18 Scalps, the most of them principle Warriors amongst the Shawnese camp."

On the 12th, a wounded Fleming wrote in his orderly book, "This day The Scalps of Enemy were collected & found to be 17 they were dressed & hung upon a pole near the river Bank & the plunder was collected & found to be 23 Guns & Blankets 27 Tomahawks with Match coats Skins Shout [shot] pouches pow[d]erhorns Wardlubs. The Tomahawks Guns & Shot pouches were sold & ammounted to near 100 L."

The army's losses varied according to different accounts, however a figure that is considered accurate is around seventy-five killed and one-hundred and fifty wounded. Among the dead, the only known chieftain killed, was Puck-e-shin-wa, father of Tecumseh. Accounts vary also as to the number of Indian participants and those injured. Fleming reports that he believes the number to be at least equal to the army's losses, while prisoners among the Shawnee stated their loss as twenty-eight. Whatever their losses, they were now anxious to sue for peace. Cornstalk the principle chief of the Shawnee, opposed to the war from the start, was now being begged to treat with Dunmore.

After burying their dead and strengthening the position, Colonel Lewis led the main body of the army across the Ohio River on the 17th. leaving the wounded behind, lewis intended to quickly strike the villages. Captain Slaughter (George?) was given command of the Culpeper troops who were to remain at Point Pleasant working the defenses. As Lewis was within some distance of the villages, a message was received from Dunmore, who had already concluded a peace agreement with the Indians. Dunmore instructed

Lewis to halt his troops there. The place being inconvenient to encamp, Lewis marched on. Dunmore sent another express telling Lewis to halt and that Lewis and some of his officers might join him in his camp. Lewis believing it imprudent for a few men to venture alone, decide to march the whole army to Dunmore's camp.

Lewis's guide however, mistook the path and continued to march toward the village. The continuance towards the village was a simple mistake, that was verified by several officers' writings. Dunmore supposed that Lewis's intent was to attack the village in disregard to his orders.

Dunmore rode out and intercepted Lewis before he reached the village. And after a brief discussion, the incident was settled. There exists no evidence of a confrontation between Lewis and Dunmore as has been suggested by some contemporary writers.

Some have suggested that Dunmore was disliked by most of the troops under Lewis and that Lewis and Dunmore had a particular hatred for one another. Some have even suggested that Dunmore sacrificed Lewis's troops at Point Pleasant by intentionally delaying the rendezvous with Lewis. Lewis's son in later years would write that his father was obliged to double and triple the guard around his tent when the Governor was present to protect him from the wrath of the frontier soldiers who were incensed at being turned back when in sight of their prey.

This may be true. However most of the hatred that Virginians had for Dunmore would grow later in the year, while at this time he was still regarded fairly well. As for Dunmore delaying the joining of Lewis's wing, logistics is probably more to blame than any contempt that the Governor may have had for provincial militia.

The peace concluded, the army began to return home in little companies. For most of the men, the visit would be short. By the Spring of 1775, tempers were flaring between the colonies and British authority. Governor Dunmore ordered the removal of the gun powder from the public magazine at Williamsburg. On the night of April 20, British Marines, under the cover of darkness, removed the colony's powder touching off an explosion of public indignation. Militias were formed, and now many of the men from Culpeper would find themselves in the largest of Virginia's district militia. Some of the same men who had just served under Governor Dunmore, would by the end of the year find themselves fighting against him.

History of Cincinnati

Copied from: <http://www.heritagepursuit.com/Hamilton/HamiltonChapIII.htm>

The rumor which they had heard at Limestone is charged by some annalists to the jealousy of certain Kentuckians; but there were really a few Shawnees encamped several miles up the Little Miami when Capt. Stites' boats put into shore. They offered friendship instead of war, however, and became so amiable that Stites sent word to Symmes and Patterson, at Limestone, to follow him without fear. Nevertheless, the Captain was not so

confident of this specious good will s to neglect the construction of his blockhouse, and his prudence was well repaid.

The persons composing this adventurous troop were not numerous. Only five of the men brought their families: Capt. Stites, Elijah Stites, Greenbright Bailey, Abel Cook and Jacob Mills. The remainder were either unmarried, or had left their wives and children in safer quarters. Their names were Hezekiah Stites, John S. Gano, Ephraim Kibby, Benjamin Cox, Joseph Cox, Hampton and Allen Woodruff, Evan Shelby, - Hempstead, Daniel Shoemaker, Edmund Buxton, Elijah Mills, and Thomas C. Wade. During the next two years; the original party was strongly reinforced. The names of some of these later settlers were James H. Bailey, Zephr and Jonas Ball, James Bowman, Benjamin, David and Owen Davis, Francis Dunlevy, Hugh Dunn, Isaac and John Ferris, James Flinn, Gabriel and Luke Foster, James Newell, Benjamin F. Randolph, James Seward, **William Goforth**, Daniel Griffin, Joseph Grove, John Hardin, Cornelius Hurley, David, Henry, and Levi Jennings, Ezekiel Larned, John Manning, James Mathews, Aaron Mercer, Ichabod B. Miller, Patrick and William Moore, John Morris. Wickersham, John McCullough, and Ignatius Ross.

The village of cabins which at once began to grow up around the blockhouse was christened Columbia. It was situated on the bank of the Ohio, more than half a mile below the month of the Little Miami. The valley of the Little Miami, which is two miles wide at its lower termination, was not all covered with forest, but many acres of its low and level surface expanded into a spacious natural meadow, which from being frequented both winter and summer by numerous flocks of wild poultry soon won the name of Turkey Bottom. Over this broad bottom land Stites laid out squares and streets for a great city, which he hoped would eventually become the Queen of the West. But nature and destiny declared against him, and the city never advanced beyond the plan. The vast cornfields of the wealthy estates in the neighborhood are still haunted by the half-obsolete name of Turkey Bottom; the East End of the great Cincinnati corporation, which is gradually creeping up the Little Miami, wears the familiar name of Capt. Stites' rude little hamlet. These are the most substantial memorials of his defeated ambition which survive about the place of his settlement.

The message which Capt. Stites had sent to Limestone, and the peaceful progress made by his settlers during the next month, gave assurance to Patterson's company. Twenty-six of their then, among whom were Col. Patterson and Ludlow, the substitute of the lost Filson, started down the Ohio upon the 24th of December, during the most inclement weather of the season, reached the mouth of the Licking oil the 27th, and the next day began to lay out the town of Losantiville. To enlist these adventurers the proprietors of the ground, Denman, Patterson and Ludlow, had offered to give a lot to each of the first thirty men who would aid in establishing the settlement. In a few days these lots were surveyed, and each man made his choice by lottery. One or two cabins were then erected for shelter, the clearing of the ground was commenced, and other preparations made to receive several families that were expected to arrive in the spring.

In the meantime Judge Symmes remained at Limestone, waiting for the conclusion of the treaty which the authorities of the government were holding with the tribes of the Ohio at Fort Harmar, the government station opposite Marietta. Symmes seems to have been the

most unwilling of all the Miami leaders, at this time, to trust the Indians; yet he had the least reason of all to apprehend molestation.

His humane act in preserving the lives of the band on the Great Miami, in the preceding autumn, had given him a kinder place in their regard than he seems to have suspected. Besides, he had been granted military protection, which Columbia and Losantiville yet lacked. A detachment of forty-five soldiers, under Capt. Kearsy, had been sent from Fort Harmar at his request, and had been waiting his orders at Limestone since the 12th of December. On the 3d of January, 1789, he dispatched a conciliatory message to the Wyandot and Shawnee warriors, reminding them] of the service he had done them a few months before, offering to trade with them to their advantage, and requesting them] to restrain their young men from attacks upon the whites.

The message was well received, and shortly afterward the party of Shawnees whom Stites had found encamped at Columbia, having been cheated by some roving traders, for whose actions the settlers were in nowise responsible, demanded that Judge Symmes meet them and render reparation for their losses. As he still loitered, they sent word by Capt. Stites that they wished to see him; and shortly afterward they dispatched a second notice. Symmes thereupon feared that if he deferred his coming longer, they might go away offended, and all prospects of amicable relations, between their people and his, be completely destroyed. Though but imperfectly prepared for moving, he was determined by the latter consideration, and having gathered such provisions as could be obtained, he started down the river. His own family, a number of the settlers who had accompanied him from the East, and most of Capt. Kearsy's detachment of soldiers, formed his party. The river, swollen with one of its highest freshets, soon swept his fleet to Columbia, which village he found almost completely submerged. He passed on to Losantiville, where he stopped one night; on the 2nd of February, 1781, he stepped ashore at North Bend, a point twelve miles below Losantiville, and five above the mouth of the Great Miami. The sight of Columbia, sunken to the tops of its chimneys, had warned him against proceeding to his real destination.

After constructing a temporary habitation at North Bend, Symmes went on to the mouth of the Great Miami, where, like Stites at Columbia, he had dreamed of founding a magnificent city. Finding the situation as unfortunate as that of Columbia, he returned to North Bend, laid off a subdivision, and by donating some of the lots, succeeded in starting a respectable village.

The Shawnees who wished to see Judge Symmes were represented by Blackboard (or Blackbird), a chief of some note in the tribe. He soon called at North Bend, and after a long discussion with Symmes, who labored to convince him that the settlers should not be held liable for the frauds of every rascally trader, expressed himself as satisfied with the intentions of the Long Knives. Whether his declarations were sincere or not, he sustained them by staying three or four weeks at North Bend, partaking of the Judge's entertainment, which included whiskey, in an exceedingly fraternal spirit.

APPENDIX E

JOHN WOOD

John Wood

B: 1 may 1798, „Kentucky

D: 30 April 1862, Centerville, Appanoose, Iowa

Rebecca Belt

B: 31 May 1804, Heppley, Decatur, Indiana

D: 17 July 1840, Warsaw, Hancock, Il.

M: 24 January 1821, Ripley, Indiana

Children

Elizabeth D. Wood

B: 28 April 1823, „Ripley, Indiana

D: unknown

M: 1842, **James Goldson** (Golson)(Gholson)

Emma Wood

B: 1823, „Ripley, Indiana

D: 1824, „Ripley, Indiana

Nancy Ann Wood

B: 12 February 1825, „Ripley, Indiana

D: 27 April 1911 Springville, Utah, Utah

M: 1844, Illinois, **Hyrum William Clark**

Lydia Ann Wood

B: 1826, „Ripley, Indiana

D: 1829

Araminta Jane Wood

B: February 1829, „Ripley, Indiana

D: 1837

Margaret Serena Wood

B: 18 February 1831, „Ripley, Indiana

D: 24 April 1915, Springville, Utah, Utah

M: 11 May 1845, „Putnam, Missouri, **William Marion Coffman**

Mary Bell Wood

B: 22 March 1833, ,Decatur, Indiana

D: 27 July 1906, ,Springville, Utah, Utah

M: 10 May 1849, Appanoose, Iowa, **Daniel Bagley**

Serelda Wood

B: 9 June 1835, ,Ripley, Indiana

D: 10 August 1865

M: **Claboran George**

William Milton Wood

B: July 1840, Warsaw, Hancock, Illinois

D: August 1840, Warsaw, Hancock, Illinois

Emanuel Bagley Willis (youngest son of Merrill Erastus Sr. and Nancy Cedina Bagley) wrote this about **John Wood and Rebecca Belt** in his journal:

My great grandfather John Wood was a farmer. He stood over six feet tall in stocking feet, well built. He loved music and played the violin most beautifully. He enjoyed life and danced the Fishers Hornpipe. He loved sports and was an athlete in his day. He joined the church in Joseph Smith's day like the rest of my great grandparents. He and his family were driven and plundered by the mobs until he had nothing. He was in the Crooked River Battle where Apostle David Patten was killed. He assisted in carrying Gideon Carter to his home. Rebecca Belt his wife and my great grandmother was also a martyr as you might say to the cause of the kingdom of God. After being driven their homes burned. The(y) lived in Warsaw a place near Nauvoo. She was stricken with chills and fever. She was with child, and when the little baby came to the home mother and babe passed away, leaving (a) family of little children. She was a beautiful women, mother tell how her mother would tell her how she would stand on a little stool combing her mothers hair as she sat in a chair her hair touching the floor.

Great Grandfather John Wood never reached the Rocky Mountains he died in western Iowa and was buried there. He was also among those who were driven from Adam-Ondi-Ahman being forced to leave their all. His life was of sacrifice and obedience to the gospel of Jesus Christ. He joined the church in Ripley Co, Townsp Napoleon and moved to Far West Missouri. The maribone (marrowbone) mobs arose and drove them into Diamon. He stood guard around Far West to protect the people. In the exodus of the Saints from Nauvoo, he with his children struggled heroically to reach Utah but fell a martyr as did his noble wife through the persecutions and sufferings and suffering and was buried in the western part of the state of Iowa, his three daughters lived in the faith, I met them all in Springville, Utah when I was a child

Fishers Hornpipe

The lively Hornpipe is really very characteristic of the English in nature and is a very old Celtic solo dance that is very much based on the sailor's abilities during the dancing with the sailors originally performing it with folded arms. The steps are clearly ship wise such as hauling in the anchor, climbing or rigging ropes etc. The Sailor's Hornpipe was most popular during the 16th to 18th Centuries but the original (Hornpipe) goes much farther back and was originally done by men only.

--- It is said that the English sailing ship and Royal Navy Captain James Cook (1728-1779) thought dancing was most useful to keep his men in good health during a voyage. When it was calm, and the sailors had consequently nothing to do, he made them dance -- usually the hornpipe -- to the sound of a fiddle; and to this he attributed much freedom from illness on his ship.

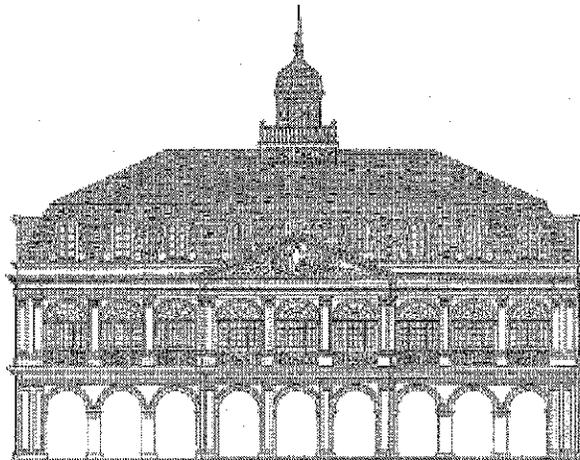
<http://www.streetswing.com/histmain/z3hornpe.htm>

GEORGE WASHINGTON

Being President of the meetings developing the constitution, he was seen as a fair man and the continental congress voted him into the office of President of the United States. He served successfully for eight years, two terms, helped America through it's first Economic Crisis, Whiskey Rebellion and second presidential election.

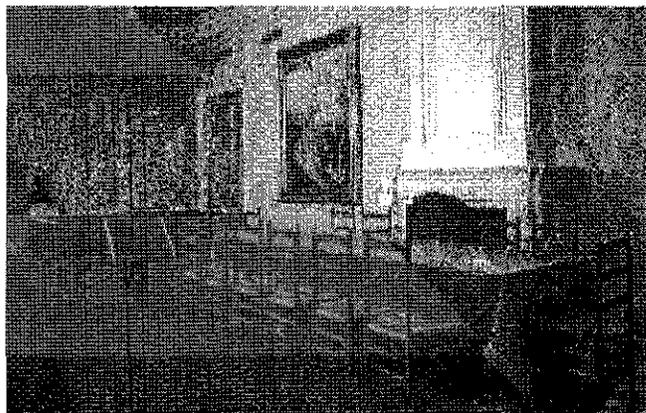
As "the first President of the United States in April 1789 he traveled from Virginia to the Nation's capital, New York City, to begin his term as the President of the United States. Washington's journey along bumpy roads took eight days. Large crowds lined the streets. As one newspaper reporter reported, American's greatly admired the tall, stately war hero".

'America History of Our Nation' textbook by Prentice Hall.



The Cabildo

The Louisiana Purchase



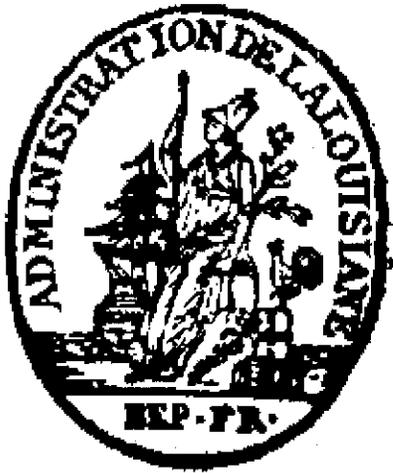
The Sala Capitular

The furniture on display in today's *Sala Capitular* has been reproduced from an existing inventory of the furniture present in the room during the Louisiana Purchase transfers. The original furniture no longer exists.

Louisianians consider the *Sala Capitular* one of their most prestigious settings for official ceremonies, evidenced by the fact that the final transfers of the colony were held in it: from Spain to France on November 30, 1803, and from France to the United States on December 20, just twenty days later. The *Sala Capitular* also functioned as a courtroom, first for the cabildo under Spanish rule (1799-1803), then the superior court in the territorial period (1803-1812), and later the Louisiana Supreme Court after the Civil War (1868-1910).

The Louisiana Purchase

Emperor Napoleon Bonaparte had a vision of a renewed western empire for France, and his schemes included the recapture of Louisiana from Spain. Control over this vast territory would halt the westward expansion of the young United States and would supply French colonies in the West Indies with the goods they needed. In 1800, Napoleon signed the secret Treaty of Ildefonso with Spain, an agreement that stipulated that France would provide Spain with a kingdom for the son-in-law of Spain's king if Spain would return Louisiana to France. However, Napoleon's plan collapsed when the twelve-year revolt of slaves and free blacks in the French colony of Saint-Domingue succeeded, forcing French troops to return defeated to France and preventing them from reaching their ultimate destination--Louisiana--and from being able to defend it. As Napoleon's New World empire disintegrated, the loss of Haiti made Louisiana unnecessary.



Letterhead of the French Colonial Administration of Louisiana
1803
Detail, reproduced courtesy of the New Orleans Public Library

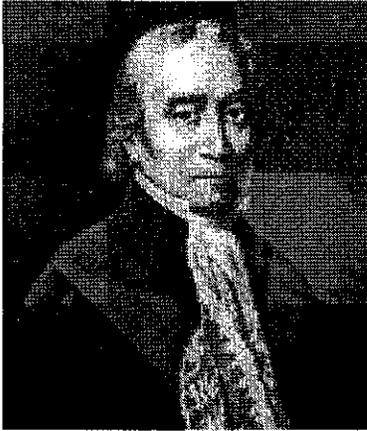


Carlos IV, King of Spain and the Indies
T. J. López Enguídanos
Early 19th Century
Gift of the Institute of Hispanic Culture, New Orleans

The United States wanted to acquire the area near New Orleans primarily to guarantee its right to sail vessels down the Mississippi River through Spanish territory and unload goods at New Orleans for shipment to the Atlantic coast and Europe. Moreover, the United States wanted to possess the entire territory of Louisiana because so many American settlers and merchants were already in the region and because of its vital geographic position at the mouth of the Mississippi River.

The United States discovered the transfer of Louisiana from Spain to France and sent Robert Livingston to France in 1801 to try to purchase New Orleans. Napoleon initially refused, leading President Thomas Jefferson to send James Monroe to secure the deal. However, in April 1803, just days before Monroe was to arrive in Paris, Napoleon offered to sell the United States not only New Orleans but all of Louisiana. Napoleon's

minister of the treasury, the Marquis de Barbé-Marbois, dealt with Livingston and Monroe over terms of the Louisiana Purchase. The United States purchased Louisiana for \$11,250,000 and assumed claims of its own citizens against France up to \$3,750,000, for a total purchase price of \$15 million.



Marquis de Barbé-Marbois
Charcoal drawing

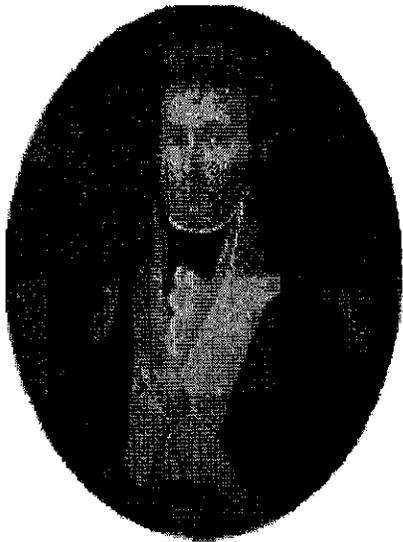


Robert R. Livingston
Engraving
H. B. Hall



James Monroe
1861
Engraving
Esbrard, Sculp
Gift of Mr Robert Glenk

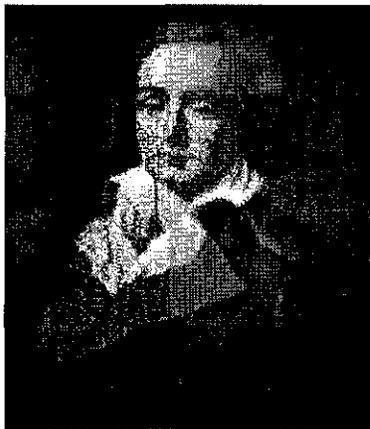
On November 30, 1803, Spain's representatives, Governor Manuel de Salcedo and the Marqués de Casa Calvo, officially transferred Louisiana to France's representative, Prefect Pierre Clément de Laussat, in the *Sala Capitular* in the Cabildo. Although Laussat had been instructed to transfer Louisiana to the United States the next day, twenty days actually separated the transfers, during which time Laussat became governor of Louisiana and created a new town council.



William C. C. Claiborne
E. B. Savary
19th century
Loaned by the Louisiana Historical Society

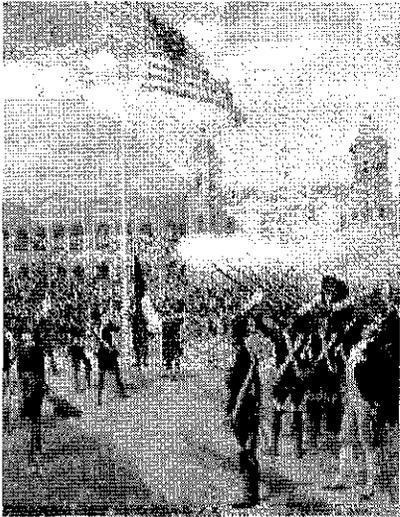


General James Wilkinson
Miss Levy, after Gilbert Stuart
Oil on canvas
c. 1915
Gift of Mr. and Mrs. Wilkinson



Pierre Laussat
Andres Molinary
c. 1911

Thomas Jefferson selected William Charles Cole Claiborne, former governor of the Mississippi territory and highest-ranking civilian official in the vicinity, to govern lower Louisiana. Backing Claiborne with military power was General James Wilkinson. On December 20, 1803, again in the *Sala Capitular*, these two commissioners signed the transfer document with Laussat, giving lower Louisiana officially to the United States. The United States took formal possession of the full territory of Louisiana, although its boundaries were vaguely defined, in St. Louis three months later, when France handed over the rights to upper Louisiana.



Hoisting American Colors, Louisiana Cession, 1803
Thure de Thulstrup
c. 1903
Loaned by the Louisiana Historical Society

Between April 10 and 15, 1825, the Marquis de Lafayette, a Frenchman who assisted the Americans with their war for independence and became a hero of the French Revolution, resided in the Cabildo during a visit to New Orleans. Lafayette stayed in the city as a part of his tour of the United States in 1824 and 1825.

Laborers converted the *Sala Capitular* into a lavish drawing room where Lafayette met various delegations during his stay, including a deputation of free men of color, "who, in 1815, courageously assisted in the defense of the city." The room was completely redecorated to fit its elegant purpose of hosting Lafayette and his visitors. New wall hangings and furniture were procured, and wallpaper, draperies, carpets, and chandeliers were installed for the five-day stay.



General Lafayette Arriving in the United States
Aquatint Engraving
Esbrard, Sculp.
Gift of Mr. Peterson Qvistgaard

The Louisiana State Supreme Court met in the *Sala Capitular* from 1868 to 1910. During the course of its tenure here, the Supreme Court heard several important cases that in turn

went on to the United States Supreme Court to become landmark cases in American history. Among these was *Plessy v. Ferguson*, which was first argued in 1892. The case tested legislation passed in Louisiana in 1890 that permitted separate railroad cars for whites and blacks.

In March 1892, Homer Adolph Plessy, a light-skinned New Orleans black man who was actively involved in the civil rights movement, purchased a ticket on the East Louisiana Railroad, sat in a whites-only coach, and refused to move. In the criminal suit that resulted, Judge John H. Ferguson upheld Louisiana's segregation law, and Plessy appealed the ruling to the Louisiana State Supreme Court, housed in the Cabildo, which also ruled against Plessy, stating that his rights had not been violated. When the United States Supreme Court decided the case in 1896, they upheld the state's ruling in favor of Ferguson, thereby sanctioning the doctrine of "separate but equal" and legalizing segregation in the United States for more than the next fifty years.

Between 1834 and 1890, what collectively is called the Myra Clark Gaines Case went to the Louisiana Supreme Court five times and to the United States Supreme Court seventeen times, making the case the longest-running lawsuit in the history of the United States Supreme Court. One of the five lawsuits heard by the Louisiana Supreme Court was heard in the *Sala Capitular*. The cases arose over Myra Clark Gaines' claims to her father's estate, and although Clark won in the end, she expended the fortune that her second husband, General Edmund Pendleton Gaines, left her and died penniless in 1885, five years before the final lawsuit was decided in her favor.



Myra Clark Gaines
Whitehurst
c. 1850
Loaned by Miss Emily Waters

Napoleon

In imitation of French king Louis XIV, Napoleon worked hard to develop his own legend and fashion his persona. He used the press, the arts, and the church to boost his fame.

Like most legends, the Napoleonic one is part fact, part fiction. Presented in the Cabildo exhibit are aspects of Napoleonic legend that mainly deal with Louisiana.

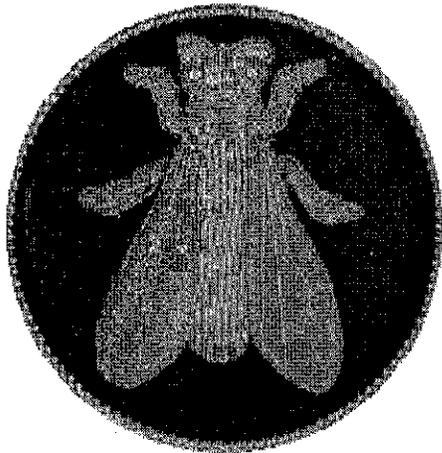


Napoleon Crossing the Alps

Early 19th century

Attributed to the Studio of Jacques-Louis David

Napoleon commissioned many large-scale portraits of himself to help create a legendary persona. This large painting is a version of one created by the famous French neoclassical artist, Jacques-Louis David and communicates the subject's strength by showing him maintaining control of a fiery steed crossing the Alps.



Embroidered Bee

Attributed to Picot

c. 1804

Gift of Mr. and Mrs. Alfred D. Pardee

This bee is believed to have been a portion of Napoleon's coronation mantle when he crowned himself emperor of France in 1804.

According to popular legend, some of Napoleon's former officers who were residing in New Orleans schemed to rescue him from exile on the island of St. Helena and bring him to Louisiana. Three days before a ship manned by Louisiana pirates and waiting off the coast of St. Helena could sail, Napoleon died. The ship was to carry Napoleon to New Orleans, where he would have lived in a house in the French Quarter given to him by the city's mayor. This famous building is now a bar and restaurant known as the Napoleon House.

One of the most legendary artifacts on display in the Cabildo is the death mask of the French Emperor Napoleon Bonaparte.



Death Mask of Napoleon
c. 1821

Dr. Antommarchi presented the death mask of Napoleon to the City of New Orleans shortly after he immigrated in 1834. City officials displayed the mask in the Cabildo, along with the instruments Antommarchi had used at the autopsy of Napoleon. Antommarchi practiced medicine in New Orleans before moving to Mexico in 1838.



Mort de Napoleon

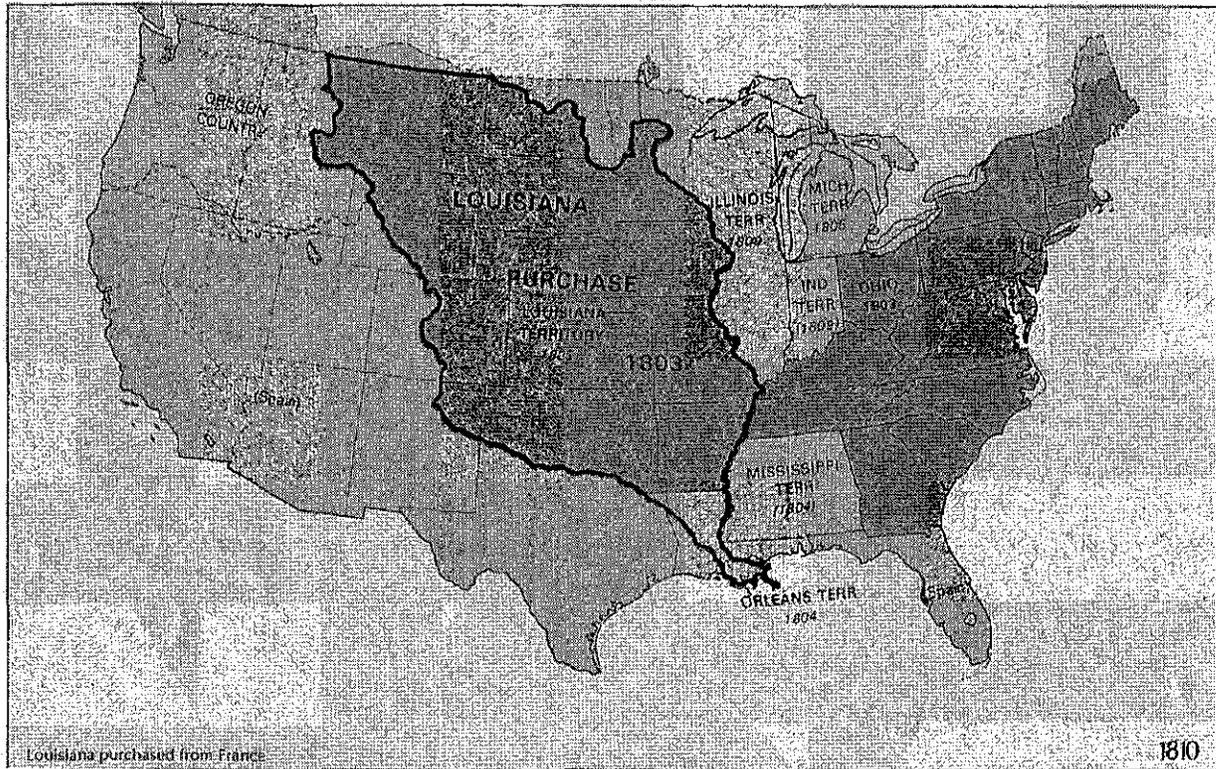
City authorities moved the death mask, along with their offices, from the Cabildo in 1853. During the tumult that accompanied the Civil War, the mask disappeared. A former city treasurer spotted the mask in 1866 as it was being hauled to the dump in a junk wagon.

Rather than return the mask to the city, the treasurer took the mask home and put it on display there. Eventually Napoleon's death mask wound up in the Atlanta home of Captain William Greene Raoul, president of the Mexican National Railroad.

Finally, in 1909, Napoleon's death mask made its way back to the Crescent City. Captain Raoul read a newspaper article about the missing mask and wrote to the mayor of its whereabouts. In exchange for suitable acknowledgement, Raoul agreed to donate the death mask to New Orleans. The mayor transferred the mask to the Louisiana State Museum that year.

<http://lsm.crt.state.la.us/cabildo/cab4.htm>

Map of the Louisiana Purchase



<http://www.gatewayno.com/history/images/la-purchase-large.jpg>

War of 1812

This page refers to the war between the United States of America and Great Britain. For Napoleon's 1812 Invasion of Russia, see Napoleon's invasion of Russia.
http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/War_of_1812

The War of 1812	
Date	1812—1815
Result	<u>Treaty of Ghent</u> (<i>status quo ante bellum</i>)
Combatants	
United States 	British Empire 

Manpower	
<u>United States</u> Regular army: 99,000 Volunteers: 10,000* Rangers: 3,000 Militia: 458,000** Naval and marine: 20,000	<u>Great Britain</u> Regular army: 10,000+ Naval and marine: ? Canadian militia: 86,000+**
<u>Indigenous peoples</u> New York Iroquois: 600 Northwestern allies: ? Southern allies: ?	<u>Indigenous peoples:</u> 3,500?
Casualties	
<u>United States:</u> Killed in action: 2,260 Wounded in action: 4,505 Executed: 205+ Other deaths: 17,000 Civilian deaths: 500?	<u>Great Britain</u> 3,000 dead, 2,000 wounded
<u>Indigenous peoples: ?</u>	<u>Indigenous peoples: ?</u>
*Volunteers were semi-professional troops **Most militia did not participate in fighting or campaigning	

The **War of 1812** was fought between the United States and United Kingdom from 1812 to 1815, on land in North America and at sea around the world.

Although the United States was officially at war with Great Britain, more than half of the British forces were made up of Canadian militia. Additionally, many North American Indian peoples (today most often called "Native Americans" in the United States and "First Nations" in Canada) fought on both sides of the war for reasons of their own. In the Northwest Territory, the War was, in a sense, a continuation of Tecumseh's War after his defeat in the Battle of Tippecanoe in 1811.

The war formally began on June 18, 1812 with the U.S. declaration of war. The United States launched invasions of the Canadian provinces in 1812 and 1813, but the borders

were successfully defended by British and North American Indian forces. The United States gained the upper hand in the North American Indian part of war with victories at the Battle of the Thames in October 1813 and the Battle of Horseshoe Bend in March 1814, but by this time the United Kingdom had successfully concluded the Napoleonic wars and the British were finally able to divert more resources to North America. British invasions of American territory resulted in the burning of Washington, D.C. and the capture of part of the District of Maine, but the British counteroffensive was turned back at Lake Champlain, Baltimore, and New Orleans. The Treaty of Ghent (ratified in 1815) restored the *status quo ante bellum* between the combatants.

Although the War of 1812 ended as a stalemate and is often only dimly remembered, it had many effects on the futures of those involved. The war created a greater sense of nationalism in both Canada and the United States. The successful defense of the Canadian provinces against American invasion ultimately ensured the survival of Canada as a distinct nation, and the end of the war marked the decline of a longstanding desire of many Americans to see the British Empire expelled entirely from North America. Peace between the United States and British North America also meant that North American Indians could no longer use conflicts between the two powers to defend native lands against the expansion of white settlement.

Main article: Origins of the War of 1812

The war was a result of two major causes: a dispute over repeated violations of American sovereignty by Great Britain, and American expansionism, a desire by some Americans to expand their territory and population by conquering Great Britain's Canadian colonies.

The British Canadian colonies were lightly populated and poorly defended compared to the crowded American states to their south, and many of the settlers were Americans by birth and believed to remain sympathetic to the United States. Some Americans argued that the majority of the population in the British colonies would rise up and greet an American invading army as liberators, and that, as Thomas Jefferson suggested in 1812, "the acquisition of Canada this year, as far as the neighborhood of Quebec, will be a mere matter of marching, and will give us the experience for the attack on Halifax, the next and final expulsion of England from the American continent." The belief that the United States was destined to control all of the North American continent would later gain the name Manifest Destiny, but that term was not yet in use at the time of the war.

Meanwhile, the United States had grievances against Great Britain for sovereignty violations in three areas:

1. Britain's refusal to surrender western forts promised to the United States in the 1783 Treaty of Paris, which ended the American War of Independence, together with allegations that Britain was arming North American Indians fighting against them on the western frontier;
2. The stopping of American ships by the Royal Navy on the high seas to search for deserters, and the impressment of seamen who had been born as British subjects but later naturalized as American citizens; and

3. The trade embargos by France and Britain during the Napoleonic Wars, which resulted in the seizing of hundreds of American merchant ships.

In 1795 the Jay Treaty with Britain and the Treaty of Greenville with the North American Indians temporarily resolved the conflict on the western frontier; however, the Monroe-Pinkney Treaty of 1806 dealt only with trade, not impressment, and was not ratified by the United States Congress. Continuing embargos and the Chesapeake-Leopard Affair of 1807 (which resulted in the deaths of three American seamen under attack by a British ship) further aggravated tensions between the two countries.

In 1811, in the United States House of Representatives, a loose political faction called the *War Hawks*, under the leadership of speaker Henry Clay, began agitating for a declaration of war against Britain, both as a response to the grievances and as an opportunity to acquire the British Canadian colonies. After a speech by President James Madison to Congress on June 18, 1812, Congress voted to declare war.

Although the outbreak of the war had been preceded by years of angry diplomatic dispute, neither side was ready for war when it came. The United Kingdom was still hard pressed by the Napoleonic Wars, and was compelled to retain the greater part of her forces and her best crews in European waters. The total number of British troops present in Canada in July 1812 was officially stated to be 5,004 and consisted primarily of Canadians. During the war, successes against Napoleon left the United Kingdom free to send an overwhelming force of ships to American waters.

The United States was unready to prosecute a war. In 1812 the regular army consisted of fewer than 12,000 men. Congress authorized the expansion of the army to 35,000 men, but the service was voluntary and unpopular, and there was an almost total lack of trained and experienced officers. The militia, called in to aid the regulars, objected to serving outside their home states, were not amenable to discipline and, as a rule, performed poorly in the presence of the enemy.

The war was conducted in four theatres of operations:

1. The Atlantic Ocean
2. The Great Lakes and the Canadian frontier
3. The coast of the United States
4. The Southern States

Operations on the ocean

Since the Battle of Trafalgar in 1805, Britain had been the world's preeminent naval power. In 1812, the Royal Navy had ninety-seven vessels in American waters. Of these, eleven were ships of the line and thirty-four were frigates. In contrast, the United States Navy, which was not yet twenty years old, had only twenty-two commissioned vessels, the largest of which were frigates, though a number of the American ships were 44-gun frigates and very heavily built compared to the usual British 38-gun frigates.

The strategy of the British was to protect its own merchant shipping to and from Canada, and enforce a blockade of major American ports to restrict American trade. Due to their numerical inferiority, the Americans aimed to cause disruption through hit-and-run tactics, such as the capture of prizes and only engaging Royal Navy vessels under favourable circumstances.

The Americans experienced much early success. On June 21, 1812, three days after the formal declaration of war, two small squadrons left New York. The ships included the frigate USS *President* and the sloop USS *Hornet* under Commodore John Rodgers (who had general command), and the frigates USS *United States* and USS *Congress*, with the brig USS *Argus* under Captain Stephen Decatur.

Two days later, the *Hornet* gave chase to the British frigate HMS *Belvidera*. *Belvidera* eventually escaped to Halifax, after discarding all unnecessary cargo overboard. The *Hornet* returned to Boston, Massachusetts by August 31. Meanwhile, the USS *Constitution*, commanded by Captain Isaac Hull, sailed from the Chesapeake on July 12 without orders so as to avoid being blockaded. On July 17 a British squadron gave chase. The *Constitution* evaded its pursuers after two days, and later retired at Boston. On August 19 the *Constitution* engaged the British frigate HMS *Guerriere*. After a thirty five-minute battle, the *Guerriere* had been dismasted and captured, and was later burned.

On October 25 the USS *United States*, commanded by Captain Decatur, captured the British frigate HMS *Macedonian*, which he carried back to port. At the close of the month, the *Constitution* sailed south under the command of Captain William Bainbridge. On December 20, off Bahia, Brazil, it met the British frigate HMS *Java*, which was carrying General Hislop, the governor of Bombay, to India. After a battle lasting three hours, the *Java* struck her colours and was burned after being judged unsalvageable.

In January 1813, the American frigate USS *Essex*, under the command of Captain David Porter, sailed into the Pacific in an attempt to harass British shipping. Many British whaling ships carried letters of marque allowing them to prey on American whalers, nearly destroying the industry. The *Essex* challenged this practice. She inflicted an estimated \$3,000,000 damage on British interests before she was captured off Valparaiso, Chile, by the British frigate HMS *Phoebe* and the sloop HMS *Cherub* on March 28, 1814.

In all of these actions, except the one in which the *Essex* was taken, the Americans had the advantage of greater size and heavier guns. Despite the greater experience in naval combat of the British, a large proportion of their seamen had been impressed. This contrasted with the Americans who were all volunteers, which may have given the Americans an edge in morale and seamanship.

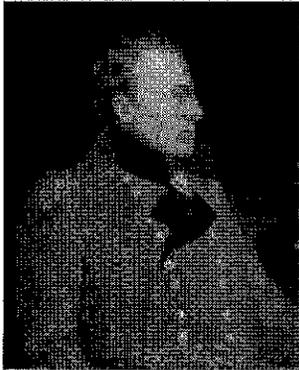
The capture of three British frigates was a blow to the British and stimulated them to greater exertions. More vessels were deployed on the American seaboard and the blockade tightened. On June 1, 1813, the frigate USS *Chesapeake* was captured by the British frigate HMS *Shannon* as it attempted to leave Boston Harbor. This somewhat offset the blow to morale caused by previous disasters. The blockade of American ports had tightened to the extent that the United States ships found it increasingly difficult to sail without meeting forces of superior strength. Because of this the Royal Navy was able

to transport British Army troops to American shores, paving the way for their attack on Washington D.C. which became known as the burning of Washington, D.C. in 1814.

The operations of American privateers were extensive. They continued until the close of the war and were only partially affected by the strict enforcement of convoy by the Royal Navy. An example of the audacity of the American cruisers was the capture of the American sloop USS *Argus* at St David's Head in Wales by the more heavily armed British sloop HMS *Pelican*, on August 14, 1813.

Operations on the Great Lakes and Canadian border

Invasions of Canada, 1812



Major General Sir Isaac Brock skillfully repulsed an American invasion of Canada, but his death was a severe loss for the British cause.

While they had expected little from their tiny navy, the American people had assumed that Canada could be easily overrun. Former U.S. President Thomas Jefferson dismissively referred to the conquest of Canada as "a matter of marching." However, in the opening stages of the conflict, British military experience prevailed over inexperienced American commanders.

Geography dictated that operations would take place in the West principally around Lake Erie, near the Niagara River between Lake Erie and Lake Ontario, and near Saint Lawrence River area and Lake Champlain. This would be the focus of the three pronged attacks by the Americans in 1812.

Although cutting the St. Lawrence River through the capture of Montreal and Quebec would make Britain's hold in Canada unsustainable, operations in the West began first due to the general popularity of war with the British there.

The British scored an important early success, when their detachment at Saint Joseph Island on Lake Huron learned of the declaration of war before the nearby American garrison at the important trading post at Mackinac Island in Michigan did. A scratch force landed on the island on July 17, 1812 and mounted a gun overlooking the fort. The Americans, taken by surprise, surrendered. This early victory encouraged the Indians, and large numbers of them moved to help the British at Amherstburg.

The American Brigadier General William Hull had invaded Canada on July 12, 1812 from Detroit, with an army mainly composed of militiamen, but turned back after his supply lines were threatened in the Battles of Brownstown and Monguagon. British Major General Isaac Brock sent false correspondence and allowed it to be captured by the Americans, saying they required only 5,000 Native warriors to capture Detroit. Hull was deathly afraid of North American Indians and some tribes' practice of scalping. Hull surrendered at Detroit on August 16.

Brock promptly transferred himself to the eastern end of Lake Erie, where the American General Stephen Van Rensselaer was attempting a second invasion. Brock fell in action on October 13 at the Battle of Queenston Heights, where the Americans were defeated largely because the militia refused to reinforce the regulars, citing Constitutional reasons. While the professionalism of the American forces would improve by the war's end, British leadership suffered after Brock's death.

A final attempt in 1812 by the American General Henry Dearborn to advance north from Lake Champlain failed ingloriously when his militia too refused to advance beyond American territory. In contrast to the American militia, the Canadian militia performed well. French-Canadians, who found the anti-Catholic stance of most of the United States troublesome, and United Empire Loyalists, who had fought for the Crown during the American Revolutionary War and had settled primarily in Upper Canada, strongly opposed the American invasion. However, a large segment of Upper Canada's population were recent settlers from the United States who had no such loyalties to the Crown, but American forces found, to their dismay, that most of the colony took up arms against them.

American Northwest, 1813

After Hull's surrender, General William Henry Harrison was given command of the American Army of the Northwest. He set out to retake Detroit, which was now defended by Colonel Henry Procter in conjunction with Tecumseh. A detachment of Harrison's army was defeated at Frenchtown along the River Raisin on 22 January 1813. Procter left the prisoners in custody of a few North American Indians, who then proceeded to execute perhaps as many as sixty American prisoners, an event which became known as the "River Raisin Massacre." The defeat ended Harrison's campaign against Detroit, and the phrase "Remember the River Raisin!" became a rallying cry for the Americans.



Oliver Hazard Perry's message to William Henry Harrison after the Battle of Lake Erie began with what would become one of the most famous sentences in American military history: "We have met the enemy and they are ours." This 1865 painting by William H. Powell shows Perry transferring to a different ship during the battle.

In May 1813, Procter and Tecumseh set siege to Fort Meigs in northern Ohio. American reinforcements arriving during the siege were defeated by the Indians, but the fort held out. Indians began to withdraw, forcing Procter and Tecumseh to return to Canada. A second offensive against Fort Meigs also failed in July. In an attempt to improve Indian morale, Procter and Tecumseh attempted to storm Fort Stephenson, a small American post on the Sandusky River, only to be repulsed with serious losses, marking the end of the Ohio campaign.

On Lake Erie, the American commander Captain Oliver Hazard Perry fought the Battle of Lake Erie on September 10, 1813. His decisive victory ensured American control of the lake, improved American morale after a series of defeats, and compelled the British to fall back from Detroit. This paved the way for General Harrison to launch another invasion of Canada, which culminated in the U.S. victory at the Battle of the Thames on October 5, 1813, in which Tecumseh was killed. Tecumseh's death effectively ended the North American Indian alliance with the British in the Detroit region. The Americans would control Detroit and Amherstburg for the duration of the war.

The Niagara Frontier, 1813

Because of the difficulties of land communications, control of the Great Lakes and the Saint Lawrence River corridor was crucial, and so both sides spent the winter of 1812-13 building ships. The Americans, who had far greater shipbuilding facilities than the Canadians, nevertheless had not taken advantage of this before the war, and had fallen behind.

On April 27, 1813, American forces attacked and burned York (now called Toronto), the capital of Upper Canada, including the Parliament Buildings. However, Kingston was strategically more valuable, and vital to British supply and communications along the St. Lawrence. Without control of Kingston, the American navy could not effectively control Lake Ontario or sever the British supply line from Quebec.

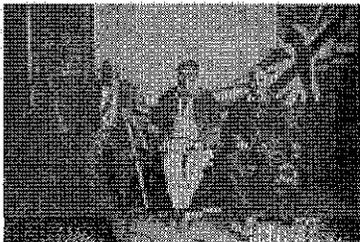
On May 27, 1813 an American amphibious force from Lake Ontario assaulted Fort George on the northern end of the River Niagara and captured it without serious losses. The retreating British forces were not pursued, however, until they had largely escaped and organized a counter-offensive against the advancing Americans at the Battle of Stony Creek on June 5. On June 24, with the help of advance warning by Loyalist Laura Secord, another American force was bluffed into surrender by a much smaller British and Indian force at the Battle of Beaver Dams, marking the end of the American offensive into Central Canada.

On Lake Ontario, Sir James Lucas Yeo took command on 15 May 1813 and created a more mobile though less powerful force than the Americans under Isaac Chauncey. An

early attack on Sackett's Harbour by Yeo and Governor General Sir George Prevost was repulsed. Three naval engagements in August and September led to no decisive result.

By 1814 Yeo had constructed the HMS St. Lawrence, a first-rate ship of the line of 102 guns which gave him superiority, and the British became masters of Lake Ontario. The burning by the American General McClure, on December 10, 1813, of Newark (now Niagara-on-the-Lake), led to British retaliation and similar destruction at Buffalo, on December 30, 1813.

The Saint Lawrence and Lower Canada



 Sakawarton (John Smoke Johnson), John Tutela, and Young Warner, three Six Nations War of 1812 veterans.

The Americans made little attempt to bar the Saint Lawrence to British traffic at the point where it was also the frontier between Canada and the United States. British supplies and reinforcements were able to move to Upper Canada with little difficulty.

Early in 1813, there was a series of raids and counter-raids between Prescott in Canada and Ogdensburg on the American side of the river. On February 21, Sir George Prevost passed through Prescott with reinforcements for Upper Canada. When he left the next day, the reinforcements attacked and looted Ogdensburg. For the rest of the year, Ogdensburg had no American garrison and the British freely obtained goods there.

Late in 1813, after much argument, the Americans made two thrusts against Montreal. The plan eventually agreed upon was for Major-General Wade Hampton to march north from Lake Champlain and join with a force under General James Wilkinson which would sail from Sacket's Harbour on Lake Ontario and descend the Saint Lawrence.

Hampton was delayed by bad roads and supply problems. On October 25, his 4,000-strong force was defeated at the Chateauguay River by Charles de Salaberry's force of less than 500 French-Canadian Voltigeurs and Mohawks.

Wilkinson's force of 8,000 sailed on October 17 but was also held up by bad weather. After learning that Hampton had been checked, Wilkinson heard that a British force under Captain William Mulcaster was pursuing him, and by November 10 he was forced to land near Morrisburg, Ontario, about 150 kilometers from Montreal. On November 11, Wilkinson's rearguard attacked a British force of 800 under Colonel Joseph Morrison at Chrysler's Farm, and was repulsed with heavy losses. Wilkinson subsequently retreated back to the US after learning that Hampton was unable to renew his advance.

Niagara Campaign, Battle of Lake Champlain, 1814

By 1814, American generals, including Major Generals Jacob Brown and Winfield Scott, had drastically improved the fighting abilities and discipline of the army. Their renewed attack on the Niagara peninsula quickly captured Fort Erie. Winfield Scott then gained a decisive victory over an equal British force at the Battle of Chippewa on July 5. An attempt to advance further ended with a hard-fought drawn battle at Lundy's Lane on July 25. The Americans withdrew but withstood a prolonged Siege of Fort Erie. The British raised the siege, but lack of provisions forced the Americans to retreat across the Niagara.

Meanwhile, veteran British troops no longer needed in Europe began arriving in North America. Governor-General Sir George Prevost now had enough men to launch an offensive into the United States. He hoped to gain a significant victory in order to give Britain bargaining power in the ongoing peace negotiations. However, his invasion was repulsed by the naval Battle of Lake Champlain in Plattsburgh Bay on September 11, 1814 which gave the Americans control of Lake Champlain. Theodore Roosevelt termed it the greatest naval battle of the war.

The West, 1814

Little of note took place on Lake Huron in 1813, but the American victory on Lake Erie cut off the British from their supplies. During the winter, a Canadian party under Lieutenant Colonel Robert Maccoull established a new supply line from York to Nottawasaga Bay on Georgian Bay. When he arrived at Michilimackinac with reinforcements, he sent an expedition to recapture the trading post of Prairie du Chien in the far West.

In 1814, the Americans sent a force of six vessels from Detroit to recapture Fort Mackinac. A mixed force of regulars and volunteers from the militia landed on the island on July 4. They did not attempt to achieve surprise, and while marching to attack the fort, were ambushed by Indians and forced to re-embark.

The Americans now discovered the new base at Nottawasaga Bay, and on August 13, they destroyed its fortifications and a schooner there. They then returned to Detroit, leaving two gunboats to blockade Michilimackinac. On September 4, these gunboats were taken unawares and captured by boarding parties from canoes and small boats. These prizes now re-established the supply line from Nottawasaga Bay.

The British garrison at Prairie du Chien also fought off an attack by Major Zachary Taylor. In this distant theatre, the British retained the upper hand till the end of the war, due mainly to the allegiance of several Indian tribes they supplied with arms and gifts.

The American coast

When the war began, the British naval forces had some difficulty in blockading the whole coast, and they were also preoccupied in their pursuit of American privateers. The British government, having need of American foodstuffs for its army in Spain, was willing to benefit from the willingness of the New Englanders to trade with them, and so no

blockade of New England was at first attempted. The Delaware and Chesapeake were declared in a state of blockade on December 26, 1812. This was extended to the whole coast south of Narragansett by November 1813, and to the whole American coast on May 31, 1814. In the meantime much illicit trade was carried on by collusive captures arranged between American traders and British officers. American ships were fraudulently transferred to neutral flags. Eventually the United States government was driven to issue orders for the purpose of stopping illicit trading. This only helped to further ruin the commerce of the country. The overpowering strength of the British fleet enabled it to occupy the Chesapeake, and to attack and destroy numerous docks and harbors.

Chesapeake campaign, The Star-Spangled Banner

The best known of these destructive raids was the burning of public buildings, including the White House, in Washington by Admiral Sir George Cockburn and General Robert Ross. The expedition was carried out between August 19 and August 29, 1814. On the 24th, the inexperienced American militia who had collected at Bladensburg, Maryland to protect the capital were soundly defeated, opening the route to Washington. President James Madison was forced to flee to Virginia, and American morale was reduced to an all-time low. The British viewed their actions as fair retaliation for the Americans' burning of York (later renamed Toronto) in 1813.

Having destroyed Washington's public buildings, the British army next moved to capture Baltimore, a busy port and a key base for American privateers. The subsequent Battle of Baltimore began with a British landing at North Point, but the attack was repulsed. The British also attempted to attack Baltimore by sea on September 13, but were unable to reduce Fort McHenry at the entrance to Baltimore Harbor. The defense of the fort inspired the American lawyer Francis Scott Key to write a poem that would eventually supply the lyrics to "The Star-Spangled Banner," the national anthem of the United States.

The American South

As one historian wrote:

We speak of the War of 1812, but in truth there were two wars. The war between the Americans and the British ended with the treaty of Ghent. The war between the Big Knives [American frontiersmen] and the Indians began at Tippecanoe, and arguably did not run its course until the last Red Sticks were defeated in the Florida swamps in 1818.³

In March of 1814, General Andrew Jackson led a force of Tennessee militia, Cherokee warriors, and U.S. regulars southward to attack the Creek tribes, led by Chief Menawa. While some of the Creeks had been British allies in the past, the fighting was related to control of Creek land in Alabama rather than the British-American conflict. On March 26, Jackson and General John Coffee fought the Creeks at Horseshoe Bend, killing 800 of

1,000 Creeks at a cost of 49 killed and 154 wounded of approximately 2,000 American and Cherokee forces. Jackson pursued the surviving Creeks to Wetumpka, near present-day Montgomery, Alabama, where they surrendered.

For a more detailed discussion, see the article Creek War.

The Treaty of Ghent and the Battle of New Orleans



"New Orleans" 1815 by Herbert Morton Stoops

Jackson's forces moved to New Orleans, Louisiana in November 1814. Between December 1814 and January 1815, he defended the city against a force led by Major-General Sir Edward Pakenham, who was killed in an assault on January 8, 1815. The Battle of New Orleans was hailed as a great victory in the United States, making Andrew Jackson a national hero, eventually propelling him to the presidency.

Meanwhile, diplomats in Ghent, Belgium signed the Treaty of Ghent on December 24, 1814, paving the way for the official end of the war. News of the treaty had not reached New Orleans, because of the slow nature of international communications. On February 17, 1815, President Madison signed the American ratification of the Treaty of Ghent, and the treaty was proclaimed the following day.

By the terms of the treaty, all land captured by either side was returned to the previous owner, the Americans received fishing rights in the gulf of the St. Lawrence River, and all outstanding debts and property taken was to be returned or paid for in full. Later that year, John Quincy Adams complained that British naval commanders had violated the terms of the treaty by not returning American slaves captured during the war, since the British did not recognize slaves as property [1].

The Treaty of Ghent established the *status quo ante bellum*; there were no territorial concessions made by either side. Relations between the United States and Britain would remain peaceful, if not entirely tranquil, throughout the nineteenth century. Border adjustments between the United States and British Canada would be made in the Treaty of 1818. (A border dispute between the state of Maine and the province of New Brunswick was settled in the bloodless Aroostook War in the 1830s.) The issue of impressing American seamen was made moot when the Royal Navy subsequently stopped impressment after the defeat of Napoleon.

This war was also the first and only time since the American Revolution that the US capital was invaded and occupied.

Effects on the United States

The United States did gain a measure of international respect for managing to withstand the British Empire. The morale of the citizens was high because they had fought one of the great military powers of the world and managed to survive, which increased feelings of nationalism; the war has often been called the "Second War of Independence." The war also contributed to the demise of the Federalist Party, which had opposed the war.

A significant military development was the increased emphasis by General Winfield Scott on improved professionalism in the U.S. Army officer corps, and in particular, the training of officers at the United States Military Academy ("West Point"). This new professionalism would become apparent during the Mexican-American War (1846–1848).

In a related development, the Army Corps of Engineers (which at that time controlled West Point), began building fortifications around New Orleans, as a response to the British attack on the city during the war. This effort then grew into numerous civil river works, especially in the 1840s and 1850s under General Pierre Beauregard. The Corps continues to be the authority over Mississippi (and other) river works to this day.

The War of 1812 had a dramatic effect on the manufacturing capabilities of the United States. The British blockade of the American coast created a shortage of cotton cloth in the United States, leading to the creation of a cotton-manufacturing industry, beginning at Waltham, Massachusetts by Francis Cabot Lowell.

The Southwestern campaign led to increasing contact and conflict with the Seminole tribes in Florida. The subsequent Seminole Wars eventually lead to American annexation of Florida in 1819.

Effects on Canada

The War of 1812 had little impact in Great Britain and was generally forgotten, since it was considered to be insignificant when compared to the defeat of Napoleon at Waterloo on 18 June 1815. However, this was not the case in Canada, where the war had been a matter of national survival. The war united the French-speaking and English-speaking colonies against a common enemy and some pride of being largely successful in repulsing the invaders, giving many inhabitants a sense of nationhood as well as a sense of loyalty to Britain. At the beginning of the War of 1812 it is estimated that perhaps one third of the inhabitants of Upper Canada were American born. Some were United Empire Loyalists but others had simply come for low-cost land and had little loyalty to the British Crown. For instance, Laura Secord was originally an American immigrant to Upper Canada, but did not hesitate to make her arduous trek to warn the British forces of a pending attack by her former country. In fact, a primary reason Canadians remember the war is because they managed to repulse the American invaders and maintain their

borders against poor odds; a conclusion many Canadians consider a victory in its own way.

This nationalistic sentiment also caused a great deal of suspicion of American ideas like democracy and republicanism which would frustrate political reform in Upper and Lower Canada until the Rebellions of 1837. However, the War of 1812 also started the process that ultimately led to Canadian Confederation in 1867. Although later events such as the rebellions and the Fenian raids of the 1860s were more directly pivotal, Canadian historian Pierre Berton has written that if the War of 1812 had never happened Canada would be part of the United States today, as more and more American settlers would have arrived, and Canadian nationalism would never have developed. As a story of national will, and of successful resistance of American influence, the War of 1812 still resonates amongst many Canadians as a nationalistic myth in the early part of the 21st century.

A related idea that developed out of the war was that Canadian militiamen had performed admirably while the British officers were largely ineffective. Jack Granatstein has termed this the "Militia Myth", and he feels it has had a deep impact on Canadian military thinking, which placed more stress on a citizen's militia than a professional standing army — the U.S. suffered from a similar Frontiersman Myth at the start of the war, believing falsely that individual initiative and marksmanship could be effective against a well-disciplined British battle line. Granatstein feels that the militia was not particularly effective in the war and that any military success the British Empire had was by British regular forces and through British dominion over the sea (Isaac Brock, for example, was reluctant even to trust the militia with muskets); likewise, the U.S. army won most of its land victories late in the war, only after it trained its troops to fight in disciplined lines like the British and other European armies.

During the war, British officers constantly worried that the Americans would block the St. Lawrence River, which is narrow and forms a large part of the border with the U.S. If the U.S. military had done so, there would have been no British supply route for Upper Canada (where most of the land battles took place), and British forces would likely have had to withdraw or surrender all western British territory within a few months. British officers' dispatches after the war show astonishment that the Americans never took such a simple step, but the British were not willing to count on the enemy making the same mistake a second time; as a result, Britain commissioned the Rideau Canal, an expensive project connecting Kingston on Lake Ontario to the Ottawa River, providing an alternate supply route bypassing the part of the St. Lawrence River along the U.S. border. The settlement at the northeastern end of the canal, where it joins the Ottawa River, later became the city of Ottawa, Canada's fourth-largest city and its capital (placed inland to protect it from U.S. invasion).

References

Allen, Robert S. "His Majesty's Indian Allies: Native Peoples, the British Crown, and the War of 1812" in *The Michigan Historical Review*, 14:2 (Fall 1988), pp 1-24.

Benn, Carl. *The Iroquois in the War of 1812*. Toronto: University of Toronto Press, 1998. ISBN 0802043216 (hardcover); ISBN 0802081452 (paperback).

Berton, Pierre. *The Invasion of Canada*. Toronto: McClelland and Stewart, 1980. ISBN 0316092169.

———. *Flames Across the Border*. Toronto: McClelland and Stewart, 1981. ISBN 0316092177

Carter-Edwards, Dennis. "The War of 1812 Along the Detroit Frontier: A Canadian Perspective," in *The Michigan Historical Review*, 13:2 (Fall 1987), pp. 25-50.

Elting, John R. *Amateurs, To Arms! A Military History of the War of 1812*. Chapel Hill, NC: Algonquin, 1991. ISBN 0945575084 (hardcover); ISBN 0306806533 (1995 Da Capo Press paperback).

Hickey, Donald. *The War of 1812: A Forgotten Conflict*. Urbana: University of Chicago Press, 1989. ISBN 0252016130 (hardcover); ISBN 0252060598 (1990 paperback).

Horsman, Reginald. *The Causes of the War of 1812*. New York: A.S. Barnes, 1962. ISBN 0374939608 (1972 printing); ISBN 0498040879 (2000 printing).

———. "On to Canada: Manifest Destiny and United States Strategy in the War of 1812" in *The Michigan Historical Review*, 13:2 (Fall 1987), pp. 1-24.

Roosevelt, Theodore. *The Naval War of 1812*. Da Capo Press, 1999. ISBN 0306809109 (paperback), eText at Project Gutenberg.

Sugden, John. *Tecumseh: A Life*. New York: Holt, 1997. ISBN 0805041389 (hardcover); ISBN 0805061215 (1999 paperback).

Morris Zaslow (ed), *The Defended Border*. Macmillan of Canada, 1964. ISBN 0770512429

This article incorporates text from the 1911 Encyclopædia Britannica, which is in the public domain.

History of Ripley County Indiana

Ripley County: named for hero of the War of 1812

Rich in history that saw the Miami, Delaware, Potawatomi, and Shawnee Indians hunting the area, Ripley County became a part of the State of Indiana after a proposal in 1816 that a new county be formed. This county was named for General Eleazer Wheelock Ripley, a hero of the War of 1812.

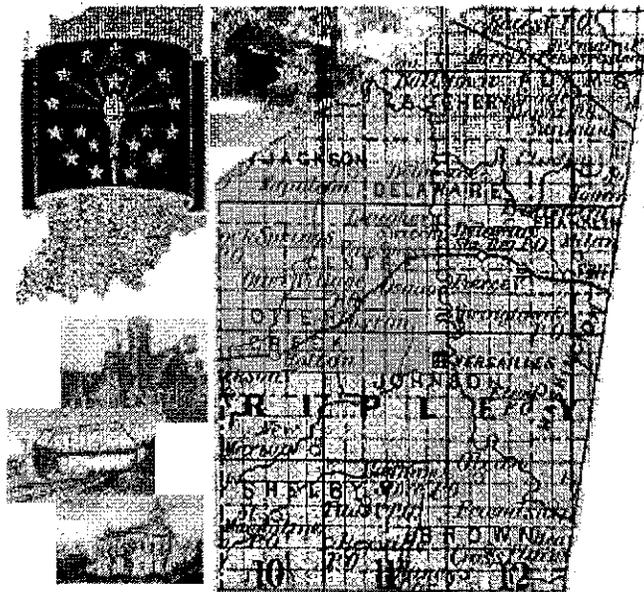
On January 7, 1818, by an act of the General Assembly, John DePauw from Washington County, Charles Beggs of Franklin County, and W.H. Eades of Jennings County, were appointed to select a site for the new county seat. Earning three dollars a day for this task, the first three Commissioners settled on a hundred acre tract donated by John Paul of Madison (Jefferson County). The county seat was named Versailles in honor of DePauw's native city in France and was laid out as a town of 186 lots by John Ritchie.

Ripley County, located in the southeastern part of Indiana, has 450 square miles or 288,000 acres. It is 27 miles north to south and 19 miles east to west with an elevation ranging from 600 feet to 100 feet above sea level. Laughery Creek, named for Colonel Archibold Lochry who fought in the Revolutionary War, flows through the county. In 1826, there were only, Millersburg, Napoleon and Versailles.

Early Indiana History

Crossroads of America: Early Indiana History RIPLEY COUNTY

Named for War of 1812 hero General E. W. Ripley who later represented Louisiana in the United States Congress.



A Few Facts About Ripley County

- Ripley County is divided into 11 Civil Townships as follows: Adams, Brown, Center, Delaware, Franklin, Jackson, Johnson, Laughery, Otter Creek, Shelby and Washington
- Ripley County was organized April 10, 1818.

- Versailles is the County Seat. The first courts in Ripley County were held at Marion, as a County Seat was not selected until April 27, 1818 when John Paul, of Jefferson County, donated the place for the present site of Versailles. The first lots were sold on September 21, 1818, and temporary provisions were made for holding courts in the spring of 1819; A Courthouse was not built until 1821. The first settlers were J. Bentley, C. Goodrich, J. Lindsay, C. Overturf, J. Hunter, W. Skeene, Dr. Fox, M. S. Craig and others. By 1849 Versailles contained 27 brick and 38 frame houses with a population of 350.
- Versailles is one of only 4 county seats that were never serviced by a railroad! *Thanks to Nathan Bilger at <http://indiana.railfan.net>*
- According to the Society of Indiana Pioneers, an individual was a pioneer of our county if they resided here on or before December 31, 1825.
- Indiana automobile License Plates issued in Ripley County start with the prefix 69 because it is the sixty-ninth county in alphabetical listing.

<http://www.countyhistory.com/ripley/start.html>

APPENDIX F

REBECCA BELT

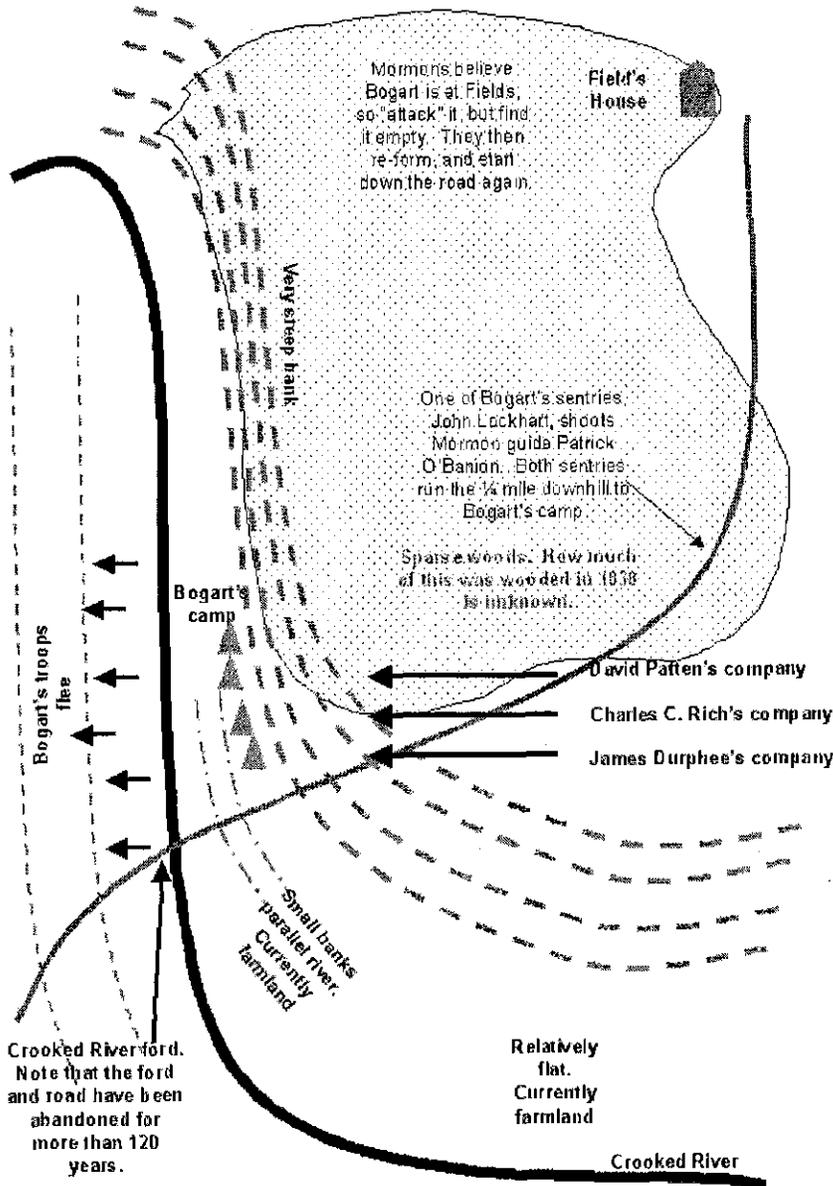
Not much is known about Rebecca except for the fact that she was a faithful member of the church of Jesus Christ of Latter Day Saints. Her grand daughter Nancy Cedina Bagley Willis stated, "My grandmother, was a martyr to the cause of Jesus Christ, being driven from their homes having them burned. While living in Warsaw a place near Nauvoo, was stricken with chills and fevers when a little babe came into the home. Mother and babe passed out of this life leaving a family of little girls. I have heard mother (Mary Bell Wood Bagley) tell how she could remember standing on a little stool combing her mothers hair as she sat on a chair with her hair touching the floor, she, Mary being three years old." Rebecca's great grandson Emanuel Bagley Willis added, "...she was a beautiful woman, mother tells how her mother would tell her how she would stand on a little stool combing her mothers hair as she sat in a chair her hair touching the floor". What I can tell you is Rebecca's granddaughter Nancy Cedenia Bagley Willis, her great grandson Emanuel Bagley Willis and myself her great, great, great, great granddaughter still think of her and thank her and appreciate her for the sacrifices she made while she was on this earth. I wish I knew more about her but I think through the knowledge we have about her husband and what has happened to him, we can appreciate what she endured.

Rebecca's father was a teamster in the Revolutionary War. Teamsters worked the dock, unloading and loading ships, military and merchant.

APPENDIX G

MISSOURI

BATTLE OF CROOKED RIVER



John Hamer's professionally drawn map:

**Introduction, by Alex L. Baugh, Professor of Church History and Doctrine,
Brigham Young University, Provo, Utah**

"During the hours just before dawn on Thursday, 25 October 1838, a contingency of Mormon Caldwell County militia engaged in armed conflict on the Crooked River, situated in northern Ray County, with the Ray militia under the command of Samuel Bogart, a Methodist minister. This skirmish, later known as the Battle of Crooked River, resulted in a dozen wounded and the deaths of three members of the Caldwell company—including the Mormon commander Apostle David W. Patten—and one member of the Ray company. Although casualties were limited, a broader examination of the conflict indicates the battle fueled the civil strife between the Mormons and the Missourians during the fall of 1838, and consequently was a leading factor in bringing about the forced expulsion of the Latter-day Saints from the state.

The Battle of Crooked River followed soon after the forced removal of several hundred Latter-day Saints from De Witt in Carroll County, which occurred during the first part of October 1838. This expulsion marked essentially the third time a group of Latter-day Saints had been forced from their homes and lands in the state. The first forced exodus was from Jackson County in 1833, and the second was the politically negotiated removal from Clay and Ray counties to the newly created "Mormon" Caldwell County in 1836. Following the dislocation of the De Witt Saints, Missouri assailants continued to extend their threats against Latter-day Saints residing in Daviess County. But on this occasion, Church leaders decided to take decisive action to disperse their antagonists by removing the remaining handful of non-Mormons who continued to reside in Mormon-dominated Daviess County. They justified such aggressive actions because they clearly felt they had been pushed around long enough, and if they were forced to leave Carroll County, they should be entitled to occupy both Caldwell and Daviess counties exclusively.

The immediate events surrounding the Battle of Crooked River essentially began on 23 October, when Reverend Samuel Bogart wrote a letter to Major General David R. Atchison, supreme commander of the state militia in northwestern Missouri. That letter informed Atchison that Bogart and his Ray County troops would patrol the line between Ray and Caldwell counties because "The Mormons have burnt Gallatin and Mill Port, and have ravaged Daviess county... and they have threatened to burn Buncombe and Elk Horn and have been seen near and on the line between Ray and Caldwell." [Alex L. Baugh, "The Battle Between Mormon and Missouri Militia," Arnold Garr and Clark Johnson, eds., *BYU Regional Studies in Latter-day Saint Church History, Missouri* (Provo, UT: Department of Church History and Doctrine, BYU University, 1994), 85-86].

Foreshadowing Battle of Crooked River

Compilation of Sources by Ron Romig and Mel Tungate, 11-6-2003

An escalating clash of cultures in northern Missouri in late October 1838 evolved into the Battle at Crooked River. This encounter between two armed camps of Missouri citizens occurred shortly after the Mormons burned Gallatin and Millport in Daviess County. The Battle of Crooked River, deplorable as it was, preceded the most violent episode of the Mormon War – the attack on the Mormon settlement of Haun's Mill by Livingston County regulators – by only a few days.

Captain Bogart, of the Ray County Militia, received orders from a commander of the state militia to patrol the Ray/Caldwell county border for the stated purpose of preventing any invasion by the Mormons into Ray County. General David R. Atchison instructed, "Sir – Your communication by express has been received. You are hereby ordered to range the line between Caldwell and Ray counties with your company of volunteers, and prevent, if possible, any invasion of Ray county by persons in arms whatever. You will also take care to inquire into the state of things in Daviess county and make report thereof to me from time to time." [Bogart to David R. Atchison and Atchison to Bogart, 23 October 1838, *Document Concerning Correspondence and Orders...*, 49, 108].

Accordingly, Bogart collected his forces and moved them into the six-mile wide buffer zone between the Gentiles and Mormons, attached to Ray County for administrative purposes. Mormon forces reacted quickly to what they perceived as a threat. Church member Amasa Lyman wrote, "a report came into the place [Far West] stating that a mob was about collecting at Buckham [Buncombe?] for the purpose of burning Far West if they had sufficient strength; and if not, to commence depredations on the outskirts of the Mormon settlements by driving them off and burning their houses. It was therefore thought best to send out a spy company to that vicinity to watch the movements of the mobs if there should be any, and report to Far West. Accordingly, a company of ten men was raised of which I had the command. We were instructed to range the southern line of Caldwell County, and watch the movements of armed bodies of men, if any were there, and in case they should commit any depredations upon the citizens of Caldwell, we were to report to Far West immediately. We were to act entirely on the defensive, and not to injure any people in person or property, except an attack should be made upon us in our own County, or upon some of the families of some of our people." [Affidavit of Amasa Lyman, *An Appeal to the American People Being an Account of the Persecutions of the Church of Latter Day Saints; and of the Barbarities Inflicted on them by the Inhabitants of the State of Missouri*]. Contrary to Amasa Lyman's implication, members of his spy company went to Nathan Pinkham's, which was – two miles inside Ray County.

Mary Judd Eaton described a visit by Bogart's volunteers, "We left the place where we lived, five miles from Far West, because a party of men came to our house on horseback; they came along-side of our yard, told us we must leave there, or we would smell thunder and lightning... they said they wanted to drive us into Far West. And they said they would give us hell, and we waited until it was a little dark, and then we started for Far West." [Mary Eaton, testimony, *Temple Lot Suit: Complainant's Abstract* (Lamoni, Iowa: Herald Publishing House, 1893), 268].

Thorit Parsons was one of several church members north of the Caldwell-Ray County line who received a visit from Bogart's forces on 24 October 1838. Parsons "was living in Caldwell county at the time of the battle with Captain Bogart, on the head of the east fork

of Log creek [SE ¼ of SW ¼ Section 24 Township 55 Range 29, Rockford Township, Caldwell Co., entered 27 March, 1837], about five or six miles from" where the battle later took place. On the day before the fight, between 1 and 3 o'clock in the evening, a company of twenty-three, mostly armed men, came to my house; they inquired my name, and told me I must go away – that I must leave that place." [Testimony of Thorit Parsons, *Correspondence and Orders*, 148]



Amasa Lyman, leader of the Spy Company

When Bogart's men left, "Brother Parsons dispatched a messenger with this news to Far West. Sidney Rigdon explained, "One afternoon a messenger arrived at Far West calling for help, saying that a banditti had crossed the south line of Caldwell, and were engaged in threatening the citizens with death if they did not leave their homes and go out of the state within a very short time; the time not precisely recollected; but I think it was the next day by ten o'clock, but of this I am not certain. He said they were setting fire to the prairies, in view of burning houses and desolating farms, that they had set fire to a wagon loaded with goods and they were all consumed; that they had also set fire to a house, and when he left, it was burning down." [Sidney Rigdon, *Times and Seasons*, vol. 4, No. 18 (August 1, 1843)]. Nothing was done about the news at the time and the messenger returned to his home.

After Bogart left Parsons', Thorit followed Bogart to watch his movements. "Brothers Joseph Holbrook and David Juda [Judy], who went out this morning to watch the movements of the enemy, saw eight armed mobbers call at the house of Brother Pinkham, where they took three prisoners, Nathan Pinkham, Brothers William Sealy and Addison Green, and four horses, arms, etc. When departing they threatened Father Pinkham that if he did not leave the state immediately they "would have his damned old scalp." Having learned of Bogarts [sic] movements the brethren returned to Far West near midnight, and reported their proceedings and those of the mob." [History of the [LDS] Church, 3, 169]



Carrying Word to Far West

Pinkham lived across the Ray County line, not far from where the battle occurred. At least some of the three captured were members of the spy company. Because Bogart was under state orders, questioning spies would be appropriate. Yet, his raid on the Parson home in Caldwell County was probably beyond his command.

A spy company member, Joseph Holbrook, says, "I volunteered to go the south line of the County of Caldwell next to Ray County to see what the mob in that quarter were about, with brother Amasa Lyman." [Holbrook Autobiography; see Mike Riggs, "Danitism in Nauvoo," *Restoration Studies*, VII, 105, n50]. After encountering Bogart's forces inside Caldwell County, Joseph Holbrook recalled, "I in company with Brother [David] Juda [Judy] started for Far West where we arrived about midnight. We informed our brethren of the danger there was in that quarter and about 60 men volunteered to go down and see what the mob was about." [Joseph Holbrook, <http://www.farwesthistory.com/plumcre.asp>]. Joseph Holbrook was a member of the spy company.

Another member of Amasa Lyman's spy company subsequently stated [speaking in the third person], "that on or about day of 24th October he went to Bunkham's [Buncombe] Strip a distance of about twelve miles from his Stopping place [Far West] in Caldwell

County, to See one Mr. Pinkham on business [reconnaissance]; while there he was Surprised & made prisoner by Some armed men. he was Stripped and Searched to see if he had any arms, by which he lost a Jack-knife the only weapon, offensive or defensive which he had about him; the armed men he believes were fifteen in number, two of whom Caught him by the Collar, thrust him out of doors, dragged him over a panel [sic] of fence so vehemently as to do him bodily injury while at the same time a third one facilitated my his Course by the application of his foot to the rear of my his body—When over he was asked if he was a Mormon, for to which he replied that he was; this affiant further says that he was threatened by his Captors, that "he would never see home again." &c. he was then Compelled to march... in[to] the camp with his Captors" [Affidavit of William Seely of Scott County Illinois, taken January 20th, 1840, *Mormon Redress Petitions*, 532-533].

Addison Green, another individual captured by Bogart related, "I was peaceably walking the highroad in Ray county, state of Missouri, I was molested and taken prisoner by ten armed men, who took from me one double-barrel fowling piece and equipage, threatening to blow out my brains and swore that if I was a Mormon they would hang me without further ceremony. They had previously been to my lodging and taken my horse, saddle, and bridle. All was then taken into the woods about one mile to Bogart's camp." [Addison Green, statement, Quincy, Illinois, March 17, 1840, *Millennial Star*, 17: 646].

Gathering of Mormon Forces

Charles Rich, seeing Patten was unable to rally a sufficient force at that late hour, immediately left in advance of the company and gathered additional men from the Goose and Log Creek areas, along the highway leading down to Crooked River. Those coming from Far West and the companies roused by Rich rejoined at Benjamin Braggs, south of Log Creek, in the Southwest $\frac{1}{4}$ of the Southwest $\frac{1}{4}$ of Section 11, Township 55 [Rockford Township], Range 29. As a result, a number of the participants in the resulting battle lived in the Goose and Log Creek areas. See the map below. Though John Wood is not listed it is believed he lived in this area at this time as he was involved in the Crooked River Battle. The Bagleys also lived in this area before moving to Adam-Ondi-Ahman, the birth of Nancy Ann Bagley was in Goose Creek 25 October 1837.

From excerpts of an account by Drusilla Hendricks: "...Bro. C C. Rich called at the door for him [James Hendricks] and told him what he wanted. They had word that the mob was on Crooked River ten miles south of us and was a strong band. He said they had two of our brethren as prisoners and were doing all the damage that lay in their power." [Drusilla Hendricks, *Women's Voices*, 90-95].

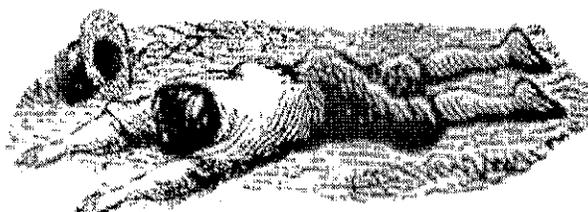
Freeborn H. Gardner also joined Patten's company and went as far as "Bragg's place," While there, "I heard D. Patten... lecturing the troops; heard him direct his men how to shoot -- to bring their guns up on a rise to their object, and hold their breath, and fire; and generally they would make a deadly shoot [sic]... But Gardner decided to turn back and didn't participate in the raid on Bogart. Benjamin Bragg's place was located in the southeast quarter of the southwest quarter of section 11, township 55, range 29 [*Correspondence & Orders*, 133-134].

At Braggs, Patten divided his force into companies of ten. After organizing, the company continued on the main road south along the Richmond road for approximately four miles. Patten did not know where on Crooked River to look for the Missourians. Somewhere en route, Patten's party "ran across a young man about eighteen years old by the name of Patrick O'Banion who knew where he could find them, and he [Patten] compelled O'Banion to go with them and show them the way." [John Rigdon, "The Life and Testimony of Sidney Rigdon"].

Believing that Bogart was camped at John Fields', --a short distance south of McDonalds-- they tied up their horses and proceeded on foot, leaving Isaac Decker, Luman Gibbs, and maybe others to watch the animals. Unable to locate Bogart at Fields' house, the force moved on toward Crooked River. [A. P. Rockwood, "Journal," 25; and C. C. Rich, "Extract from Charles C. Rich's History," *Millennial Star*, 26 (9 July 1864): 440]. Lorenzo Dow Young noted, "We kept the road to a ford on Crooked River, twenty miles distant, where we expected to find the mob. Just as the day was breaking we dismounted, about a mile from the ford, tied our horses... We marched down the road some distance, when we heard the crack of a rifle. Brother Obanion, who was one step in advance of me fell. I assisted brother John P. Green, who was the captain of the platoon I belonged to, to carry him to the side of the road. We asked the Lord to preserve his life, laid him down, ran on and took our places again. The man who shot Brother Obanion was a picket guard of the mob, who was secreted in ambush by the roadside." [Lorenzo Dow Young, *Four Faith Promoting Classics, Fragments of Experience*, 50-51].

Battle of Crooked River **25 October 1838**

Compilation of Sources by Ron Romig and Mel Tungate, 11-6-2003



The confrontation began when the Mormons ran into Bogart's picket guards. One of the guards, John Lockhart remembered, "Myself and the other guards were standing at the same tree, near the road, about a quarter of a mile from the camp; and about day-break we discovered men approaching us in the road. When the front of them got within about 15 or 20 steps of us, the other guard raised his gun. I told him not to shoot, but to hail them. He hailed them, and asked, "Who comes there?" They replied, "a friend;" but still moved on. I hailed the second time, and bade them to stand. I asked who was there; they answered, a friend. I asked them if they had any arms, and go off, and leave them; they told me to come and get them. I again told them to lay them down, and leave them; they made a noise with their guns, as if they were laying them down, and again called to us to come and get them. I could see clear enough to perceive that they had not laid down their guns, as they said they had done; but had them on their shoulders. At that time I discovered one of the men strike the ground with his sword, and immediately I heard a percussion cap burst without the gun's firing. I told the other guard to shoot; that they had bursted a cap at us; and immediately I raised my gun and fired—the other did not shoot. We then ran to camp, where, in a few moments, the Mormons arrived, and the action commenced." [John Lockhart, testimony, *Senate Document 189*, 35-36]. An official history of the church [the History of the LDS Church] provides the following narrative, "Thursday, 25.—Fifteen of the company were detached from the main body while sixty continued their march till they arrived near the ford of Crooked river, (or creek) where they dismounted, tied their horses, and leaving four or five men to guard them, proceeded towards the ford, not knowing the location of the encampment. It was just at the dawning of light in the east, when they were marching quietly along the road, and near the top of the hill which descends to the river that the report of a gun was heard, and young Patrick O'Banion reeled out of the ranks and fell mortally wounded. Thus the work of death commenced, when Captain Patten ordered a charge and rushed down the hill on a fast trot, and when within about fifty yards of the camp formed a line. The mob formed a line under the bank of the river, below their tents. It was yet so dark that little could be seen by looking at the west, while the mob looking towards the dawning light, could see Patten and his men, when they fired a broadside, and three or four of the brethren fell. [*History of the [LDS] Church* , 3, 170-71].

Charles C. Rich relates "The mob formed under the bank of the creek, below their tents, and fired upon us all their guns, brother James Hendricks fell wounded near me on my left, and brother Hodges fell wounded on my right. Captain Patten ordered the company to fire, which was obeyed immediately, after which a calm succeeded for a moment. I commenced calling our watch-word, 'God and liberty.' in which all the companies joined. Captain Patten ordered us to charge—"[C. C. Rich, "History," 440-41].

Patten's command was instantly obeyed and "the parties immediately came in contact, with their swords, and the mob were [sic] soon put to flight, crossing the river at the ford and such places as they could get a chance." [*History of the [LDS] Church* , 3, 170-71].

"The enemy fired a few shots and fled, two lingered behind, Brother Patten pursued one, and I the other; the man that he pursued wheeled and shot him. Brother Patten wore a white blanket coat which made him a conspicuous mark."

[C. C. Rich, "History," 440-41]. Patten, "instantly fell, mortally wounded, having received a large ball in his bowels." [*History of the [LDS] Church* , 3, 170-71].

The way the Missourians viewed the battle can be seen in a letter to the editor in the Missouri Argus of November 8, 1838, and dated Elk Horn, October 30, 1838. "On Thursday, the 25th instant, about the dawn of day, a party of Mormons, about two hundred strong, attacked Captain Bogart's company, consisting of about forty men, on the line dividing Rav and Caldwell Counties. On the approach of the Mormons the sentry fired and gave the alarm. The former advanced within thirty-five paces, formed a line, and received orders 'in the name of Lazarus, the apostles, and Jesus Christ our Lord, to fire,' which was followed by a simultaneous charge, accompanied by demoniac and hideous yells of 'fight for liberty— charge boys— charge— kill the d——d rascals,' etc. Bogart, at the head of his gallant band, leveled his gun and echoed the command, 'Boys, let them have it!' The struggle was short and desperate. The Mormons ... rushed to the charge, in which many of our men came in collision with them and parried their swords, etc., with their guns and knocked them down. They pursued the charge about six hundred yards. Our loss was one killed and three wounded— two of the latter were left for dead on the ground. The loss of the Mormons was nineteen or twenty killed and wounded— five or 6 of the latter are yet living. They took one prisoner— carried him to within three miles of Far West, where they had him put to death. The country is in the highest state of excitement. There are about 2,500 troops within a day's march of Far West. They are pouring in from all quarters, and we expect in a day or two, that that town will be laid waste. We are looking for the Governor with more troops. I have this moment been informed that the Mormons are making every preparation for a general battle. In the engagement on the 25th they took about \$4,500 worth of horses, etc." [Heman C. Smith, "Battle of Crooked River," *Journal of History* , 10 (January 1917):455-461].

"The history of Caldwell County gives the loss of Bogard's [sic] command as follows: Moses Rowland, killed; Thomas H. Lloyd, Edwin Odell, James Lochard, Martin Dunnaway, Samuel Tarwater, and Wyatt Craven, wounded. Tarwater is said to have received several saber cuts in the face and neck, considerably affecting his speech and memory. In 1840 by special act he received a pension of one hundred dollars annually from the State of Missouri, which continued while he lived. The above account of the engagement is from those who were present in Patten's company. [*Journal of History* , 10 (January 1917): 455-456].

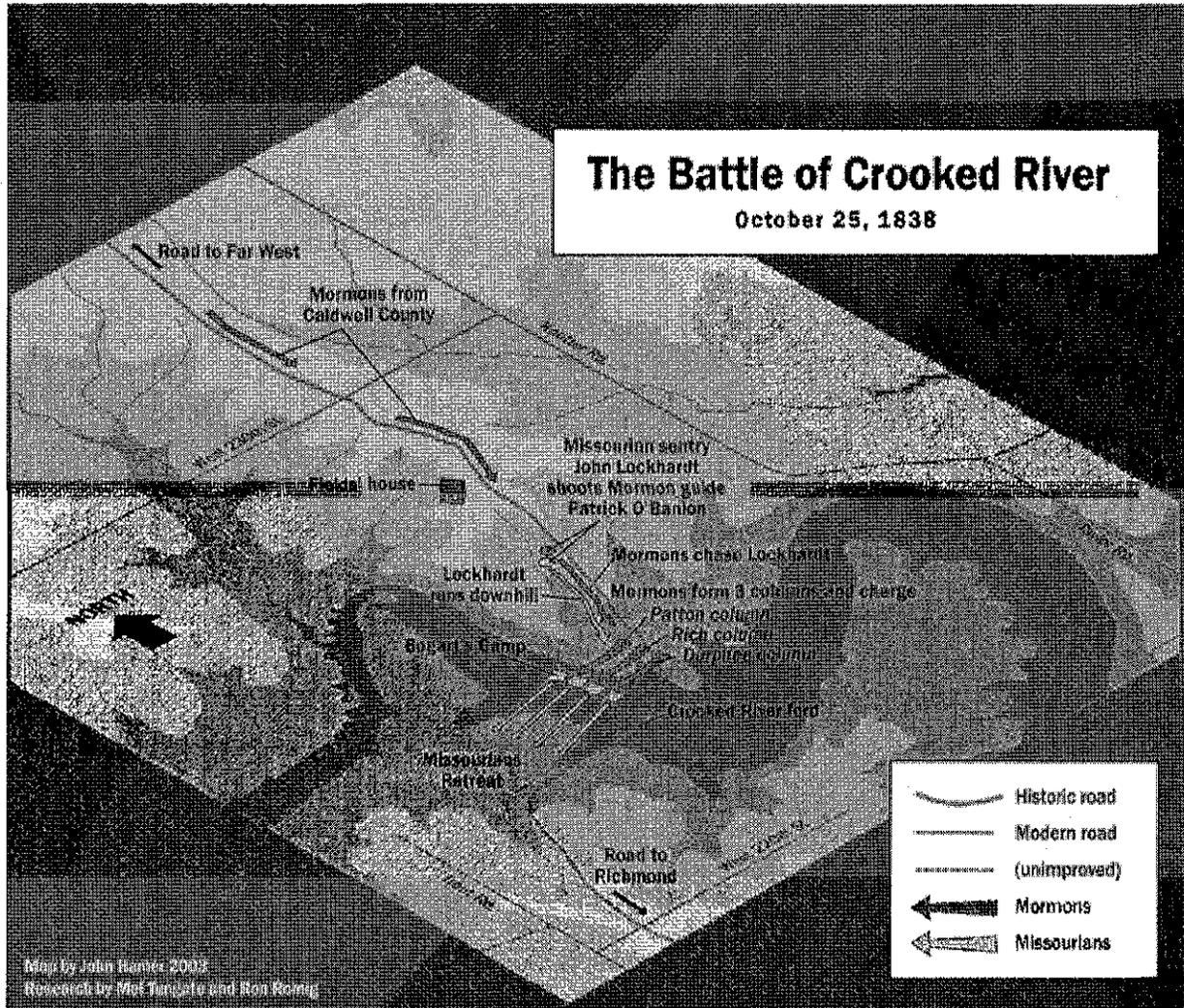
Nancy Tracy related, "They arrived just at break of day. There was timber on the brow of the hill above the river, and the mob had stationed a guard in this timber. They fired on the brethren without calling for them to halt and wounded one young man by the name of Obanyon [Patrick O'Banion]." [Autobiography of Nancy Naomi Alexander Tracy, typescript, HBLL; holograph autobiography in Bancroft Library; <http://www.boap.org/LDS/Early-Saints/NTracy.html>].

When Andrew Jenson, Edward Stevenson, and Joseph S. Black visited the site in September 1888, local resident and property owner Absalom McDonald "pointed out the very spot, saying Mr. John Lockhard [sic] told him that he shot Mr. Obanion just below this elevated and very sightly point... and [then] both ran for camp, about a quarter of [a] mile distant." [Andrew Jenson, *Autobiography of Andrew Jenson...* (Salt Lake City: Deseret News Press, 1838, 157). [Today,

Absalom McDonald is buried in a beautiful little cemetery on a nearby hillside that overlooks the battle site].

Tracy continued, "He [O'Banion] was left back with two brothers to care for him, while the company went on down to the camp to disperse the mob. A battle ensued in which the captain was mortally wounded and died the next day. Gideon Carter was killed outright." [Autobiography of Nancy Naomi Alexander Tracy, typescript, HBL also a Holograph Autobiography in Bancroft Library; <http://www.boap.org/LDS/Early-Saints/NTracy.html>].

Armed Encounter



Joseph Holbrook explained, "As we got near Shoal Creek [Crooked River] one of our men by the name of [Patrick O'Banion] was fired at in the main road, and died in a few hours afterward, the 25th of October, 1838.

"As we still wished if possible to learn their object in coming into Caldwell County in the form of a mob to disturb the quiet citizens and disarming them, etc. The first we knew they commenced a brisk fire upon our whole body [Battle of

Crooked River], shooting down many of our best brethren all around us and hollering so that we had no other course to take but to defend ourselves the best way we could, which soon gave us the grounds with the spoils of the camp. Among the dead and wounded was David W. Patten, one of the Twelve, shot through the chest. He died about 4:00 o'clock that day. [Patrick] O Bennion [O'Banion] was shot through the chest and died about the same time and Gideon Carter was left dead on the ground through a mistake, and [James] Hendricks who was shot through the cords of the neck and was entirely helpless. [William] Seeley, one of the young men they took prisoner at Brother Pinkham's the evening before, was shot through the shoulder and one Lilburn Hodges was shot in the hip and one Eli Chase was shot in the knee with a number more slightly wounded. I was wounded in my left elbow with a sword after cutting through five thicknesses of cloth. [It] so fractured the bone that after the doctor had placed back the bones, it was very lame for some four months and so stiff that I could not feed myself with that hand. The battle of Crooked River began October 25, about daybreak, 1838." [Joseph Holbrook, <http://www.farwesthistory.com/plumcre.htm>].

Washington Averett stated, "At Crooked River... a number of the mob was killed and wounded and several of the Saints was wounded and one noble man of the Saints was killed, David Patten, and one of the twelve apostles, a noble spirit much lamented by all the Saints. One of the Madge family and one of the Henricks family was also shot and badly wounded at that encounter at Crooked River but both recovered after along time suffering." [Autobiography of George Washington Gill Averett, typescript, BYU-S; <http://www.carolyar.com/Illinois/Bios/Averett.htm>].

"Captain David Patton, alias Fear Not, one of the twelve apostles, was sent out by the prophet with fifty men, to attack a body of Missourians, who were camping on the Crooked River. Captain Patton's men were nearly all, if not every one of them, Danites. The attack was made just before daylight in the morning. Captain Fear Not wore a white blanket overcoat, and led the attacking party. He was a brave, impulsive man. He rushed into the thickest of the fight, regardless of danger - really seeking it to show his men that God would shield him from all harm. But he counted, without just reason, upon being invincible, for a ball soon entered his body, passing through his hips and cutting his bladder. The wound was fatal; but he kept on his feet, and led his men some time before yielding to the effects of the wound. The Gentiles said afterwards that Captain Patton told his men to charge in the name of Lazarus, "'Charge, Danites, charge!'" and that as soon as he uttered the command, which distinguished him, they gave the Danite Captain a commission with powder and ball, and sent him on a mission to preach to the spirits that were in prison. In this battle several men were killed and wounded on both sides. I do not remember all of the names of the Danites that were killed, but I do remember that a man by the name of [O']Banion was killed, and one by the name of Jas. Holbrook was wounded." [*Confessions of John D. Lee*].

One account conveys the brutality of the battle as experienced from the perspective of Bogart's forces, "Two Mormons attacked Samuel Tarwater, Crooked River Survivor [Samuel] Tarwater with corn knives and nearly cut him to pieces. He received a terrible gash in the skull, through which his brain was plainly visible, one terrible blow across the face severed the jaw bone and

destroyed all the upper teeth, and there was an ugly gash made in his neck. He kept his bed six months and his wounds considerably affected his speech and memory." [*History of Caldwell and Livingston Counties, Missouri*, 130].

"The ground was soon cleared, and the brethren gathered up a wagon or two and making beds therein of tents, etc., took their wounded and retreated towards Far West. Three brethren were wounded in the bowels, one in the neck, one (page 214) in the shoulder, one through the hips, one through both thighs, one in the arms, all by musket shot. One had his arm broken by a sword. Brother Gideon Carter was shot in the head and left dead on the ground, so defaced that the brethren did not know him. Bogart reported that he had lost one man." [*History of the RLDS Church*, 2, 213-14; <http://www.centerplace.org/history/ch/v2ch12.htm>].

John Rigdon said, "The Mormons... took their horse[s], blankets and what guns they could find and the clothing they left behind, and took up the bodies of Patten and O'Banion and started for Far West. [They] did not know that Carter had been shot as it was dark." [*The Life and Testimony of Sidney Rigdon John Wickliffe Rigdon, Dialogue*, 1, No.4, 32].

"We took three of our brethren whom they had prisoners, one of whom was severely wounded by the mob; we gathered up Captain Patten and the others who were wounded and put them in a wagon, and left for Far West; the sun was not yet risen." [Charles Rich, journal, in "History," *Millennial Star*, 26 (1864):441].

"The three prisoners were released and returned with the brethren to Far West. Captain Patten was carried some of the way in a litter, but it caused so much distress he begged to be left, and was carried into Brother Winchester's, three miles from the city, where he died that night. O'Banion died soon after, and Brother Carter's body was also brought from Crooked River, when it was discovered who he was." *History of the RLDS Church*, 2, 213-14; <http://www.centerplace.org/history/ch/v2ch12.htm>].

Peter Burnett a member of the Clay County militia, the "Liberty Blues," happened upon the battle site the next day. Burnett wrote, "John "Estes, one of Bogard's [Bogart's] men, who was in the fight, escaped and came to Liberty the same day, and gave information to General Atchison. The latter at once ordered the Liberty Blues to march to the battleground, and there await further orders. I was a member of this independent militia company.

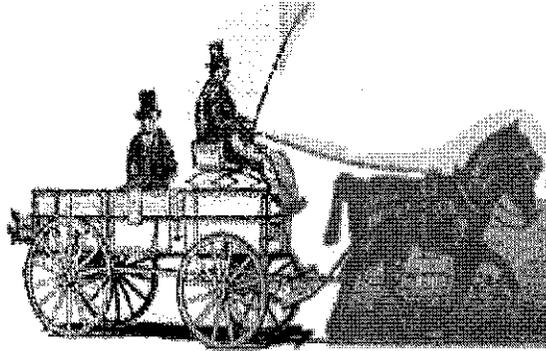
We made ready, and were off before night, and marched some ten miles that evening, under General Doniphan. The next day we reached the scene of conflict, and encamped in the edge of the open oak-woods next to the prairie that extended from that point to Far West (the town being in the open prairie), and on the road that Patton had traveled to attack Bogard, and about one mile nearer Far West than Bogard's camp. We were joined by some of Bogard's men, so that we numbered about one hundred. The first night after our 'encampment was cold and frosty. I remember it well, for I was on guard that night... The next day was warm and beautiful, and was what is called "Indian summer." I went upon the battle-field and examined it carefully. The dead and wounded had all been removed; but the clots of blood upon the leaves where the men had fallen were fresh and plainly to be seen. It looked like the scene of death. Here lay a wool hat, there a tin cup, here an old blanket; in the top of this little tree hung a wallet of provisions; and saddles and bridles, and various articles of clothing, lay around in confusion. The marks of the bullets were seen all around. I remember that a small linden-tree,

three or four inches in diameter, that stood behind Patton's men, seemed to have been a target, from the number of shots that had struck it." [Peter H. Burnett, *Recollections and Opinions of an Old Pioneer* (New York: D. Appleton and Company, 1880), 59-60.]

Battle of Crooked River

25 October 1838

Compilation of Sources by Ron Romig and Mel Tungate, 11-6-2003



John Rigdon, related, "The mob routed, his brethren gathered about their wounded leader in deepest sorrow, and everything possible was done to minister to his comfort. Word was dispatched to Far West for medical assistance to meet the party, the wagons of the mob were pressed into service, and the victorious, but sorrow-stricken company took up their dreary march toward Far West. Seven of the brethren were wounded, and one, Gideon Carter, had been killed outright." [The Life and Testimony of Sidney Rigdon John Wickliffe Rigdon, *Dialogue*, 1, No.4, 32]. "Gideon Carter, who was also a faithful Saint, was shot in the head, and left dead on the ground, so defaced that the brethren did not at first know him." [Orson F. Whitney, *Life of Heber C. Kimball*, 215].

Parley P. Pratt wrote that a captured "baggage wagon was immediately harnessed to a couple of horses, and the wounded were picked up and laid in it upon blankets, while every man saddled and mounted a horse, and we commenced our retreat to the place where we had left our horses and guard, [at the home of Randolph McDonald], a distance of more than a mile." [Pratt, *History of the Late Persecution*, 35; also Johnson, *Mormon Redress Petitions*, 79; and Young, "Narrative"].

From McDonald's, Patten's company proceeded slowly on toward Far West. Rich wrote, "After traveling a few miles, brother Patten's sufferings became so great he wished to be left; he and Brother Seeley were then placed upon litters and carried by the brethren. When we arrived near Log creek, we met President Joseph Smith, Hyrum Smith, H. C. Kimball and others. At this place Brother [David] Patten became so ill, he was not able to be borne any further, we rested a short time." [Charles Rich Journal in "History," *Millennial Star*, 26 (1864):441].

Parley P. Pratt chronicled, "Having now arranged every thing to the best advantage for the wounded, we moved on slowly towards Far West. When we came within five miles of the city, our express had reached there with the news of the battle." ["A History of the Persecution, of the Church of Jesus Christ, of Latter Day Saints in Missouri," *Times and Seasons*, 1:114]. Jonathan W. Barlow, who

cared for Joseph Smith's horses, &c., said, "I was at Joseph Smith, jr's. house the morning after the battle with Captain Bogart. A messenger, (named, I think, Mr. Emmett,) cam early in the morning after Smith, from Captain Patten, saying that Patten was wounded, and wished to see Smith. I caught Joseph Smith and Lyman Wight's horses, who started off together." [Barlow, *Documents Concerning Correspondence and Orders...*, 147-48]. "Without delay, on receiving the mournful intelligence, the Prophet Joseph Smith with his brother Hyrum, Apostle Heber C. Kimball and Elder Amasa M. Lyman, with others, as also David's grief-stricken wife, made all haste to meet the sorrowful cavalcade." [Lycurgus A. Wilson, *Life of David W. Patten*, 86].

Pratt continued, "We were met by a surgeon and others for our relief, and among others the wife of the pale and dying Patten." ["A History of the Persecution, of the Church of Jesus Christ, of Latter Day Saints in Missouri," *Times and Seasons*, 1:114].

John Rigdon, "They got a few miles way, when the pains of Patten were so bad they had to stop to the house of a friend and leave him, and they sent for his wife. She got there just before he died. When she came into the house, he told her he was a-going to die but whatever she did, not to deny the fact. In less than an hour he was dead. They brought young Patrick O'Banion to my father's house where he lingered in great agony for two days and then died. He was not a Mormon, nor was his father or mother. They came and took the body away. The next day they brought David Patten's body, and also that of Gideon Carter, to Far West, whom they found lying dead on the field. He was shot through the neck and the Mormons did not know he was hurt till the next morning after Patten's death. I was at Patten's house when his body was brought there. I looked into the wagon box and there lay David Patten's body silent in death; he lay on his back, his lips tightly closed and no indication of fear on his countenance. He was a brave man and we all deeply mourned his loss." [John Wickliffe Rigdon, *Dialogue*, 1, No. 4:32; John Rigdon claimed O'Banion was not a church member- while other sources indicate he was]. Charles C. Rich noted, "...we ministered what we could to the wounded. Sent a messenger to Far West, took our horses and Continued our journey towards Farwest near Log Creek we was met By sister Patten, President Joseph and Hyrum Smith and Lyman Wight and [Francis Higbee] we left Br. Patten at Log Creek he was moved to Goose Creek and Died that evening also Br. Obanion Br. Gideon Carter was Left Dead on the Ground..." [C.C. Rich affidavit, in Clark, *Mormon Redress Petitions*, 707-708].

Morris Phelps stated, "On our return from the battle-ground, near Log Creek timber, in Caldwell county, we met Joseph Smith, Jr., Lyman Wight and others, who went to the wounded and pronounced blessings on them..." [Testimony of Morris Phelps, *Correspondence and Orders*, 110]. Addison F. Green, also testified, I saw Joseph Smith, jr., Sidney Rigdon [sic Hyrum Smith], Lyman Wight, and Francis Higbey [Higbee], come riding up from towards Far West, meeting the company who had that morning fought with Bogart. They met the company near the timber of Log creek in Caldwell county. I was one of the spy company from Far West..." [Addison F. Green, *Document Concerning Correspondence and Orders...*, 144]. Joseph Smith is given to have said, "I went with my brother Hyrum and Lyman Wight to meet the brethren on heir return, near Log Creek, where I saw Captain Patten in a most distressing condition. His

wound was incurable. Brother David Patten was a very worthy man, beloved by all good men who knew him. He was one of the Twelve Apostles, and died as he had lived, a man of God, and strong in the faith of a glorious resurrection, in a world where mobs will have no power or place. One of his last expressions to his wife was -- "Whatever you do else, O! do not deny the faith..." [*History of the LDS Church*, 3, 171]. Elder Kimball's also reported the following: "Immediately on receiving the intelligence that Brother [David] Patten was wounded, I hastened to see him. When I arrived he appeared to be in great pain; but still was glad to see us. He was conveyed about four miles, to the house of brother Stephen Winchester, during his removal his sufferings were so excruciating, that he frequently desired us to lay him down that he might die. But being desirous to get him out of the reach of the mob, and among friends, we prevailed upon him to let us convey him there. We carried him on a kind of a bier we fixed up with poles." [*Millennial Star*, 26 (June 25 to July 16, 1864): 406-408:422-424:439-441:454-455

Return to Far West

Sampson Avard testified, "In reference to Bogart's battle, I know but little, personally, as to the start of the troops to fight Bogart. I was called upon to go along with the company (which was commanded by Patten) as surgeon. This was about mid-night; but as I thought a little sleep would do me more good than fighting, I remained at home. In the morning of the fight, about 6 o'clock, I was called upon by a Mr. Emmett, who informed me that Captain Fearnought was wounded mortally. I went to Patten, about three miles from the battle-ground, where I found Jos. Smith, jr., present, laying hands on the wounds, and blessing them to heal them. A Mr. O'Bannion was also mortally wounded." [Sampson Avard, *Senate Document 189*, 9].

This meeting must have occurred at the Widow Medcalf's [in the vicinity of Henry Snyder's] at the Log Creek timber. The severely wounded must have briefly been taken into Widow Medcalf's home. Apparently here Sister Hendricks found her husband. Phoebe Ann Patten had also arrived and was already at her husband's side.

Drusilla Hendricks awoke early that morning, anticipating the return of her husband, "Finally I saw Bro. Emit [Emmitt] coming through the timber. I watched and saw that he did not stop at home but he hollered something about Bro. Hendricks. I could not tell what it was but he was on express to Farwest. The [Emmitt] children soon came over and told me that their father said that Bro. Hendricks was shot. Then I went to the field to give vent to my feelings and while there I saw a man pass through the field on horseback, it looked like he had a great roll of blankets; I went back to the house and found the children all crying. I went to the loom to try and weave to let on to them that I did not believe the report about their father. I could not weave at all; but had not sat there but a few moments when I saw a Mr. T. [Henry?] Snider [Snyder] (he did not belong to the church, but [was] a good man) get off his horse at the gate. (I saw him wipe his eyes, I knew that he was crying.) He came to the door and said, Mr. Hendricks wishes you to come to him. I asked where. He said to the widow Medcalf's and that he had come for me. I asked where and how he was shot and he thought he

was shot in the hip.

There was a woman in the house that I had taken care of for weeks. I told her to do the best she could with the children and I mounted the horse behind Mr. Snider. We had four miles to ride and on reaching there we met nine of the brethren that were wounded and they were pale as death. They were just going to get into the wagon to be taken to their homes. I went into the house. Sister Patten had just reached the bed where her husband lay and I heard him say, "'Ann don't weep. I have kept the faith and my work is done.'" My husband lay within three feet of Brother Patten, and I spoke to him. He could speak but could not move any more than if he were dead. I tried to get him to move his feet but he could not. This was Thursday, October 25, 1838, and the next Tuesday was the Battle of Hauns Mill where men and boys were slaughtered and thrown into a dry well 18 or 48 in number, out of which only one (Benjamin Lewis) received a decent burial.

There were three beds in the room where my husband lay - he in one, Brother David Patten in one, and Brother Hodge in the other. Brother Hodge was the one shot in the hip. Brother Obanyon was on the floor begging for a bed and some of the sisters ran and got him one. My husband was shot in the neck where it cut off all feeling of the body. It is of no use for me to try and tell how I felt for that is impossible, but I could not have shed a tear if all had been dead before me. I went to work to try and get my husband warm but could not. I rubbed and steamed him but could get no circulation. He was dead from his neck down.

One of the brethren told me how he fell for he was close to him. After he had fallen one of the brethren asked him which side he was on (for it was not yet light enough to see) and all the answer he made was the watch word "'God and Liberty.'" On hearing this it melted me to tears and I felt better. Then I was told how many of the brethren were wounded and who they were and was shown the weapons used and they bore blood from hilt to point. It makes me chill to think of it." [Historical Sketch of James Hendricks and Drusilla Dorris Hendricks; <http://freepages.genealogy.rootsweb.com/~raymondfamily/ddorris5.htm>].

The rest of the company was anxious to move on toward Far West for defensive reasons. The less severely wounded were loaded into a wagon and taken directly home from this point. Patten, O'Banion and Hendricks were left behind. Before long, Patten and O'banion were carried on to Stephen Winchester's. James Hendricks was left behind with his wife at Widow Medcalf's.

Wyatt Craven, (a member of Bogart's militia company at the battle of Crooked River), stated that he was taken prisoner by the Mormons after the battle. Craven added, "I saw Joseph Smith, Jr., come up to the Mormons [the wounded] at a house in Log Creek timber, a few miles from the battle-ground. The wounded were taken out of the wagon there, and we started on towards Far West. J. Smith jr., passed on by me to the head of the company, where Pratt and Wight were riding. After getting into the prairie, Wight halted the company. He, Pratt, and four others, rode off a piece, and conferred together, and then returned to the company..." After the party let Craven go, Parley P. Pratt shot at him, lodging a bullet in Craven's hip, then left him for dead." [Testimony of Wyatt Cravens, *Senate Document 189*, 10-11]. John D. Lee substantiates Craven's testimony, even though he confuses the name of the prisoner. "I saw a man by the name of Tarwater [Craven], on the Gentile side, that was cut up fearfully. He was taken

Prisoner. The Danites routed the Gentiles, who fled in every direction. The night being dark, Jas. Holbrook and another Danite met, and had a hand-to-hand fight, in which they cut each other fearfully with their swords before they discovered that they were friends. After the Gentiles retreated, the Mormons started for Far West, taking Tarwater [Craven] along as a prisoner. After traveling several miles, they halted in a grove of timber, and released Tarwater [Craven], telling him he was free to go home. He started off, and when he was some forty yards from the Mormons, Parley P. Pratt, then one of the Twelve Apostles, stepped up to a tree, laid his gun up by the side of the tree, took deliberate aim, and shot Tarwater [Craven]. He fell and lay still. The Mormons, believing he was dead, went on and left him lying where he fell. Tarwater [Craven] came to, and reached home, where he was taken care of, and soon recovered from his wounds. He afterwards testified in court against the Mormons that he knew." [*Confessions of John D. Lee*].

With the severity of Patten's pain increasing during this leg of the journey, the party made little further progress, this time stopping at Stephen Winchesters nearer Goose Creek, where Patten was again placed on a bed. Alan Stout recalled, "next morning I heard that the brethren had had a fight with Bogart and retook the prisoners, but David W. Patten, Gideon Carter, and Patterson [Patrick ?] O'Banion were slain in the fight. I helped to tend on Patten while he was dying." [Alan Stout, journal, <http://www.farwesthistory.com/stout.htm>].

The party divided further, some continued on, conveying O'Banion to Far West. This group encountered Sidney Rigdon coming south along the highway.

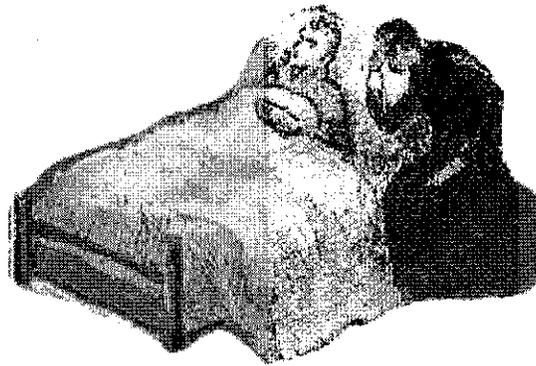
Rigdon received news of the battle early that morning, but did not start south for some time. "Some time after I got up in the morning, the sheriff of the county stopped at the door, and said that David Patten, had had a battle with the mob last night at crooked river, and that several were killed and a number wounded; that Patten was among the number of the wounded, and his wound was supposed to be mortal. After I had taken breakfast another gentleman called, giving me the same account, and asked me if I would not take my horse and ride out with him and see what was done. I agreed to do so, and we started, and after going some three or four miles, met a company coming into Far West, we turned and went back with them." [Sidney Rigdon, *Times and Seasons*, 4, No. 18 (August 1, 1843)].

Parley P. Pratt claimed, "Having conveyed the wounded to this place of hospitality [Winchester's], we hastened home to Far West, and delivered the horses and spoils of the enemy to Col. Hinkle, the commanding officer of the Regiment." [Parley P. Pratt, *Times and Seasons*, 1: 114].

Battle of Crooked River

25 October 1838

Compilation of Sources by Ron Romig and Mel Tungate, 11-6-2003



Heber C. Kimball narrated the scene at Winchester's, "The principles of the Gospel which were so precious to him [Patten] before, were honorably maintained in nature's final hour and afforded him that support and consolation at the time of his departure, which deprived death of its sting and horror. Speaking of those who had fallen from their steadfastness, he [David Patten] exclaimed, "O that they were in my situation! for I feel I have kept the faith, I have finished my course, henceforth there is laid up for me a crown which the Lord, the righteous Judge shall give to me."

Kimball continues, "[Patten] speaking to his beloved wife [Phoebe Ann] who was present and who attended him in his dying moments, he said, "'Whatever you do else, O, do not deny the faith!'" He all the while expressed a great desire to depart. I spoke to him and said, "'Brother David, when you get home I want you to remember me.'" He exclaimed, "'I will.'" At this time his sight was gone. We felt so very much attached to our beloved brother, that we beseeched the Lord to spare his life and endeavored to exercise faith for his recovery. Of this he was perfectly aware, and expressed a desire, that we should let him go, as his desire was to be with Christ which was far better. A few minutes before he died he prayed as follows:--'Father, I ask thee, in the name of Jesus Christ, that thou wouldst release my spirit and receive it unto thyself:'" and then said to those who surrounded his dying bed, "'Brethren you have held me by your faith, but do give me up and let me go I beseech you.'" We committed him to God, and he soon breathed his last, and slept in Jesus without a groan. This was the end of one who was an honor to the Church and a blessing to the Saints: and whose faith, virtues and diligence in the cause of truth will be long remembered by all who had the pleasure of his acquaintance, and his memory will be had in remembrance by the Church of Christ from generation to generation." [Extract from the Journal of Heber C. Kimball, *Times and Seasons*, 2, No 16, 443].

Patten's Death

Bathsheba W. Bigler Smith, wrote, "Three nights after we had arrived at the farm which my brother had bought, and which was four miles south of the city of Far West, word came that a mob was gathering on Crooked River, and a call was made for men to go out in command of Captain David W. Patten, for the purpose

of trying to stop the depredations of the men, who were whipping and otherwise maltreating our brethren, and who were destroying and burning property. Captain Patten's company went, and a battle ensued. Some of the Latter-day Saints were killed, and several were wounded. I saw Brother James Hendrix, one of the wounded, as he was being carried home; he was entirely helpless and nearly speechless. Soon afterwards Captain David W. Patten, who was one of the twelve apostles, was brought wounded into the house where we were. I heard him bear testimony to the truth of Mormonism. He exhorted his wife and all present to abide in the faith. His wife asked him if he had anything against any one. He answered, 'No.' Elder Heber C. Kimball asked him if he would remember him when he got home. He said he would. Soon after this he died, without a struggle." [Bathsheba W. Bigler Smith, in Edward W. Tullidge, *The Women of Mormondom* (New York: n.p., 1877), 150-155].

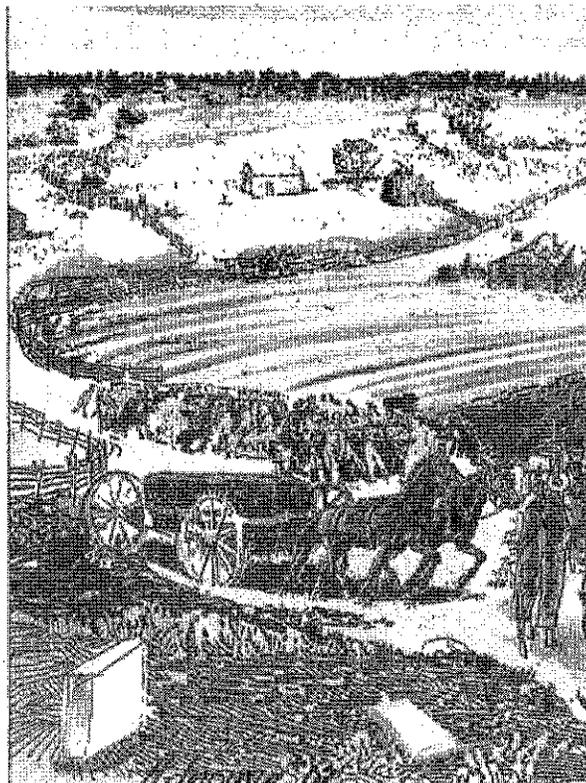
Kimball recalled, "He [Patten] lived about an hour after his arrival, and was perfectly sensible and collected until he breathed his last, at ten o'clock at night. Although he had medical assistance, his wound was such that there was no hope entertained for his recovery, and this he was perfectly aware of. In this situation, while the shades of time were lowering, and eternity with all its realities opening to his view, he bore a strong testimony to the truth of the work of the Lord, and the religion he had espoused. He was perfectly sensible and collected until he breathed his last, which occurred at about ten o'clock in the evening. Stephen Winchester, Brother Patten's wife, Bathsheba W. Bigler, with several of her father's family were present at David's death." [Orson F. Whitney, *Life of Heber C. Kimball*, 213-14]. Joseph Holbrook stated that Patten died about four o'clock in the afternoon. [Joseph Holbrook, <http://www.farwesthistory.com/plumcre.htm>].

After Patten's death, his body was transported to Far West.

Battle of Crooked River

25 October 1838

Compilation of Sources by Ron Romig and Mel Tungate, 11-6-2003



Heber C. Kimball is quoted as saying, after he left Patten's deathbed, "I took Dr. Avard with me to Far West, a distance of three miles, to Elder Rigdon's house, where we found Brother Patrick O'Banyon, who was wounded in nearly the same manner as Brother Patten. He also died in a short time, firm and steadfast in the faith. He was perfectly calm and composed, and bore a strong testimony to the truth of Mormonism." [Orson F. Whitney, *Life of Heber C. Kimball*, 214, 215]. Stephen Winchester went back south with his wagon and picked up James Hendricks and his wife. Stephen transported them to directly to Far West for safety.

Drusilla Hendricks wrote, "We stayed here until almost night when one of our neighbors, Brother Winchester and wife, came with a wagon and bed in it and took us to Farwest. The brethren told me if I took him home that the mob would kill him before my eyes. I left my children in care of the man and his wife that I had been taking care of for two months, who had been suffering with fever and ague. But when the army came in they ran and left everything so the children had to go to the neighbors. But a Brother Stanley and wife (who came from the East the day before the battle) gathered up my children and went and stayed with them

and took care of things, for which kindness I shall always feel grateful.”[Historical Sketch of James Hendricks and Drusilla Dorris Hendricks; <http://freepages.genealogy.rootsweb.com/~raymondfamily/ddorris5.htm>], pp. 406-408:422-424:439-441:454-455].

Alan Stout recalled, “The Church in that [Log Creek] settlement all went into Far West that day because Sampson Avard told them that the mob would be upon them by night and kill them, but the mob fled as fast the other way.” [Alan Stout, journal, <http://www.farwesthistory.com/stout.htm>"]. Amasa Lyman described the scene, [returning from reconnaissance], “We arrived in Far West early on the morning of the 29th of October [1838]. I called at brother Rigdon's where I saw brother O'Banion who was dying of his wound, received at Crooked river. Some hours later, in the morning of the same day, the corpse of brother David W. Patten was brought into town.” [Amasa Lyman].

Alfred Child, remembered, “Mother Polly Child took our leave, a span of horses and wagon and with Myron Barber Child, a small boy, started to Far West, about 18 miles away from where we were living, for supplies. While on the way, news was received of the shooting of David Patten, in the Battle of Crooked River, and her team was taken to bring the body to Far West.” [Life of Alfred Bosworth Child; <http://www.childgenealogy.org/home/stories/alfredb/alfredb.html>].

Patten's comrade-in-arms John D. Lee later wrote, "I admit up to this time that I frankly believed what the Prophet and his apostles had said on the subject. I had considered that I was bullet proof, that no Gentile ball could ever harm me, or any Saint, and I had believed that a Danite could not be killed by Gentile hands. I thought that one Danite could chase a thousand Gentiles, and two could put ten thousand to flight. Alas! my dreams of security were over. One of our mighty men had fallen, and that by Gentile hands!" [*Confessions of John D. Lee*, 198-99].

Later that week, when news was received of the attack on Haun's Mill, Colonel Hinkle ordered a guard of fifty men to the settlement. James Rollins recalled, “As we rode across the Square, the Prophet came out of George Robertson's house, where David Patten and O'Banion lay dead. He came out without hat or coat and stopped us and asked us where we were going. We told him we were going to Hayn's [Hauns] Mill to assist the brethren there. He told us that we were his men, and that we must not go. If we did go against his will there would not be one of us left to tell the tale tomorrow morning. He was very pale and said he, "Go put your horses up and help us to bury these two brethren." And we did...” [James H. Rollins, *Autobiography*, BYU Special Collections, 8-9].

Joseph Smith is given to have said, “Saturday, 27 [sic]. -- Brother Patten was buried this day at Far West, and before the funeral, I called at Brother Patten's house, and while meditating on the scene before me in presence of his friends, I could not help pointing to his lifeless body and testifying, "There lies a man that has done just as he said he would -- he has laid down his life for his friends.” [*History of the LDS Church*, 3, 171; See Elder George Q. Cannon's narration of these events in his *Life of Joseph Smith the Prophet*, 221-224]. John Rigdon recalled, “The next day [October

27th 1838] we buried both David Patten and Gideon Carter in military order. Joseph Smith and Hyrum Smith and Sidney Rigdon rode at the head of the procession on horseback. Then came the martial band and after that the bodies of David Patten and Gideon Carter and then quite a little procession followed. After, we took them out to a little burying ground just outside of the village and there we buried them." ["The Life and Testimony of Sidney Rigdon," John Wickliffe Rigdon, *Dialogue*, 1, No. 4: 32].

Funeral of David W. Patten

On the occasion of his [Patten's] funeral at Far West, Joseph Smith said, "Brother David W. Patten was a very worthy man, beloved by all good men who knew him. He. . . died as he had lived, a man of God, and strong in the faith of a glorious resurrection. . . ." Patten was buried in the Far West Burial Ground, 1 mile northwest of the Temple site. [Andrew Jenson 1:76, Milton Backman, *Profiles of LDS, Kirtland*, 53, Black, Membership of the Church, 34:80, Cook, *Revelations of Joseph Smith*, 226, George McCune, *Personalities in the D&C*, 88]. Wilford Woodruff observed, "The remains were laid to rest with military honors at Far West, and the grave is now unmarked and unknown, but of the noble spirit, the Lord, in a revelation a few years subsequent to his departure, vouchsafed this intelligence." [Scott G. Kenney, ed., *Wilford Woodruff's Journal*, 1833-1898; Though we know the general area for the Far West Burial Ground, we do not know the exact location of any grave. This account suggests that Patten's grave was left unmarked].

Albert P. Rockwood stated that the body of Gideon Carter was recovered on 26 October 1838 [Rockwood, "Journal," 24].

Oliver Huntington said, "One day I saw a crowd around a wagon not far from our house, so I ran up to see what was going on; I climbed up and stuck my head over the edge of the box and the first thing my eyes met was the familiar face of Gideon Carter, and although the cursed, worse than inhuman mob, had dug his eyes out with sticks he still looked like himself. Gideon was killed in the Crooked [Crooked] River Battle, had a ball hole in his breast and a large gash of a sword in the back side of his head. He lay on the battle ground until the next day or two when the mob came and buried their own dead, dug his eyes out and kicked the dirt over him where he had laid until now, the brethren not daring to go that far from home or for some other cause I know not what. Although we gained the day and the ground in that affair, yet he was left on the ground, from the cause of its being strict orders not to touch a dead man at all hazards; so they hurried from the ground and did not miss him until a day or two after, when it was not known exactly where he was; and when he was found he was just as I saw him; in his every-day clothes, and smelled very bad." [Oliver B. Huntington: <http://www.boap.org/LDS/Early-Saints/OBHuntington.html>].

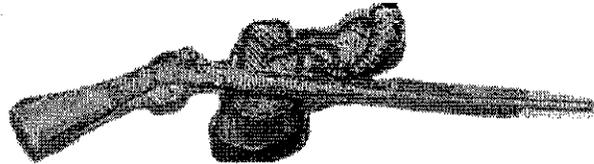
Heber C. Kimball eulogized Patten saying, "This was the death of one who was an honor to the Church and a blessing to the Saints; and whose faith, virtues and diligence in the cause of truth will be had in remembrance by the Church of Jesus Christ from generation to generation. It was a painful way to be deprived of the

labors of this worthy servant of Christ, and it cast a gloom upon the Saints; yet the glorious and sealing testimony which he bore of his acceptance with heaven and the truth of the Gospel was a matter of joy and satisfaction, not only to his immediate friends, but to the Saints at large." [Orson F. Whitney, *Life of Heber C. Kimball*, 214].

Battle of Crooked River

25 October 1838

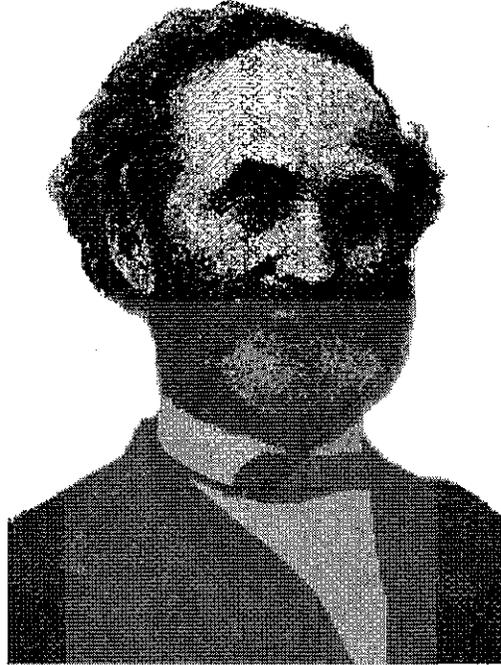
Compilation of Sources by Ron Romig and Mel Tungate, 11-6-2003



Immediately after the battle, excited reports of the encounter flew across the Missouri countryside. The Mormon attack upon Bogart created wide-spread alarm among Missouri non-Mormons. This excitement encouraged Boggs to take aggressive action to quell the growing disturbance. New orders to General Clark authorized him to "proceed immediately to Richmond and then operate against the Mormons." [Boggs to John B. Clark, 27 October 1838, *Document Concerning Correspondence and Orders...*, 61].

Aware that there would be consequences for Mormons in the battle, leaders urged participants to flee the state. Lorenzo D. Young said if the Missouri militia, "succeeded in taking the brethren who were in the Crooked River battle, they would be tried by a court martial and shot... [so] after counseling over the matter, it was decided that I, and others in the same situation should start that night into the wilderness north, for the Des Moines River, in Iowa Territory." [Young, "Narrative," 52]. Ebenezer Robinson recalled, "That night [31 October 1838], about sixty of those who had ben engaged in the Crooked River battle... were advised to leave, being looked upon as men who had periled their lives in defense of their brethren, and their friends wished them to escape the wrath of their persecutors." [Robinson, "Items of Personal History," 210].

A second group of six or seven participants, led by Dimick B. Huntington, left Far West 1 November, 1838, minutes before the surrender to General Lucas' forces." [Huntington, "Reminiscences and Journal," 16-17]. Some individuals, like William Bosley and John Pack, left on their own. [Julia Ives Pack, "Autobiography...", in Kate B. Carter, comp., *Our Pioneer Heritage*, 9 (1966): 449]. Additionally, some participants remained in the Far West area and evaded capture by hiding. Charles C. Rich, Parley P. Pratt and Lyman Wight helped with the defense of Far West and were among those arrested.



John Pack in later years

Aftermath

Helen Mar Kimball Whitney provides a glimpse into the subsequent experiences of Patten's wife, Phoebe Ann.

“Since writing my reminiscences I have thought of the names of many who lived and died for the truth. Among these was the widow of Brother David W. Patten. She was a noble and self-sacrificing woman, who left all for the gospel's sake, and her husband being a missionary, she was early thrown upon her own resources, and though she had a slight and delicate frame, she had a persevering and energetic spirit, was neat, and naturally of a refined nature and could not be happy in idleness. She was a seamstress by trade and worked for her living. The hardships and privations incident to a western life, particularly to the Latter-day Saints, soon broke her down and brought on consumption. After her husband was killed, she, being like the rest destitute, felt that she must do something for her support, and not finding anything else that she could do, concluded to take a few boarders. Among them was a young man who, though not a member of our Church, bore a good character, and, to be brief, he loved her, and seeing her lonely condition, proposed to marry her. She accepted. This step, at the time, caused many to think her weak in the faith. When we afterwards met her in Quincy, Illinois, she told my parents why she married without asking counsel, said she was no longer able to work and had no one to take care of her, and she knew what the counsel would be if she asked it, and not wishing to disobey, she did it on her own responsibility. As soon as he heard and understood the gospel, he received it. After father [Heber C. Kimball] came to us in Quincy, they having a house with two rooms, gave us one to live in while father went up to Commerce

to prepare a place for us. His name was Bentley. He was a carpenter by trade, industrious and well able to provide everything she needed or desired, and though a number of years younger than she, he was perfectly devoted to her, and his study by day and by night was to make her comfortable. No one could show greater love and tenderness toward a wife than he did, until her spirit took its flight which, if I remember rightly, was the second year after the Saints settled at Nauvoo" [Phoebe Ann Patten, *Women's Exponent*, 9 (1880)].

The following is copied from;

<http://freepages.genealogy.rootsweb.com/~raymondfamily/ddorris5.htm>

Historical Sketch of James HENDRICKS and Drusilla DORRIS

Tragedy at Crooked River

The summer passed until August without any trouble; we had had just three years of peace but the first of August our trouble began over the election. My husband had to stand guard for three months as the mob would gather on the outside settlements. The brethren had to be ready and on hand at the sounding of a bass drum. At three taps on the drum my husband would be on his horse in a moment, be it night or day while I and my children were left to weep



"The Battle of Crooked River," by C.C.A. Christensen.
© Copyright by the Museum of Art at Brigham Young University.
Used by permission.

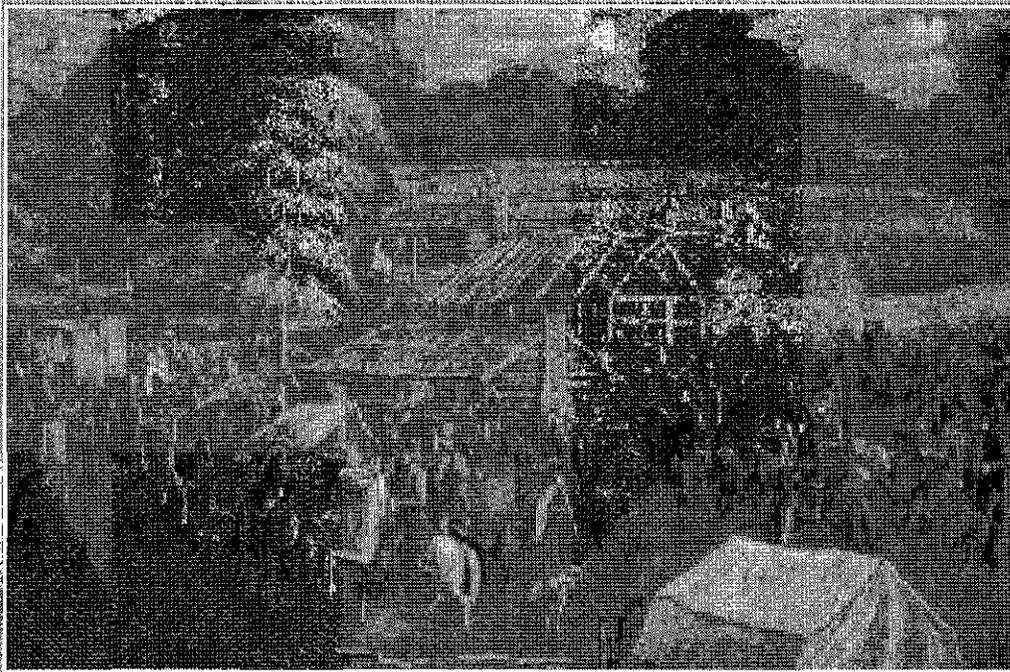
for that is what we did, at such times. I was willing for him to go as I always was until he fell in defense of the kingdom of God. Our crops were nearly destroyed while he was on duty, but I gathered in all I could in his absence.

This scene of things continued until Oct. 24, 1838 when the mob gathered on the south of us and sent out the word that they would burn everything they came to and that they already had two of our brethren as prisoners and the prairies were black with smoke. Joseph Smith and his brother Hyrum, with others of the brethren, came along going upon the high places to try and discover, if possible, what was going on. They came back by the door of our house and stopped for a moment. They thought the mob was burning the grass and outer houses to scare the inhabitants to make them flee so they could rob and plunder them of what they had. We had no chance of taking care of our vegetables so my husband said that we had better make the cabbage into kraut, so we went to work and

finished it at 10 o'clock that night. He asked if I would go with him to get a stone to weight the kraut. I walked behind him and watched his form for he always stood erect. The thought came to me that I might never see him so straight and erect again. He got the stone and I still walked behind him watching his form with those same thoughts and feelings on my heart and mind, (that I might never see him like that again). I couldn't tell my feelings if I should try, but I said nothing. We had prayer and went to bed and fell asleep. I dreamed that something had befallen him and I was gathering him in my arms when Bro. C. C. Rich¹ called at the door for him and told him what he wanted.

They had word that the mob was on Crooked River² ten miles south of us and was a strong band. He said they had two of our brethren as prisoners and were doing all the damage that lay in their power. I got up and lit a fire for it was cold, while he brought his horse to the door. I thought he was slower than usual. He told me where they were to meet. I got his overcoat and put his pistols in the pockets, then got his sword and belted it on him. He bid me goodnight and got on his horse and I took his gun from the rack and handed it to him and said, "Don't get shot in the back." I had got used to his going so went to bed and went to sleep. Just about the time he was shot I was aroused from my sleep suddenly and I thought the yard was full of men and they were shooting. I was on my feet before I knew what I was doing. I went to the window at the back of the house but all was still. I was afraid to open the door. I could hear nothing so I ventured to open the door. It was getting light enough so I could see a very little. I went out and around the house and found there was no one there. Then I was worse scared than ever for I thought it was a token to me that they had had a battle. I got the children up and walked the floor and watched the road. I tried to work but could not. I tried to keep still but could not. Finally I saw Bro. Emit³ coming through the timber. I watched and saw that he did not stop at home but he hollered something about Bro. Hendricks. I could not tell what it was but he was on express to Farwest.

The children soon came over and told me that their father said that Bro. Hendricks was shot. Then I went to the field to give vent to my feelings and while there I saw a man pass through the field on horseback, it looked like he had a great roll of blankets; I went back to the house and found the children all crying. I went to the loom to try and weave to let on to them that I did not believe the report about their father. I could not weave at all; but had not sat there but a few moments when I saw a Mr. T. Snider⁴ (he did not belong to the church, but a good man) get off his horse at the gate. (I saw him wipe his eyes, I knew that he was crying.) He came to the door and said, Mr. Hendricks wishes you to come to him. I asked where. He said to the widow Medcalf's⁵ and that he had come for me. I asked where and how he was shot and he thought he was shot in the hip.



"Haun's Mill" Massacre, by C.C.A. Christensen.
© Copyright by the Museum of Art at Brigham Young University.
Used by permission.

There was a woman in the house that I had taken care of for weeks. I told her to do the best she could with the children and I mounted the horse behind Mr. Snider. We had four miles to ride and on reaching there we met nine of the brethren that were wounded and they were pale as death. They were just going to get into the wagon to be taken to their homes. I went into the house. Sister Patten had just reached the bed where her husband⁶ lay and I heard him say, "Ann don't weep. I have kept the faith and my work is done." My husband lay within three feet of Brother Patten, and I spoke to him. He could speak but could not move any more than if he were dead.⁷ I tried to get him to move his feet but he could not. This was Thursday, October 25, 1838, and the next Tuesday was the Battle of Haun's Mill⁸ where men and boys were slaughtered and thrown into a dry well 18 or 48 in number, out of which only one (Benjamin Lewis) received a decent burial.

There were three beds in the room where my husband lay - he in one, Brother David Patten in one, and Brother Hodge in the other. Brother Hodge was the one shot in the hip. Brother Obanyon² was on the floor begging for a bed and some of the sisters ran and got him one. My husband was shot in the neck where it cut off all feeling of the body. It is of no use for me to try and tell how I felt for that is impossible, but I could not have shed a tear if all had been dead before me. I went to work to try and get my husband warm but could not. I rubbed and steamed him but could get no circulation. He was dead from his neck down.

One of the brethren told me how he fell for he was close to him. After he had fallen one of the brethren asked him which side he was on (for it was not yet light enough to see) and all the answer he made was the watch word "God and Liberty". On hearing this it melted me to tears and I felt better. Then I was told how many of the brethren were

wounded and who they were and was shown the weapons used and they bore blood from hilt to point. It makes me chill to think of it.

We stayed here until almost night when one of our neighbors, Brother Winchester¹⁰ and wife, came with a wagon and bed in it and took us to Farwest. The brethren told me if I took him home that the mob would kill him before my eyes. I left my children in care of the man and his wife that I had been taking care of for two months, who had been suffering with fever and ague. But when the army came in they ran and left everything so the children had to go to the neighbors. But a Brother Stanley and wife (who came from the East the day before the battle) gathered up my children and went and stayed with them and took care of things, for which kindness I shall always feel grateful.



"The Arrest of Mormon Leaders" at the surrender of Far West, by C.C.A. Christensen.

© Copyright by the Museum of Art at Brigham Young University.
Used by permission.

We were compelled to stay at Farwest until after the surrender when we went home. The mob had robbed the house of my bedding and in fact everything but my beds. My husband could not yet move hand or foot. Then we had to settle our business matters and fix to get out of the State. I went to work and sold what I could and gave our land for money to buy two yoke of cattle. Finally we had to leave everything only what we could put into a little wagon.

About the middle of January, Father Joseph Smith and Father Morley, with five or six others, came and anointed and administered to my husband. They stood him on his feet and he stood by them holding to each arm. He began to work his shoulders. I continued to rub him with strong vinegar and salt and liniments. The brethren were leaving the State as fast as they could. We did not know how we could go until Brother I. Leaney, who was

shot and wounded at Hauns Mill, came to see us and said we should not be left behind. He had been shot through and through from both sides, the balls passing through the lungs, but he was miraculously healed. He had twenty seven bullet holes in his shirt. I counted them myself. He only had eleven wounds to be dressed.

The enemy were still on the alert. One night they were hunting the Danites about 9 o'clock. It was very dark, the dog barked as if he was mad. I sat on the side of the bed where my husband lay. I was watching him and nursing my baby. My oldest son, William, said "Mother, the mob is coming". They were swearing at the dog. We had the door fastened; they told us to open the door or they would break it down. I asked who they were. They damned me and said it was none of my business and if I did not open the door they would break it down in one minute so I told the children to open the door. I had a girl staying with us. She and the children were like a flock of chickens when they see a hawk flying around them. These men had false whiskers until they looked awful. One had a large Bowie knife in one hand and a pistol in the other. They came to the bed and told me to get up. I simply told them I was watching him before they came. They took the candle from the table and turned down the bed clothes and asked what Doctor I had. I told them I had none. They then asked me a great many questions. They told me they wanted to search the house so one gave his pistol to another and took the candle. He told me to get up as he wanted to look under my bed. I moved a very trifle higher upon the bed for I thought of a dream which I had about three months before he was shot. I dreamed that he lay on the bed sick and was almost gone and two men came in to kill him. I told them they would have to kill me first. I thought they could not get me away from him; then they let him alone. But the men I saw in my dream and these of this mob looked as much alike as can be, so I was determined I would not leave him.



During this time, Joseph Smith and five others were imprisoned in Liberty Jail.

"Liberty Jail" , by C.C.A. Christensen.
© Copyright by the Museum of Art at Brigham Young University.

They looked under my bed and said they were looking for Winchester. I told them to go to Illinois if they wanted to find him. They said his wife had been telling them that lie, but they did not believe it, so I told them when he started. After hunting under the beds and at the back of the house they must go upstairs. I told him where the children got up so he got up but said there was nothing there but meat. I had my meat up there to use on our journey. They finally concluded that Winchester was not there so they came a second time to my husband's bed and turned the clothes down below his breast. I sat still on the side of the bed for I was determined I would not leave him. They made him talk but he was so weak and pale he looked more like he was dead than alive. They turned around and asked me for water. I told them there was the pail and cup by it, that I would not get up. They drank. I had wood in for the night. They sat down by the wood and put powder in their pistols. One said all is ready. Each man put his finger on the trigger of his pistol and said let us walk. I expected when they got back of the curtain they would fire at his head as he was bolstered up, but they stood about one minute and then went out. The mob had often sent me word that they were coming to help the Lord off with him. So I thought they had come for that purpose but I acknowledged the hand of the Lord in it.

Then the Doctor came and wanted to take his case in hand. He said the Doctor was on the side of the mob and he knew he could do him good. He wanted to lift the bone in his neck that pressed the spinal marrow. He came a time or two but I could not engage him. Then he said he would give me a receipt to make a liniment to rub him with to open the pores of the skin. He also gave me some things to put in the liniment. By this time my husband had got so he could stand on his feet without helping him to get on them.

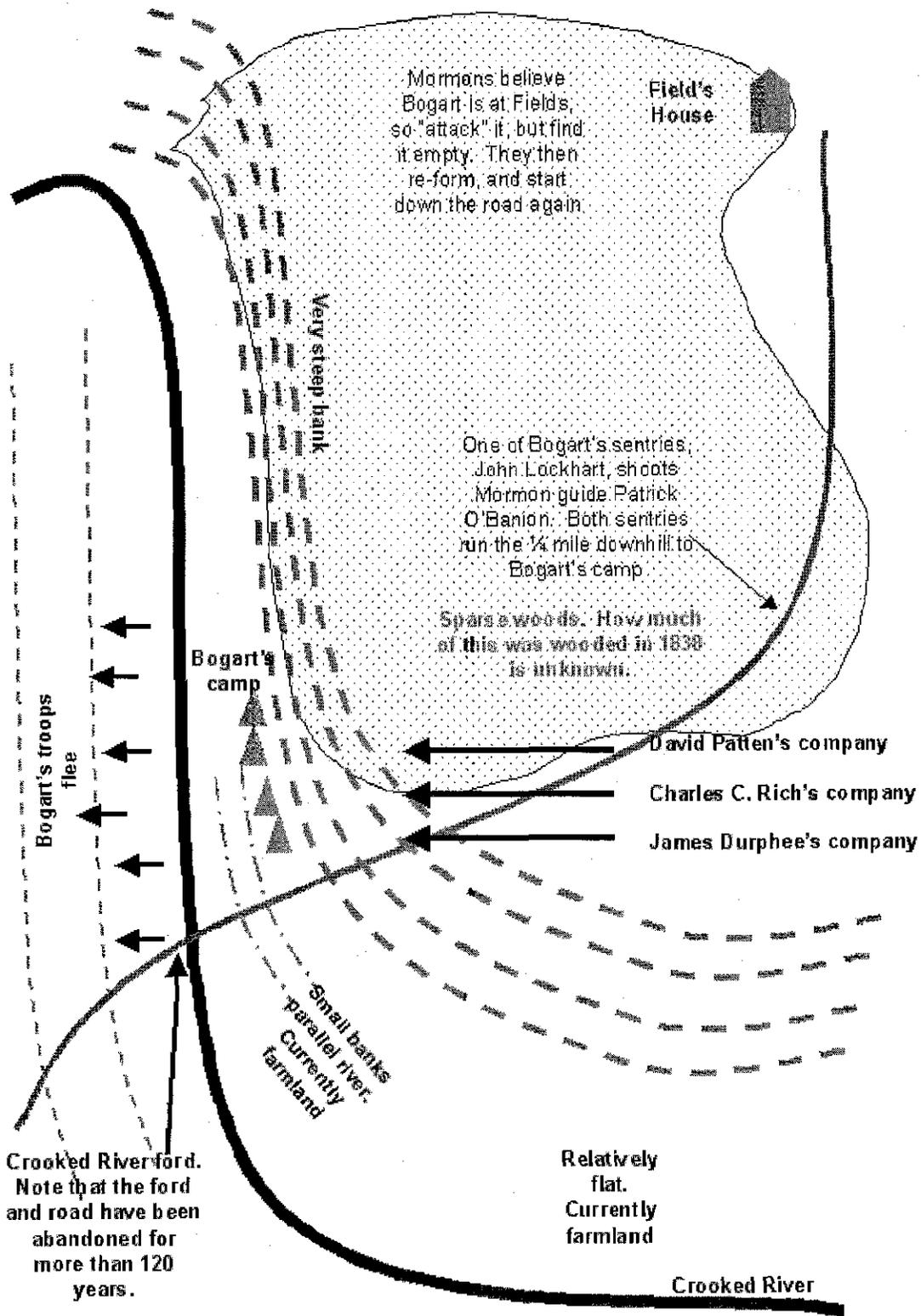
Brother Lainey had secured one yoke of cattle as we thought one yoke would haul all we could get in one wagon that we had. We could then save the money we had to buy our bread and clothing.

NOTES

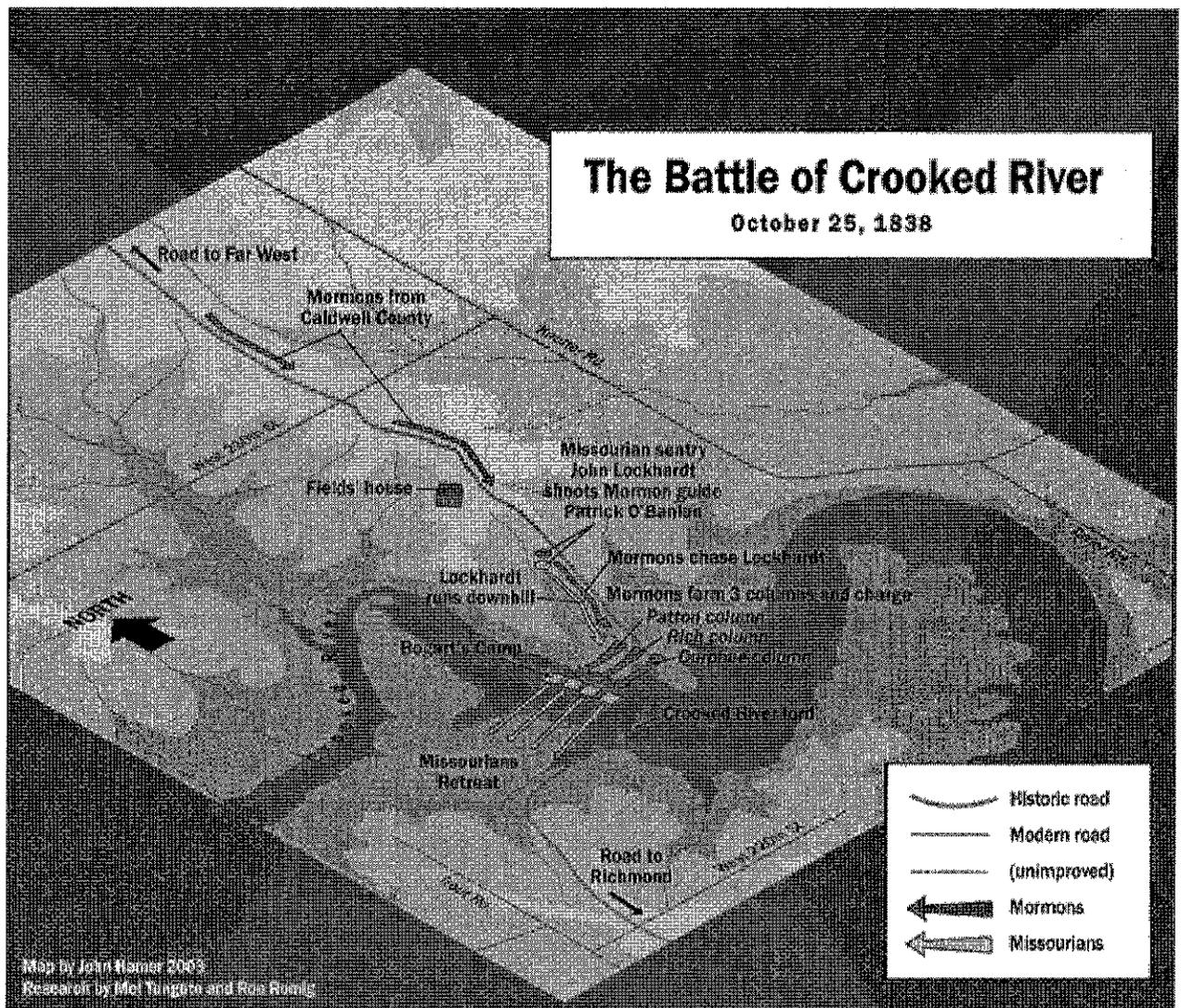
1. It is thought that C. C. Rich was the Hendrick's branch president. ("List of Members of Rich Branch Area on Log Creek," www.farwesthistory.com/rbranch2.htm†, Mike Riggs, 7 December 2002, as accessed on 26 August 2004.) For another account of the Battle of Crooked River, see Appendix A, "The Battle of Crooked River," excerpted from Charles C. Rich's history. †
2. See Appendix B, "A Map of Far West to Crooked River," to see the road from Far West south to Crooked River, and landmarks from Drusilla's account. †
3. See Appendix B, "A Map of Far West to Crooked River," to see where Brother Emmet lived relative to the Hendricks. †
4. It is thought that "Mr. T. Snider," was Henry Snyder, who owned land in the Log Creek settlement on the road from Far West to Richmond. "His home or one

- nearby would have been a logical place for the Crooked River company to stop on their way home from the battle." ("Who Was Henry Snider?" www.farwesthistory.com/snider.htm, Ron Romig and Mike Riggs, 2 Nov 2003, as accessed on 31 July 2004.) ♣
5. Widow Medcalf lived in the vicinity of Henry Snyder at Log Creek. ("Return to Far West," www.farwesthistory.com/return.htm, Ron Romig and Mel Tungate, 6 November 2003, as accessed on 29 September 2004.) ♣
 6. For more information about David Patten's death, see "Patten's Death at Winchester's." (www.farwesthistory.com/pdeath.htm, Ron Romig and Mel Tungate, 6 November 2003, as accessed on 29 September 2004.) ♣
 7. Bathsheba W. Bigler Smith, a teenager whose family had arrived in Far West just 3 nights earlier, witnessed James' condition after the battle. "I saw Bro. James Hendrik, one of the wounded, as he was being carried home; he was entirely helpless and nearly speechless." ("Bathsheba W. Bigler Smith Autobiography," www.farwesthistory.com/smithbb.htm, Bathseba W. Bigler Smith, as accessed on 29 September 2004.) ♣
 8. For one account of the Haun's Mill Massacre, see [History of Austin Hammer and Nancy Elston.](#) ♣
 9. Patrick O'Banion. ♣
 10. See Appendix B, "[A Map of Far West to Crooked River,](#)" to see the location of the neighbor, Brother Winchester. ♣

The battle of Crooked River occurred in the early morning of October 25, 1838. The map below will help you understand the area near the battle site and what the geography looks like. For a professionally drawn version of this map by John Hamer, a very talented artist, see <http://www.farwesthistory.com/crbmfull.gif>



John Hamer's professionally drawn map:



The Crooked River battle site is 14 miles north, and six miles west, of Richmond Missouri. It is 12 miles due south of Far West Missouri.

Location of Buncombe:

Samuel Bogart's Ray county troops, under official orders from the leader of the state troops, were protecting Buncombe, and trying to make sure that Richmond was out of danger. There are many attestations to this. John Correll says that "Captain Bogard had collected a company and got permission to guard Buncum, and was there encamped for that purpose when they fell on him." (History of the Mormons (1839), p.39). After the battle, Sashiel Woods and Joseph Dickson wrote the following to Governor Boggs: "Sir:—We were informed last night, by an express from Ray County, that Captain Bogart

and all his company, amounting to between fifty and sixty men were massacred by the Mormons at Buncombe, twelve miles north of Richmond, except three. " Woods and Dickson were wrong about the number of dead - only one of Bogart's troops, Moses Rowland, died. The distance reference, also found elsewhere, is interesting. Twelve miles from Richmond is right at the bottom of the six mile wide strip that currently lies on the northern edge of Ray County. It should also be noted that in the affidavit that Thomas B. Marsh filed with the state of Missouri at Richmond, he said "On Saturday last, I am informed by the Mormons, they had a meeting at Far West at which they appointed a company of twelve, by the name of the destruction company, for the purpose of burning & destroying, and that if the people of Buncombe came to do mischief upon the people of Caldwell & committed depredations on the Mormons, they were to burn Buncombe & if the people of Clay & Ray made any movement against them, this destroying company was to burn Liberty & Richmond. This burning was to be done secretly by going as incendiaries." (State of Missouri Mormon War Letters. (Electronic copy see below)

Bogart wrote a letter to Gen. Atchison on the 23rd of October, 1838: "Dear Sir, The Mormons have burnt Gallatin & Millport & have ravaged Daviess County, driven out the citizens, burnt the Post Office, taken all kinds of property from the citizens, have gone into Livingston County & taken the cannon from the citizens there. They have threatened to burn Buncombe & Elkhorn, & have been seen near & on the line between Ray & Caldwell, from consequence of which I have ordered out my company to prevent, if possible, any outrage on the County of Ray, & to range the line between Caldwell & Ray, & await your order & further assistance. I will camp at Fields, 12 miles north of this tonight. I learn that the people of Ray are going to take the law into their own hands & put an end to the Mormon war. In haste your obdt servt James Bogart " (State of Missouri Mormon War Letters. (Electronic copy see below)

The Missourians had good reason to suspect that Buncombe was in danger. At Richmond, Missouri on Wednesday October 24th 1838, C. R. Morehead, Wm Thornton and Jacob Gudgel filed an affidavit that said "The undersigned having on Monday morning last learned that the Mormons had burned Millport in Daviess County in addition to the burning of Stollings store in Gallatin in said county; and of their having threatened to burn the store in Buncombe Settlement in this county; and feeling an anxiety to know the truth in relation to said reports left this place, Richmond, on that Monday morning & proceeded to Millport." The men indeed did find the stores and houses at Millport and Gallatin burned.

William Seely says "This affiant further Says that on or about day of 24th October he went to Bunkham's Strip a distance of about twelve miles from his Stopping place in Caldwell County [Far West], to See one Mr. Pinkham on business" (Mormon Redress Petitions, p 532). Pinkham owned land to the east of what is now Knutter Road, and on Taylor Road, two miles east southeast of the current town of Elmira, Missouri.

William Seely was captured by Bogart at Pinkham's house along with Addison Green and Nathan Pinkham, Jr. Addison Green testified at the November 1838 evidentiary hearing that he was a member of Amasa Lyman's spy company, sometimes called the Destruction Company, and one might logically conclude that Natham Pinkham was also, since

Nathan Pinkham Sr's seems to have been a regular gathering place for these spies. Amasa Lyman writes "A company of spies were raised, composed of ten men, and I was appointed to take charge of them. We repaired to Crooked River, and quartered with Brother Pinkham." (Amasa Lyman's History, Latter-day Saints' Millennial Star 27 (1865): 502-504, 519-21).

Buncombe was being used as a place for the Missourians to plan actions. Besides for the inference in what Corrill said above ("if the people of Buncombe came to do mischief upon the people of Caldwell"), this can be seen from a later reminiscence from Martha Thomas. She writes "Our house was the last house on the Richmond road, leading from Far West to Richmond. About two miles from our house there was a little place called Buncom, where the mob gathered to counsel which way to go." (Martha Thomas autobiography, in Daniel Thomas Family History (1927), p.14 - 19 Far West, Missouri, 1838). While we cannot point to the exact location of her house, it is known to be in the southern part of the Allred settlement, two miles north of the current Caldwell - Ray County border. See <http://www.farwesthistory.com/allred.htm> for details. The evidence is strong that Martha Thomas is talking about Buncombe's Strip (which indeed started almost exactly two miles from her house) and not the city of Buncombe which was 8 miles from her house.

On page 15 of Steve LeSueur's book, he shows the location of Buncombe. He found the location from an 1839 map at the Division of Maps of the Library of Congress. The map is called: "Map of Illinois & Missouri Exhibiting the Post Offices, Post Roads, Canals, Rail Roads, ec." By David H. Burr, 1839. The map has Buncombe located in the six-mile strip of land in Township 54, Range 28, now the Knoxville township. The map shows Buncombe as located in the southern part of the township, near the Ray border. According to Steve, "most interesting, the map shows Buncombe as located directly on the road (the main road and/or postal road, I presume) from Far West to Richmond. This road probably led directly to the Crooked River Battle site. The map also lists the distance along the road from Far West to Buncombe as 18 miles. The map shows the remaining distance to Richmond as 14 miles." (Private correspondence with Steve LeSueur. November 10, 2003). Buncombe was renamed Knoxville on October 26, 1838, just one day after the Crooked River battle.

The evidence is clear that there was a town called Buncombe about six miles from the Caldwell County / Ray County border. It is also clear that the six mile strip of land that Ray County administered (now the northern six miles of Ray County) was called Buncombe's Strip.

Mormon War Letters

Written in 1838 by Missouri Militia officers and citizens

These letters were transcribed from microfilm of originals at the Missouri State Archives. Spelling is unchanged.

Citizens of Daviess and Livingston Counties

12th Sept. 1838

To Gov. Lilburn W. Boggs

We, the citizens of the counties of Daviess and Livingston, represent to your honor that a crisis has come, which we believe requires us, as the legitimate citizens of Missouri, to call on the Executive of State for protection. For several weeks past, the Mormons have been making formidable preparations for a civil war, and one which they are pleased to call a war of extermination. We presume that your honor is apprised of the attack made on Adam Black, Esq., on the 8th of August, by the Mormons, and shall not enter into a detail of it here, but we will apprise your honor that the Mormons have and keep a lawless armed force stationed in our country, and are constantly throwing out menaces, threats and challenges to our citizens. Influenced by fearful apprehensions of danger, we, the people of the above counties, sent an Express to Richmond last week for arms and ammunition, and on their return with their load of guns, say, forty-five, several kegs of powder and two hundred pounds of lead, they were intercepted on Sunday last, in passing through Caldwell county, by a banditti of those fanatical enthusiasts, made prisoners of, and taken to Far West, where they, the guard and the above munitions of war, are still held in custody.

On Sunday last, an armed force of fifty Mormons left their own encampment in this county, and marched to the territory of Livingston County, for the purpose, as they said, of removing a considerable amount of property, which was subject to a lein, held by Mr. James Weldon; they passed into the settlement secretly, and falling in with a family which they suspected would alarm the settlement, they violently seized, and made prisoners of the whole family, which consisted of three men and two ladies, all of whom, with three others of our citizens, we believe are still held in the custody of those rebels, and deprived of their liberties.

Our country, sir, is in a distressed situation; probably two-thirds of the families of Daviess County have left, and gone to seek protection among the neighboring counties, while a few of the old settlers are still here, and are determined only to surrender their houses with their lives. For about four weeks, we have been humbly and unceasingly petitioning our neighboring counties for aid, but we are yet in a helpless and defenceless condition. We, therefore, the people of the above counties, being well aware that your honor is well acquainted with the character of those people called Mormons, and believing that our lives, our liberties, our property and our all, are in the most imminent danger of being sacrificed by the hands of those imposterous rebels, earnestly call on your honor for assistance -- assistance we must have, or leave our homes and seek protection elsewhere. Most of us, sir, emigrated to these frontier counties before there were any settlements formed; we have had to encounter and have realized nearly all the difficulties incident to a new country; we have foregone the pleasures and the advantages of the old and well-settled counties, which we have left in anticipation of enjoying like blessings in these -- but, alas! Our anticipations are blasted, and unless we can get rid of those emissaries of the Prince of Darkness -- we and our families are ruined. We are, sir, your petitioners, The Citizens of Daviess and Livingston

Counties.

Camp near De-witt

7th Oct^r 1838

To the Citizens of Howard County

Gentlemen:

This county is the theatre of a civil war, and will soon be one of desolation, unless the citizens of the adjoining counties lend immediate assistance. The infatuated Mormons have assembled in large numbers in De Witt, prepared for war, and are continually pouring in from all quarters where these detestable fanatics reside.

The war is commenced; blood has been shed. They shed it. They waylaid and fired upon a body of the citizens of Carroll County, & wounded some. They are the aggressors. They have been guilty of high treason, they have violated the laws and shed the blood of our citizens, and we think this one of the cases of emergency in which the people ought to take the execution of justice in their own hands. Speedy action is necessary. The progress of their imposition, insult and oppression ought to be checked in the beginning. The people must act together. They must act energetically.

It is now twelve O'Clock at night. The Mormons are lurking round our camp, and making preparations to attack us before day. Our number is much less than theirs, and we will have to act on the defensive until we procure more assistance.

About two hours ago the Mormons were re-inforced by 62 mounted men well armed from Far West. They are arriving every night. Two nights ago it is thought one hundred came to De Witt for the purpose of making war upon the people of this county. Under such circumstances, you cannot fail to come forward immediately. Can you not be here by Sunday or Monday at farthest? Come by fives and tens if you cannot come in companies. Bring all you can. This is no false excitement or idle rumor, it is the cold reality too real. We will anticipate you immediately, and shall expect your cooperation and assistance in expelling the fanatics, who are mostly aliens by birth and aliens in principle from the country. We must be enemies to the common enemies of our laws, religion & country.

Your friends & fellow citizens.

P.S. Our guard was just now fired upon by the Mormons. They have become emboldened by their recent re-inforcements, and we will have to act on the defensive until assistance arrives.

Yrs &c

Congrave Jackson
Larkin K. Woods
Thomas Jackson

Rollo M. Davis
James Jackson Junr
John L. Tomlin
Sidney S. Woods
George Crigler
William L. Banks
Whitfield Dickens

9th October 1838, Boonville
To the Commander in Chief

Sir, enclosed you will receive a communication from Genl Parks, which I deem my duty to forward to Your Excellency. I have required Genl Doniphan with the troops from Clay, Clinton and the Platte to co-operate with Genl Parks. I have also instructed Parks to prevent armed Mormons from marching to De Witt, and also to send back or take into custody all the Mormons from Caldwell County who may be found in arms in Carroll County. Also to disburse all armed bands of citizens from other counties found in Carroll.

I have also suggested to Parks to urge it upon the Mormons in Carroll County to sell out and remove elsewhere, and also to urge the citizens to make the proposition to buy. I have no doubt but Your Excellency, if you should deem it your duty to proceed to Carroll County, could restore peace. I would have forwarded this communication by express, but was informed that you were at St. Louis; it is therefore sent by mail. If you deem it necessary to proceed to Carroll County, I would respectfully suggest that it should be done as quick as possible. I have the honor to be &c.

D. R. Atchison

P. S. If your Excellency should deem it necessary to proceed to Carroll County, Boonville will be in your route, where it would give me great pleasure to see your Excellency, at which time I will be prepared to give all information as to the

difficulties between the Mormons and citizens, as far as it could be obtained.

D. R. Atchison

I, the undersigned Adam C. Woods, a citizen of Howard County, do certify that on the 6th day of October 1838, in company with Captain Congrave Jackson and others of Howard County, hearing of the Mormon difficulty at De Witt, concluded to go up there, and did go to interpose our good offices and make peace between them and the citizens. When we reached there on last evening we found under arms in a mile or thereabouts of De Witt, about two hundred citizens encamped and sentinels out. I did not go into De Witt. I was advised not to go in, fearing that I would be injured. I was informed and believe the information to be true, that the Mormons at De Witt are between five and six hundred, well armed. I remained on last night in the camp of the citizens, intending on this morning to go in town and

endeavor to make peace, but about midnight the Mormons commenced firing on the sentinels placed out by the citizens, which was returned. There was occasional firing at a distance until day.

From the above occurrences we were deterred from making any attempt with the Mormons for peace, and I left on this day about 10 O'Clock in the morning.

A. C. Woods
Oct^r 7th 1838

13th Oct^r 1838, Elk Horn, Ray Co, Mo.

To His Excellency L. W. Boggs

Dr Sir,

I avail myself of this opportunity to inform you [of the] present deplorable condition of our country. I arrived home last night of the 2nd tour of duty to suppress insurrection, when the first campaign closed on Grand River and the public was informed that peace was restored. The citizens who livd in Daviess and the adjoining counties knew and expressed themselves that the Mormons were determd to drive the citizens from Daviess Co - which the Mormons have since expressed. The lives of the people of Daviess have been threatend. Many of them have fled for safety to the adjoining Cos. Whenever we meet a Mormon he is armed in best manner and continually throwing out his threats. Next we were ordered to De Witt in Carroll County under Genl H. G. Parks. When we arrived at Carrollton we were informd that the people of Carroll and the Mormons, who were mostly Canadians, were assembled in a mile of each other, ready for battle. We were also told the Mormons of Caldwell were on their way to De Witt, 100^r more expected to pass down that night. I went to Genl Parks and requested him to permit me to move my company on that road and prevent their passing, but he refusd and we lay there that day and till midnight at which time W. C. Williams came to the camp and told us the Mormons were passing from Caldwell. I paraded my company and marchd to the Mormon road, leaving Parks in Carrollton (drunk) incapable of knowing what was going on. The Mormons passed before I reachd the road. The next day Parks overtook us with the balance of the troops. We moved down near De Witt & encamped two days without making one effort to disperse either party. I visited De Witt in company with Parks, Dr Ellis, McGee and several others, and on the public highway some 1/2 mile from the town we were met by a Mormon from Far West, who cocked his gun, presented it at me, and commanded us to stop. This is a common thing with them in this country; the public highways are guarded. Genl Parks returnd home with his command, leaving over 200 Mormons well armed in Carroll Co, who came from Caldwell after being expressly orderd by Major Genl Atchison to disperse them at all hazards.

The people of Carroll and the Mormons have made a compromise. The Mormons are moving West. It is supposed they intend pushing the citizens out of Daviess.

That county is in a state of great agitation, great excitement prevails here. The Daviess & Livingston Co people, and many from others, are on their way to Daviess County with one field piece, with the determination to prevent their settling in that county at all hazards. If there is not some effective means taken to settle this difficulty, much blood will be spilt soon. It will require a strong force. Too many of our officers are seeking popularity with the Mormons, supposing their votes in time will be of some service to them.

You may rest assured times grow worse & worse here. The Mormons embody themselves, keep out guards, and refuse to let any person see their forces. Had you proceeded on to Daviess County you could easily have convinced yourself the state of things which are desperate in the extreme. You will no doubt be called on. I hope you will take steps to make a final settlement of this matter. If it is not soon done, our country is ruined.

Your Obt. Servt,
Samuel Bogart
Capt. in the late Volunteers

21st October 1838, Daviess Co, Mo.

**To his Excellency the Governor of
The State of Missouri**

Sir: - I deem it my duty, made so not only from the law, as an officer, but also as an individual, to report and make known to your excellency the unheard of & unprecedented conduct and high handed proceedings of the Mormons of this & Caldwell Counties towards the other citizens of this county, being myself one of the sufferers. On Monday the 15th inst. we learned that the Mormons were collecting in Far West for the purpose of driving what they term the mob from this county, by which we understand the citizens that were not Mormons. And accordingly they have come & their worst apprehensions have been already fulfilled.

They have plundered or robbed and burned every house in Gallatin, our county seat, among the rest our Post Office, have driven almost every individual from the county, who are now flying before them with their families, many of whom have been forced out without necessary clothing, their wives and little children wading in many instances through the snow without a shoe. When the miserable families are then forced out, their houses are plundered and then burned. They are making this universal throughout the county. They have burned for me two houses and, sir, think this not exaggeration, for all is not told. And for the truth of all and every statement here made, I pledge the honor of an officer & gentleman.

These facts are made known to you, sir, hoping that your authority will be used to stop the [blank] of this banditti of Canadian refugees and restore us to our lost

homes.

I neglected to state that among the rest, our County Treasury office has been also burned. Will only ask in conclusion, can such proceedings be submitted to in a government of laws? I think not. I must answer my interrogatory no, not withstanding the political juggling of such men as David R. Atchison & some others, whose reports & circulations setting the conduct & character of the Mormons favorably before the community, are believed by the peoples of this county to be prompted by the hope of interest or emolument.

I am yours, sir, with due regard,
Wm. P. Penniston, Co. G
60th Reg., 2nd Brig., 3rd Div. M.M.

P.S. Since writing the above I have procured the testimony on oath of some six or eight persons corroborating with my statement, which accompany this.

Wm. P. Penniston

21st Oct. 1838, Brigade Head Quarters at Richmond, 2nd Brigade, 3rd Division

Major Genl D. R. Atchison

Sir, I received yours of the 16th inst. from Boonville, which I will let remain until I see yours. I have now returned from the County of Daviess & assure you this county is agitated by a deeper & more desperate excitement than I have yet witnessed. I left the place on Tuesday the 16th inst. with two companies of mounted men, having directed Col. Dunn to precede me to Daviess County, where I had good evidence to believe the troops and [blank] intending to act against Adamondiamon. Intending to cooperate with Genl Doniphan & the remainder of the troops, I had proceeded to the head of Crooked River when a severe snow storm overtook us & we were compelled to abandon the undertaking for the present. The troops were dismissed until further orders, and the troops under Col. Dunn had been ordered home by Genl. Doniphan who came as far as Far West, from whence he returned home. I with a part of my staff proceeded on to Far West, which I reached on Tuesday night, & learning that the Clay troops had gone home, I determined to proceed to Daviess & examine the state of the country. On Thursday I proceeded to the town of Adam in Daviess County, & on the way heard the Mormons had burnt a storehouse in Gallatin belonging to Jacob Stallins. I sent two men to see & learn the fact & on their return confirmed the news. I saw at Adam on Diahmon about 500 Mormons under arms, all well armed, about 200 of them mounted. I asked them their motive in appearing in arms. Their answer was they intended to defend that place. They had been driven from De Witt & other places, and here they were determined to stand and die rather than be driven from that place.

I next visited Millport, & found on my way down the ridge that the inhabitants had left their houses and all above Pennington's have fled. That county is in a

worse state than at any former period, and I believe that the Mormons are now the aggressor, as I have seen many deprivations which they have committed. I have certificates of their having taken arms from the citizens of Daviess forcibly. The excitement in this county is more deep and full of vengeance than I have yet seen it, & I would not be surprised if some signal act of vengeance would be taken on these fanatics. Wednesday next is fixed for a full and general meeting of the citizens of this county to take into consideration the steps necessary to be taken in this state of affairs.

I do not know what to do. I will remain passive until I hear from you. I do not believe calling out the militia will avail anything towards restoring peace, unless they were called out in such force as to fight the Mormons & drive them from the country. This would satisfy this people, but I cannot agree to it. I hold myself ready to execute, as far as I can go, any order from you, and wish you to advise the Commander-in-Chief as to the situation of the upper country. Perhaps a visit from him would have some effect in allaying the excitement. I remain your obedt
Servt

H. G. Parks, Genl
2nd Brigade, 3rd Div.

Jonathon J. Dryden sworn statemen

Jonathan J. Dryden after being duly sworn deposeth and sayeth that on the 21st day of October 1838 he was taken as a prisoner by the [people] called Mormon from his [own] house, sick with the fever, and carried him about one mile and released him, upon the account of his health. And while in custody he ware told by them, they had applied to the Governor diverse of times for pertection, and he never had sent them any assistance, and now they had taken the law in their own hands, and they intended to have the thing settled; because they believe the Governor to be as big a mob man as any of them, and the [plunder] which they ware now taking was to pay them back for the property which they had lost in Jackson County, when they were driven from there, and the affiant sayeth not.

Jonathan J. Dryden

The above sworn and subscribed before me the 22nd day of this [instant].

Adam Black
J.P.

James Stone sworn statemen

James Stone after being duly sworn deposeth and sayeth, that on the 20th day of October 1838 the people called Mormon came to his house, and told him if he did not leave Daviess County against next morning, against sunrise, that they would take his head with their sword, and drew their sword and waved it at him, and said

they would take his heart's blood if he did not leave [the] county. And then this affiant took them at their word and left his house about 10 O'Clock in the night, he and 2 other men, and went back next morning and his house was robbed. And this affiant sayeth on the 21st day inst. that he with several other men saw the said people called Mormon herding a number of cattle, the amount not known, he supposed to be about 10 acres of ground covered. And they looked at them until they started them towards Caldwell County, and this affiant sayeth not.

James Stone

The above sworn to & subscribed before me 22nd day of this instant.

Adam Black J.P.

Thomas Martin Sworn Statement

I, Thomas J. Martin, after being duly sworn do testify upon oath that whereas I was returning from meeting on the 21st day of Oct 1838 in Livingston County, I was intercepted and taken prisoner by the body of people called Mormons, which presented their guns and told me that I had one of two things to do. That was, to relate to them all that I knew concerning the [blank] their munitions &c, or to be laid on the sod and let birds eat me. They also took me about 12 miles during which time I saw them rummage the house of Mr. White. I also saw them take 4 others, and they had some others that had been taken before, some of which [they] took to Adam on deamon, and I have not [heard] from them since. During the time I was a prisoner they told me that they did not intend to let any man stay in Daviess County that was not friendly to them. And that they were doing the same to redress the injury received in Jackson County.

Thomas J. Martin

The above sworn to and subscribed before me this 22nd day of October 1838.

Adam Black J.P.

22nd Oct. 22nd 1838, Liberty
To his Excellency the Commander in Chief

Sir, Almost every hour I receive information of outrage and violence; of burning and plundering in the county of Daviess. It seems that the Mormons have become desperate and act like mad men. They have burned a store in Gallatin, they have burnt Millport; they have, it is said, plundered several houses and have taken away the arms of diverse citizens of that county. A cannon that was employed in the seige of De Witt in Carroll County, and taken for a like purpose to Daviess

County, has fallen into the hands of the Mormons. It is also reported that the anti-Mormons have, when opportunity offered, disarmed the Mormons and burnt several of their houses.

The great difficulty in settling this matter seems to me in not being able to identify the offenders. I am convinced that nothing short of driving the Mormons from Daviess County will satisfy the party opposed to them, and this I have not the power to do as I conceive legally. There are no troops at this time in Daviess County, nor do I deem it expedient to send any there. For I am well convinced that it would but make matters worse for, Sir, I do not feel disposed to disgrace myself, or permit the troops under my command to disgrace this state, and themselves, by acting the part of a mob. If the Mormons are to be drove from their homes, let it be done without any color of law and in open defiance thereof. Let it be done by volunteers acting upon their own responsibility.

However, I deem it my duty to submit these matters to the Commander in Chief, and will conclude by saying it will be my greatest pleasure to execute any orders your Excellency should think proper to give in this matter, with promptness and to the very letter.

I have the honor to be your
Excellency's Most Obt Servt
David R. Atchison
Major Genl 3rd Divis M.M.

N.B.

I herewith inclose you a report from Genl Park, also one from Capt Bogart.
D.R.A.

23rd Oct 1838, Elkhorn
Gen. Atchison,

Dear Sir, The Mormons have burnt Gallatin & Millport & have ravaged Daviess County, driven out the citizens, burnt the Post Office, taken all kinds of property from the citizens, have gone into Livingston County & taken the cannon from the citizens there. They have threatened to burn Buncombe & Elkhorn, & have been seen near & on the line between Ray & Caldwell, from consequence of which I have ordered out my company to prevent, if possible, any outrage on the County of Ray, & to range the line between Caldwell & Ray, & await your order & further assistance. I will camp at Fields, 12 miles north of this tonight.

I learn that the people of Ray are going to take the law into their own hands & put an end to the Mormon war.

In haste your obdt servt
James Bogart

P.S. Please be explicit in your express to me as to my course.

Richmond, Mo.
23rd Oct. 1838

His Excellency the Governor of Missouri

Dear Sir,

The Mormon difficulties are arising and have arisen here to an alarming height. It is said (and I believe truly) that they have recently robbed and burned the store-house of Mr. J. Stollings in Gallatin, Daviess County, and that they have burned several dwelling houses of the citizens of Daviess, taken their arms from them, and have taken some provisions. Mormon dissenters are daily flying to this county for refuge from the ferocity of the prophet Jo Smith, who they say threatens the lives of all Mormons who refuse to take up arms at his bidding, or to do his commands. Those dissenters (and they are numerous) all confirm the reports concerning the Danite band of which you have doubtless heard much, and say that Jo infuses into the minds of his followers a spirit of insubordination to the laws of the land, telling them that the Kingdom of the Lord is come which is superior to the institutions of the earth, and encourages them to fight and promises them the spoils of the battles.

A respectable gentleman of my acquaintance from Livingston is here now who informs me that the Mormons are robbing the citizens of Livingston, on the borders of Caldwell, of their corn and whatever else they want; that they have taken a cannon from Livingston County and are prowling about the country, a regularly formed banditti.

That the prophet Jo Smith has persuaded his church that they are not, and ought not to be, amenable to the laws of the land, and is still doing it I have no doubt. The Danite band as I am informed by numbers of the most respectable of the Mormons (who are now dissenters) binds them to support the high council of the Mormon church, and one another in all things whether right or wrong, and that even by false swearing. I have taken much pains to be informed correctly about this Danite band, and am well satisfied that my information as above stated is correct. I have no doubt but that Jo Smith is as lawless and consummate a scoundrel as ever was the veiled prophet of Chorassin. I believe the criminal law in Caldwell County cannot be enforced upon a Mormon. Grand Juries there will not indict. Jo declares in his public addresses that he can revolutionize the U.S. and that if provoked, he will do it. This declaration has been heard by Col. Williams of this place, and other gentlemen of equal veracity. I have hoped that the civil authorities would prove sufficient for the exigency of the case, but I am now convinced that it is not, so long as indictments have to be found by the jury of the county in which the offense may be committed.

I do not pretend to have wisdom enough to make a suggestion as to what Your

Excellency should do. The evil is alarming beyond all doubt. I suggest the foregoing facts for your consideration.

I am very respectfully
Yr Obt Servt
Th. C. Burch

P.S. Judge King will give you some information by the next mail.
T. C. B.

Richmond, Mo. Oct^r 23rd 1838

The Governor of the State of Missouri

Sir,

The alarming state of Daviess County, and the panic produced by the late movements of the Mormons in that county has produced a degree of excitement and alarm here that has not been heretofore witnessed. The latest accounts from Daviess County that has reached us, say that all the inhabitants of Daviess County have left and sought refuge in Livingston or this county. The store house of Jacob Stollings in Gallatin, Daviess County, was robbed and burned by the Mormons, the Post Office kept there was also destroyed. And we believe that the houses of 5 or 6 of the inhabitants of Daviess have been destroyed by fire, the property taken away, and the women and children obliged to flee. The arms of all the citizens in Daviess they could find have been taken by them forcibly. They have also carried away the cannon from Livingston County, and have it now in their possession.

The Mormons have robbed George Worthington, P.M. at Gallatin, of his notes & property to the amount of nearly \$2,000. In short, the news from them reach[es] us hourly that they are destroying the property of the citizens they cannot carry away, and all that they can carry away they take. Blood and plunder appears to be their object. All those who do not join with them in their incendiary conduct are banished from Caldwell, and all those of other counties who are opposed to them are threatened. It is the desire of the citizens that His Excellency would visit this section of country and call out a sufficient number of troops to put a stop to the further ravages of these fanatics. If some such measures are not taken shortly, the whole country will be overrun. But we now firmly believe they are aggressors, and say they will indemnify themselves for losses in Jackson and Carroll. We are not alarmists, and have had no fears until lately, these fanatics would have dared to behave as they have lately. There seems to be but one opinion here on the subject and that is, unless a military force is brought in to act against them, and that shortly, they will destroy as far as they are able. We think it our duty to advise you of these things.

Very respectfully,
Your Obt Servts

T.L.D.W. Shaw
James S. Beell
G. Lenhart
J. R. Doolittle
Jno C. Richardson
B. J. Brown, Sheriff of Ray County
M. P. Long
George Woodward
R. S. Mitchell
Lewis L. Jacobs
John N. Hughs
Berry Hughs
Thomas McKinney
William Hudgins P.M.
Jesse Corner

We are deficient in arms. If there are any to spare, we wish them brought up here.

William Hudgins

Sir:

We were informed last night by an express from Ray County that Capt Bogard and all his company amounting to between fifty and sixty, were massacred by the Mormons at Buckhorn, twelve miles north of Richmond, except three. This statement you may rely on as being true, and last night they expected Richmond to be laid in ashes this morning. We could distinctly hear cannon and we know the Mormons have one in their possession. Richmond is about twenty-five miles west of this place on a straight line. We know not the hour or minute we will be laid in ashes. Our country is ruined, for God sake give us assistance as quick as possible.

Yours &c
Sachel Woods
Joseph Dickson

Carrolton, Mo.
Octr 24th 1838

Being requested by a committee of the citizens of Ray County to make a statement of such facts as are within my knowledge relative to the Mormons, I have to say that I came to Far West the 17th April last and have lived there ever since. I have never been a member of the Mormon church, but my parents are. I am about the age of 18 years. I have lived at the house of Sidney Rigdon the most of the time. I have heard the prophet Smith in public address say he would like to

have a play speel of the whole U.S. (in a fight as I took it). This was on the election day last August. I have often heard the Mormons say they would as soon shoot the dissenters that came out and talked against them, as to shoot anything else. I have heard diverse Mormons say that they burnt the store of Mr. Stolling in Daviess County. David W. Patton had the command of the company that went to Gallatin. The Mormons say that they did not burn the goods, but hauled them off. Said Patton went by the name of Capt. Fearnot.

A few days ago I heard a company of Mormons who had been to Daviess County say they had taken from the citizens of Daviess County about twenty-four horses and thirty-two guns. And it was said by Mormons about there, that it was done to make up for losses in Jackson County. When the company came up who took the guns & horses, I heard Sidney Rigdon shout three times, "Hosannah to the victors!" and made them a speech exhorting them not to fear, & to keep up courage.

Henry Marks

Richmond, Mo.
Oct. 24th 1838

Sworn to & subscribed before me on the day above written.
Henry Jacobs J.P. of Ray County.

Lexington, 6 O'Clock P.M.
October 24th 1838

Gentlemen,

This letter is sent after you on express by Mr. William Bryant of Ray County. Since you left us this morning, Mr. C. R. Morehead came here on express for men to assist in repelling a threatened attack upon Richmond tonight. He brought news that the Mormon armed force had attacked Capt Bogart this morning at daylight, and had cut off his whole company of 50 men. Since Mr. Morehead left Richmond, one of the company (Bogart's) had come in and reported that there were ten of his comrades killed, and the remainder were taken prisoners after many of them had been severely wounded. He stated further that Richmond would be sacked and burned by the Mormon Banditti tonight. Nothing can exceed the consternation which this news gave rise to. The women and children are flying from Richmond in every direction. A number of them have repaired to Lexington, amongst whom is Mrs. Rees. We will have sent from this county, since 1 O'Clock this evening about 100 well-armed and daring men, perhaps the most effective that our county can boast of. They will certainly give them (the Mormons) a warm reception at Richmond tonight. You will see the necessity of hurrying on to the City of Jefferson and also of imparting correct information to the public as you go along.

My impression is that you had better send one of your number to Howard, Cooper and Boone Counties, in order that volunteers may be getting ready and flocking to the scene of trouble as fast as possible. They must make haste and put a stop to the devastation which is menaced by these infuriated fanatics. And they must go prepared, and with the full determination to exterminate or expel them from the State en masse. Nothing but this can give tranquillity to the public mind and reestablish the supremacy of the law. There must be no further delaying with this question anywhere. The Mormons must leave the State, or we will one and all. And to this complexion it must come at last. We have great reliance upon your ability, direction and fitness for the task you have undertaken, and have only time to say God speed you!

Yours truly,
E. M. Ryland

Messrs Amos Rees & Willey Williams

From Thomas B. Marsh

At the request of a committee of the citizens of Ray County, I make the following statement in relation to the recent movements, plans & intentions of the Mormons in the counties of Caldwell & Daviess.

Shortly after the settlement of the difficulties at De Witt in Carroll County, a call was made up by the Mormons at Far West in Caldwell County for volunteers to go to Daviess County, to disperse the mob as they said. On the day before this Joseph Smith the prophet in which he said that all the Mormons who refused to take up arms, if necessary in difficulties with the citizens, should be shot, or otherwise put to death. And as I was there with my family I thought it most prudent to go, and did go with my wagon, as the driver.

We marched to Adamondeoman and found no troops or mob in Daviess County. Scouting parties frequently went out & brought in intelligence that they had seen from three to five men. We got to Diamon on Tuesday evening, & on the next day a company of about eighty of the Mormons, commanded by a man fictitiously named Captain Fearnot, marched to Gallatin. They returned and said they had run off from Gallatin twenty or thirty men and had taken Gallatin, had taken one prisoner and another had joined the company. I afterwards learned from the Mormons that they had burned Gallatin, and that it was done by the aforesaid company that marched there. The Mormons informed me that they had hauled away all the goods from the store in Gallatin, and deposited them at the Bishop's storehouses at Adam on diahmon. On the same day, Lyman Wight marched about eighty horsemen for Millport. He returned before night and called for Joseph Smith & Hiram Smith to report to them (said Hiram being counsellor of said Joseph the prophet) and said Wight reported that he had been in sight of Millport, saw no one to fight, but that the people generally had gone & left their houses &

property. The prophet, on hearing the property was left, commenced a reply & said "We had better see to it." When Wight stopped him by saying "Never mind, we will have a private counsel," and Smith replied "Very well." The private counsel I did not hear. The men were dismissed to go to their camps.

The same evening a number of footmen came up from the direction of Millport, laden with property which, I was informed, consisted of beds, clocks & other household furniture. The same night, I think, about three wagons were dispatched for about forty bee gums, and the next day saw several gums where they were splitting them up & taking the honey & burning the gums, in which business of taking out the honey, but few were engaged for fear, as they said, they would be called on as witnesses against them. When Wight returned from Millport & informed Smith that the people were gone & the property left, Smith asked him if they had left any of the Negroes for them, & Wight replied no. Upon which someone laughed and said to Smith, "You have lost your Negro, then."

During the same time, a company called the fur company was sent out to bring in fat hogs & cattle, calling the hogs "bears" and the cattle "buffaloe." They brought in at one time seven cattle and at another time, four or five belonging to the people of Daviess. Hogs were brought in dead, but I know not how many. I saw only two.

They have among them a company consisting of all that are considered true Mormons, called the Danites, who have taken an oath to support the heads of the church in all things that they say or do, whether right or wrong. Many, however, of this band are much dissatisfied with this oath as being against moral and religious principles. On Saturday last, I am informed by the Mormons, they had a meeting at Far West at which they appointed a company of twelve, by the name of the destruction company, for the purpose of burning & destroying, and that if the people of Buncombe came to do mischief upon the people of Caldwell & committed depredations on the Mormons, they were to burn Buncombe & if the people of Clay & Ray made any movement against them, this destroying company was to burn Liberty & Richmond. This burning was to be done secretly by going as incendiaries. At the same meeting I was informed they passed a decree that no Mormon dissenter should leave Caldwell County alive, & that such as attempted to do it should be shot down & sent to tell their tale in eternity. In a conversation between Doct. Avard & other Mormons, said Avard proposed to start a pestilence among the gentiles, as he called them, by poisoning their corn, fruit &c and saying it was the work of the Lord. And said Avard advocated lying for the support of their religion, & said it was no harm to lie for the Lord.

The plan of said Smith, the prophet, is to take the State, & he professes to his people to intend taking the U.S. & ultimately the whole world. This is the belief of the Church & my own opinion of the prophet's plans & intentions.

It is my opinion that neither said Joseph Smith, the prophet, nor any one of the principal men who is firm in the faith could be indicted for any offense in the county of Caldwell. The prophet inculcates the notion, & it is believed by every

true Mormon, that Smith's prophecies are superior to the law of the land. I have heard the prophet say that he should yet tread down his enemies & walk over their dead bodies; that if he was not let alone he would be a second Mahamet to the generations, & that he would make it one gore of blood from the Rocky Mountains to the Atlantic ocean. That like Mahamet, whose motto in treating for peace was the Alcoran or the sword, so should it be eventually with us - Jo Smith or the sword.

These last statements were made during the last summer. The number of armed men at Adamondiamon was between three & four hundred.

Thomas B. Marsh

Richmond, Mo.

October the 24th 1838

Sworn & subscribed before me the day hereon written

Henry Jacobs, J.P., Ray County, Mo.

The most of the statements in the foregoing disclosed of Thomas B. Marsh I know to be true. The remainder I believe to be true.

Orson Hyde

Richmond, Oct 24th 1838

Sworn to & subscribed before me on the day above written

Henry Jacobs, J.P.

The undersigned committee on the part of the citizens of Ray County have no doubt but that Thomas B. Marsh & Orson Hyde, whose names are signed to the foregoing certificates, have been members of the Mormon Church in full fellowship until very recently when they voluntarily abandoned the Mormon Church & faith. And that said Marsh was, at the time of his dissenting, the President of the Twelve Apostles & President of the Church at Far West, and that said Hyde was, at that time, one of the Twelve Apostles. And that they left the church & abandoned the faith of the Mormons from a conviction of their immorality & impiety.

Richmond, Oct 24th 1838

Thomas C. Burch

William Hudgins

Geo. Woodward

J. R. Hindley

C. R. Morehead

O. H. Learcey

Henry Jacobs

24th Oct 1838, Richmond,

Dear Sir,

As Mr. Williams will be to see you in reference to our Mormon difficulties, I will be able to say all to you perhaps that can be said. I deem it a duty notwithstanding to give you such information as I have sought and obtained, & is such I assure you may be relied on. Our relations with the Mormons are such that I am perfectly satisfied that the arm of the civil authority is too weak to give peace to the country. Until lately, I thought the Mormons were disposed to act only on the defensive, but their recent conduct shows that they are the aggressors & that they intend to take the law into their own hands. Of their recent outrages in Daviess, you have doubtlessly heard much already. Of their course of conduct in Daviess, I will give you the general facts, for to give particulars would far transcend the contents of a letter. On Sunday before they marched to Daviess, Jo Smith made known his views to the people, and declared the time had come when they would avenge their own wrongs, & that all who was not for them, & take up arms with them, should be considered as against them, that their property should be confiscated and their lives also be forfeited. With this declaration, & much else said by Smith, calculated to excite the people present, the next day was set to meet & see who was for them & who against them. And under such severe penalties there was none, that I learn, who did not turn out, & about 3 or 400 men, with Smith at their head, marched to Daviess. This was on Tuesday. The next day was the snow storm, & on Thursday they commenced their ravages upon the citizens, driving them from their houses & taking their property. Between 80 & 100 men went to Gallatin, pillaged houses & the store of Mr. Stollings and the Post Office, & then burnt the houses. They carried off the spoils on horseback & in wagons & now have them, I understand, in a storehouse near their camp. Houses have been robbed of their contents: beds, clothing, furniture &c & all deposited, & they term it a consecration to the Lord.

At this time there is not a citizen in Daviess except Mormons. Many have been driven without warning. Others have been allowed a few hours to start. The stock of the citizens have been seized upon, killed and salted up by hundreds. From 50 to 100 waggons are now employed in hauling in the corn from the surrounding country.

They look for a force against them and are consequently preparing for a seige, building block houses &c. They have lately organized themselves into a band of what they call Danites, and sworn to support their leading men in all they say & do, right or wrong, & further to put to instant death those who will betray them. There is another band of twelve, called the Destructives, whose duty it is to watch the movements of men & of communities, & to avenge themselves for supposed wrongful movements against them by privately burning houses, property, & even laying in ashes towns, &c.

I find I am running out my letter too much in detail. I do not deem it necessary to

give you a minute detail of all the facts of which I am possessed, but I give you the above in order that you may form some idea of the disposition of these people. The Mormons expect to settle the affair at the point of the sword, & I am well warranted in saying to you that the people in this quarter of the state look to you for that protection which they believe you will afford when you have learned the facts. I do not pretend to advise your course, nor make any suggestions other than what I have stated, that it is utterly useless for the civil authorities to pretend to intercede. The country is in great commotion and I can assure you that either with or without authority, something will shortly have to be done. I hope you will let me hear from you by the return of Mr. Williams, and if you should come up [to] the country shortly, it will give me pleasure to take the trouble to see you. I am very respectfully,

Austin A. King

At a very numerous public meeting held at the Court house in Richmond, Ray County, on Wednesday this 24th day of October 1838 for the purpose of taking into consideration the difficulties of the Mormons.

The object of the meeting having been explained by Thomas C. Burch, Esqr. The following resolutions were unanimously adopted after reading the report of Charles R. Morehead, William Thornton and Jacob Gudgel, which is hereunto attached. To wit -

Resolved That the report here made by Charles R. Morehead, William Thornton and Jacob Gudgel Esqrs be transmitted by express to the Governor of the State, together with these resolutions.

Resolved That this meeting have the most implicit confidence in said report as well from the known veracity of said Gentlemen, as from numerous other facts and circumstances in our knowledge corroborating the same.

Resolved that in the opinion of this meeting the time has arrived when it is the imperious duty of the executive by an armed force to quell the insurrection put on foot by the Mormons, and that to effect the same the civil authorities are wholly inadequate.

Resolved, That Wiley C. Williams and Amos Rees Esqrs be requested to visit the Governor, and lay before him the proceedings of this meeting, and urge upon him the necessity of ordering out forthwith an armed force against the Mormons sufficient to meet the emergency.

Resolved, that we view with the utmost concern the conduct of the Mormons in the counties of Daviess & Livingston, and that immediate action is necessary for the protection of our property and homes from this lawless Banditti.

Resolved, that heretofore as citizens desiring to abide by the laws of the land, we have been disposed to see this people called Mormons dealt with for their offenses by the civil authorities, but that in the opinion of this meeting, from their past and present lawless course, a resort to the laws will be worse than useless and wholly insufficient to afford the country that protection to which it is entitled.

Resolved, that we appeal to the Governor of this state to give the people of upper Missouri protection from this fearful body of thieves and robbers.

Resolved, that it would at this time be inexpedient to take any offensive, but that we should at present act on the defensive.

Resolved, that all who have in good faith renounced the Mormon religion should be protected, either those in this county or in Caldwell during the present excitement.

Resolved, that some men should now be raised to go to the northern border of this county, and guard it from intrusion by the Mormons; to act entirely on the defensive for the present; and that Genl Parks be requested to raise three companies for that purpose, or that they be raised by volunteers.

The undersigned having on Monday morning last learned that the Mormons had burned Millport in Daviess County in addition to the burning of Stollings store in Gallatin in said county; and of their having threatened to burn the store in Buncombe Settlement in this county; and feeling an anxiety to know the truth in relation to said reports left this place, Richmond, on that Monday morning & proceeded to Millport. They, however, previously called at Judge Morin's who lives about 1/4 of a mile from Millport, who informed those that all they had learned was substantially true, and that much more had been done by the Mormons than the people of this county had been informed of. He went with us to Millport where we found all the houses in ashes, except a grocery store house belonging to a Mr. Slade and a house in which Mr. Wilson McKinney had lived. We also found the house of Robert Peniston, near Millport, burned. The horse-mill belonging to him (Peniston) was taken down, the stones, bolting chest &c lying out some distance from the shed, and the shed yet standing. Mr. Morin informed us that the burning was done on Sunday night last, that on the next day he saw Mormons there and saw them taking off beds and other things belonging to Wilson McKinney. We also saw some furniture, which we understood from Mr. Morin belonged to McKinney, standing out in the commons and which seemed to have been rifled of its contents. Mr. Morin expected on the day we were there that the Mormons would be there (at Millport) to move off the remaining property and to burn the balance of the houses. He stated to us that he considered the situation a precarious one, that he had been permitted to stay this long owing to having no wagons to move with, but that he expected to get wagons that day & intended moving into Richmond immediately. He said that the county was entirely deserted by the inhabitants except himself and a few others besides the Mormons, and expressed it as his belief that the corn from his house to Diamon would all be gathered and hauled into Diamon by the Mormons in 48

hours from that time. He also stated to us that he was at Diamon a few days previously, and saw a company of men (Mormons) come into camp with a drove of cattle, amounting to about 100 head, which he supposed belonged to other citizens. He also saw a man in possession of a Mormon which he was very certain belonged to Wm Morgan, a citizen of Daviess County. Mr. Morin looked upon these Mormons who were then a Diamon (amounting he supposed to about 600 men) as a band of robbers and desperadoes. He advised us very strongly to go no farther, not to attempt to go to Diamon or Far West. That we would gather nothing by doing so, in addition to which we there learned that the county on the north side of Grand River and west of him was certainly deserted except by the Mormons, and had been for several days. That the houses were all burned, or to use his own words, that it was a complete waste.

Mr. Morin also informed us that the Mormons had ordered the other citizens out of the county, and that he too had been ordered to leave. He appeared very anxious that we should not be seen at his house by any Mormon, that it should not be known that he had given any information or expressed anything unfavorable towards them, until he get away. We did not visit Gallatin, but understood from Mr. Morin and others, whom we met moving into this county, that all the houses in that place were burned except a Shoemaker's shop belonging to a Mr. Borwell.

Richmond, Mo. Wednesday October 24th 1838

C. R. Morehead
Wm Thornton
Jacob Gudgel

Daviess, Midnight
25th Octr 1838

Maj Genl John B. Clark

We write you a hasty letter from this point to give you authentic information as to the appalling situation of this country in the neighborhood of the Mormons. We are on our way as expresses to the Governor concerning the following information: that these wretched fanatics have thrown off all restraint and are destroying all before them. They have burned Gallatin, the county seat of Daviess, taken the goods from J. Stallings' store and burned the house. They have burned the village of Millport in Daviess and have burned almost every house from Gallatin and Millport north with many others in other parts of the county, and plundered the whole county of the property of the inhabitants. They say themselves that they have taken \$30,000 worth of property. We have this moment received an express informing us that they this morning at daylight attacked Capt Bogard's company of 50 men with 300 Mormons and defeated him, killing some ten men, wounding many others and taking the most of the remainder prisoners. Many of the Mormons having been killed in the fight as is supposed. We have but little hope from these wretched desperadoes but that they will kill all these prisoners. This attack was made in Ray County. Capt Bogard had been stationed

on the northern line of the county to patrol and guard it, the Mormons having threatened to invade that county. They have determined to attack and burn Richmond tonight and we have but little doubt but that they will attempt it. The women and children have all left Richmond and are leaving the county, flying for protection to Livingston and elsewhere. These creatures will never stop until they are stopped by the strong hand of force! And something must be done, and that speedily. There is no kind of doubt but that all the alarm, with much more that I have not time to write, is true and you may act accordingly.

Yours respectfully,
Wiley C. Williams
Amos Rees

Head Quarters of the Militia
City of Jefferson
Oct. 27, 1838

Sir,
Since the order of [*****] morning to you, directing you to call 400 mounted men to be raised within your division, I have received by Amos Rees Esqr of Ray, & Wiley C. Williams Esqr, one of my Aides, information of the most appalling character which entirely changes the face of things and shows the Mormons in the attitude of an open and armed defiance of the law, and of having made war upon the people of this state. Your orders are therefore to hasten your operations with all possible speed. The Mormons must be treated as enemies, and must be exterminated or driven from the state if necessary for the public peace. Their outrages are beyond all description. If you can increase your forces you are authorized to do so to any extent you may consider necessary. I have just issued orders to Major Genl Willock of Marion Co. to raise 500 men and to march them to the northern part of Daviess and there unite with Genl Doniphan of Clay, who has been ordered with 500 men to proceed to the same point for the purpose of intercepting the retreat of the Mormons to the north. They have been directed to communicate with you by express. You can also communicate with him if you find it necessary. Instead, therefore, of proceeding as at first directed to reinstate the citizens of Daviess in their homes, you will proceed immediately to Richmond and there operate against the Mormons. Brig Genl Parks of Ray has been ordered to have four hundred of his Brigade in readiness to join you at Richmond. The whole force will be placed under your command.

I am very respectfully
Yr Obt St
Lilburn W. Boggs
Com in Chief

To Genl John B. Clark
Fayette Ho. Co.

Richmond, Oct. 28th 1838
Head Quarters of the 3rd & 4th Div. M.M.

To the Commander in Chief of the Militia

Sir,

From late outrages committed by the Mormons, civil war is inevitable. They have set the laws of the country at defiance, & are in open rebellion. We have about two thousand men under arms to keep them in check. The presence of the Commander in Chief is deemed absolutely necessary, and we most respectfully urge that your Excellency be at the seat of war, as soon as possible.

Your most obedient servants
David R. Atchison, M. G. 3rd Div.
Saml D. Lucas, Maj Genl 4th Div.

Chariton, 30th Oct 1838
His Excellency Gov. Boggs,

Sir, I have ordered one thousand men from this Divis., and now have five hundred this far under march, and five hundred from the Second Brigade will join me today at Keytesville from whence I will proceed to Richmond without delay. Your two orders were both received on day before yesterday at the same time. On this moment I received per Capt. Long the enclosed express from Genl Atchison and Lucas then at Richmond; it was met by Col Williams, your Aide, and opened and sent to me, supposing that the powers conferred on me were sufficient. This may be so, but I would give your Excellency my decided opinion, that it would be best for you to be there, and hope you will if practicable.

In the meantime, I will endeavor to act out your orders in letter and spirit, however great the responsibility. I have this moment dispatched to Genls Atchison & Lucas a copy of your two orders to me, with instructions to act for the best, until I can arrive.

All the additional information that I have from the scene of disturbance is worse and worse.

I have the honor to be
Yr. Obt Servt
John B. Clark
Major Genl Comd

10 O'clock A.M.
Camp Chariton, Oct 30th 1838

Majr Genl Lucas & Atchison

Gentlemen:

I am now here with near one thousand men under a force march to Richmond in performance of an order from the Commander in Chief, copies of which are herewith enclosed to you for the use only of your confidants. You will discover by them the power vested in me and for that purpose I enclose them to you. Capt Long this moment arrived with an express from you to the Govr which had been wet and opened by Col Williams, one of the Govr Aides, and sent to me. I have forwarded it to the Govr.

Act with your respective commands for the best according to circumstances until I arrive, when some plan of action will be settled upon if the Gov should not come. I will reach Richmond as soon as I can.

Capt. Long returns with this to you and Mr. Fristo goes on to the Govr.

Respectfully yours

John B. Clark, Major Genl
1st Div M.M.

Executive Department
City of Jefferson, 1st Nov. 1838

To Major Genl Jno B. Clark

Sir: Your communication by express of Oct 30th, enclosing one from Major Generals Atchison & Lucas of the 28th Oct. have been recd. It is impossible for me to leave here, the near approach of the meeting of the Legislature renders it necessary that every moment of my time be employed in preparation to meet them. It was considered by me that full and ample powers were vested in you to carry into effect my former orders. The case is now a very plain one, the Mormons must be subdued and peace restored to the community. You will therefore proceed without delay to execute the former orders; full confidence is reposed in your ability to do so. Your force will be amply sufficient to accomplish the object. Should you need the aid of artillery, I would suggest that an application be made to the Commanding Officer of Ft. Leavenworth for such as you may need. You are authorized to request the use of it in the name of the State of Missouri. My presence there could affect nothing, I therefore again repeat that you are authorized and full power is given to you to take whatever steps you deem necessary and such as the circumstances of the case may deem it to demand, to subdue the insurgents and give peace and quiet to the country. The ringleaders of

this rebellion should be made an example of, and if it should become necessary for the public peace, the Mormons should be exterminated or expelled from the State.

In order that no difficulty may arise in relation to the command, I must inform you that neither Generals Atchison or Lucas have been called into service under this late order, except Genl Lucas was directed to raise 400 men in his Division and to place them under the command of a Brigadier General. The privilege was offered him of commanding the troops from his own Division, though subject to your orders. All the troops now under arms and those that may arrive at the seat of war are placed under your command.

You will report to me by express and keep me regularly informed of anything of importance which may occur. The near approach of winter requires that your operations should be hastened. After having restored quiet, you will cause the people of Daviess County who have been driven from their homes to be reinstated.

I am respectfully
Your obdt svt
L. W. Boggs
Com. in Chief

Camp near Carrollton, Midnight
Nov^r 1st 1838

Gens Atchison & Lucas

Gentlemen

[] while at Chariton [] that you were at Richmond and was only holding the Mormons at check until further orders which you sought from the Commander in Chief. And having before then received orders from the Commander in Chief with plenary powers to settle this whole difficulty and call to my aid such force as I might deem necessary, a copy of which I sent you by express per Capt. Long, but learning at this place that you have proceeded to Far West and hearing a report (not official) that some of the Mormons have already surrendered to you. Therefore, under my orders, and in pursuance of the only and proper power assigned me, I send you respectively the following orders (viz): you are to remain at some secure position in the vicinity of Far West, protecting the citizens & their property from the aggressions of the Mormons until I arrive with my force, which will be by tomorrow night, amounting to two thousand. But you are not to make any attack or operate offensively until I arrive, where the plan of adjustment suggested by the Commander in Chief and proposed by myself, will be communicated. You must take steps if you have not and if it be necessary to provision your forces by foraging or otherwise. If you have any prisoners, you will make no truce with them by which they are to be discharged until my arrival, but preserve them from injury as prisoners. The Govr, I have learned this evening, is on his way up and will join us perhaps tomorrow.

I will be able to reach Far West in three more days. If Genl Willock has arrived at the place he was ordered, you will direct him and also Genl Doniphan to remain there until my arrival for further orders observing their original orders to prevent the retreat of the Mormons to the north.

The express leaves immediately and I cannot be more specific. You will both report to me immediately your Head Quarters, strength and position and such other matters as tend to further the service in which we are engaged. My express Messrs Scott, Turner & Enyart you will furnish with such necessaries as they may need and much oblige me.

I have the honor
to be your Obt Servt
John B. Clark, Major Genl
1st Div M.M.

Head Quarters
Camp near Far West
Nov 2nd 1838

His Exc. L. W. Boggs,
Comd in Chief, M.M.

Sir, On morning 29th Oct. the troops ordered out by Maj. Genl Atchison & myself (as per our report to you of said date) took up their line of march from camp near Richmond for Far West. We encamped the night of the 29th at Linville Creek, a short distance from the road, about sixteen miles from Far West, at which point we received an express from Brig. Genl Doniphan informing us that he was encamped on Log Creek with a force of 500 men, and that he would join us at the crossing of said creek on the road from Richmond to Far West by 10 O'clock A.M. The next morning on 30th Oct. the troops got together at the late named point, when we mustered about 1800 men. Whilst at this place we received your orders of 26th ult. and I received an order of 27th ult. & a letter from you of the same date. At this point Maj. Genl Atchison left me for Liberty, when I was left in sole command. Before leaving Line Creek I received information that a band of Mormons 200 in number, called Danites, had been seen about two hours previous near the route that we had passed. Upon receiving this intelligence I ordered a detachment of two companies from the respective commands of Brig. Genl Wilson, Doniphan, Parks & Graham to go in pursuit of said band, which I placed under the command of Genl Wilson with instructions to intercept, and if possible to cut off their retreat to Far West. I then took up my line of march for Goose Creek, one mile south of Far West, which point we reached about one hour by sun in the evening. Just as the troops were encamping, I received intelligence from Genl Doniphan, from his position on the right, that he had discovered a party of Mormons approaching Far West from the east, and requested permission to intercept them if possible. Leave was granted, & his Brig. started off at nearly full speed to accomplish the order, but the Mormons succeeded in reaching the fort.

Genl Doniphan approached within 200 yards of their fortress when they displayed a force of about 800 men. At this juncture I ordered Genl Graham, Brig [] holding, Genl Parks & part of Genl Wilson's mounted, in reserve, to march full speed to the relief of the 1st Brig. 3rd Div. But from the inequality of the force of the 1st detachment (being only 250 strong at the time) & the Mormons, it was considered prudent to withdraw the troops & march against them in the morning. Which was accordingly done, and they all returned, as dark set in, to camp. At this place I established my Head Quarters & continued there during the expedition against the Mormons. The detachment under Genl Wilson returned about 9 O'clock P.M. The next morning, 31st Oct, I received a message from Col. Hinckle, the commander of the Mormon forces, requesting an interview with me on an eminence near Far West, which he would designate by hoisting a white flag. I sent him word that I would meet him at 2 O'clock P.M., being so much engaged in receiving & encamping of fresh troops who were hourly coming in, that I could not attend before. Accordingly, at that time I started with my staff officers and Brig. Genls Wilson, Doniphan & Graham, Genl Parks being left in command. We met him and some other Mormons at the point before mentioned. He stated that his object in asking me to meet him there was to know if there could not be some compromise or settlement of the difficulty without a resort to arms. After giving him to understand the nature of your orders, I made him the following propositions, which I furnished him a copy of, and a copy of your order, viz:

1st: To give up their leaders to be tried & punished.

2nd: To make an appropriation of their property, all who had taken up arms to its payment of their debt and indemnity for damage done by them.

3rd: That the balance should leave the State, & be protected out by the militia, but to be permitted to remain under protection until further orders were received from the Commander in Chief.

4th: To give up their arms of every description, to be receipted for.

Col Hinckle agreed to the proposition readily, but wished to postpone the matter until morning. I then told him that I would require Jos Smith Jr., Sidney Rigdon, Lyman Wight, Parley Pratt and Geo. W. Robinson as hostages for his faithful compliance with the terms, and would pledge myself and each one of the officers present that in case he, after reflecting and consulting upon the propositions during the night, declined acceding to them, that the hostages would be returned to him in the morning, at the same point they were received. But it was understood that in case they did comply, they were to be held for trial as part of the leaders called for by 1st stipulation. I then gave him until one hour by sun in the evening to produce and deliver them. We then returned to camp, & I directed the troops to make preparations to march to Far West by an hour & a half by sun, with a determination, in case the hostages were not produced, to make an attack upon the town forthwith. I directed Genl Parks' Brigade to be mounted, & to form on the right of the Division, to act as flankers if necessary and, if required, to pass entirely around the town and form on the north side with instructions to make the

attack at the report of the cannon, which was to be the signal for the general attack. Genl Graham's Brigade was mounted & formed on the extreme left to act as flankers and, if required, to form the line on the west side with similar instructions as to the commencement of the attack.

Genl Doniphan's Brig. was ordered to parade on foot and to form on the left of Genl Parks, with instructions to form on the East side, with similar orders relative to attack. Genl Wilson's Brig. was ordered to parade on foot and to form on the left of Genl Doniphan, with instructions to form the line of battle on the South side, with same instructions as to commencement of attack.

The artillery company, with one piece of ordnance, was placed at the head of Genl Doniphan & Genl Wilson's Brigades with instructions to occupy an eminence within 300 yards of the town.

The army being disposed of in this manner, at the appointed time I took up the line of march in the direction of Far West. When the troops got within about 600 yards I discovered the flag, and the hostages advancing. I immediately halted the army and rode out and met them, received the hostages and placed a guard over them for their safety and protection, and ordered the force back to our encampment. I cannot forbear at this point expressing my gratification and approbation of the good conduct & gallant bravery evinced by all the officers and men under my command. They marched up with as much determination and deliberation as old veterans, not knowing but that the charge would be sounded every moment for surrounding the town. There was no noise [nor even passion/fusion] - nothing but an eager anxiety upon the countenance of every man to get at the work. When the hostages were received, the troops, with some slight exceptions, marched back in profound silence.

1st Nov^r I ordered the whole forces amounting to 2500 men to parade at 9 O'clock A.M. & to take up the line of march for Far West, and 1/2 past 9 O'clock to receive the prisoners & their arms. The troops marched out & formed in the prairie about 200 yards east of the town. Genl Wilson's Brig. formed the west line, Genl Doniphan's the east line, Genl Graham's & Genl Parks' the south line with the artillery company and the cannon in the center of the two latter, leaving one side of the space open.

The Mormon army, reduced to about 600 men by desertion and otherwise, under their commander Col Hinckle, marched out of their town, through the space into our square, formed a hollow square and grounded their arms. Col. Hinckle then rode forward & delivered up to me his sword & pistols. I then directed a company from the respective Brigades to form a front, rear, and right & left flank guards, & to march the prisoners back to Far West, & protect & take charge of them until the next morning. I then detailed a company from Genl Doniphan's command to take charge of the arms. Then, in order to gratify the army, & to let the Mormons see our forces, marched around the town & through the principal street, & back to Headquarters. Considering the war at an end in this place, I issued orders for Genl Doniphan's Brigade, with the exception of one company, & Genl Graham's Brig.

to take up their line of march for their respective Head Quarters, & dismiss their men. And directed Genl Wilson to take charge of the prisoners (demanded for trial) & arms & march them to my Head Quarters at Independence to await further orders, & to dismiss all except a guard for the prisoners & arms.

2nd Nov: I relieved the guard placed over the prisoners at Far West by 4 companies of Genl Parks' Brig. and placed them under the command of Col. Thompson's 2nd Brigd 3rd Div. with instructions to report to Genl Clark.

The balance of Genl Parks' Brigade, with Capt. Gilliam's company of Genl Doniphan's Brigade under the command of Genl Parks, I ordered to Adam on Diamon, a Mormon town in Daviess County, with instructions to disarm the Mormon forces at that place and to leave a guard of 50 men for the protection of prisoners, & to report to Genl Clark. In order to carry the treaty & stipulations into effect, I have requested your Aide-de-Camp Col. Williams, together with Col. Burch & Major J. Reese of Ray, to attend to drawing up all the papers legally, & directed Col. Thompson to wait on them with a portion of his command, & to cause all their orders & requirements consistent with the stipulations to be carried into effect.

This day about 12 O'clock there was a Battalion of 100 men from Platte arrived at Far West, which I ordered back, having understood that Major Genl. Clark would be in in a day or two with a sufficient force to operate in Daviess & Livingston, & for any service that may be required.

I have the honor to be
Most respectfully
Saml D. Lucas
Maj. Genl.
Commanding

**Head Quarters of the Forces
Against the Mormons
Richmond, Nov 2nd 1838**

**Genl Samuel D. Lucas
Major Genl 4th Div M.M.**

Sir: I have heretofore directed you to report to me of your movements in your operations against the Mormons, but you have not done so or even sent me a line, except a pencil scrawl accidently found in the Bar Room of the Tavern at Richmond. I know nothing officially of what has been done, and shall therefore move on to Far West. You are ordered to have all the prisoners and arms taken from the Mormons to be brought forthwith to this place and the prisoners put in the Richmond jail and guarded, and the arms put in some secure place and guarded also. And you are also ordered to discharge your forces except a sufficient guard for the arms and prisoners as above. You will then repair in person to my camp between here and Daviess County with your [unit] and also

communicate to me a complete report in detail of what you have done in this expedition. These orders I make under order to me from the Govr.

I have the Honor
to be your Obt Svt
John B. Clark
Comg Genl

**Head quarters of all the forces
against the Mormons
Far West, Nov 4th 1838
Brig. Genl Parks**

Sir: I received your communication of this day per express and can only say you are right in obeying the orders of Genl Lucas although they were not without authority so far as he was concerned. You have, I suppose, taken the whole of the men of the Mormons prisoners. If not, you will do so and place such a guard around them and the town as well to protect the prisoners and to secure them until they can be dealt with properly. Also, the property must be protected from plunder and waste as far as practicable. In relation to the property of the citizens, you will give notice that as soon as I get things settled here I will repair to that place with a sufficient force to place the citizens back in their homes, and then all their property that can be found will be delivered up to them. And also the best means adopted to have them paid for the damage they have sustained, till which time, to wit, my arrival, all their property as well as the Mormons' must be held in custody. This is done in order that justice may be done in its distribution. All the citizens who have been moved can now move back with perfect safety, as my forces will not be discharged until they who choose to have moved.

If you think 60 men or one company enough without doubt to leave at that place to secure the prisoners and afford protection &c, you are at liberty to do as you suggested. But you must select a company in whom you can confide to execute your order and charge them to be strict that no outrages are committed. Prisoners must be protected. If you move your forces here, all but one company, you had better do so immediately. I will wait here until you have time to come before I make any further orders about Adam.

I am, Sir, yr Obt Svt
John B. Clark
Maj Genl Comg

Independence, Mo. 5th Nov^r 1838
His Exc. L. W. Boggs
Comm'd in Chief
M.M.

Sir: I returned on yesterday with the troops of the 1st Brig. 4th Divis. M.M. We got to Goose Creek in the vicinity of Far West on 30th ult. and the next day the town surrendered to us under the following conditions and stipulations, viz:

1st To give up their leaders to be tried & punished.

2nd To make an appropriation of their property, all who had taken up arms, to the payment of their debts, and indemnity for damage done by them.

3rd That the balance should leave the state and be protected out by the Militia, but to be permitted to remain until further orders from the Commander in Chief.

4th To give up their arms of every description, to be receipted for.

We took about 600 prisoners and rec'd something like that number of arms.

In disbanding my command, I ordered Genl Wilson to take charge of the leaders who I had demanded for trial, viz, Jo Smith, Sidney Rigdon, Lyman Wight, Amos Lyman, Geo. W. Robinson, Parley Pratt, Hiram Smith, together with the arms, and march them to my Headquarters at Independence to await your further orders. On 3rd of Nov^r, when at Williams Ferry, Missouri River, I received a letter from Major Genl Clark, by express, ordering me to march the prisoners and arms to Richmond, to discharge my forces, and repair myself with my staff to his camp wherever I could find it between Richmond and Daviess County. This order I did not comply with, as I could not under any circumstances be commanded by a Junior Major Genl. I was thrown into the field by a call from Brig. Genl Parks there in the field. Which, according to military etiquette and usage is equivalent to an order. And from your order to Genl Clark, he is only authorized to command Brigadier Generals, but can make a call on Major Genl's for any force that he may think necessary.

I received a copy of your orders to him, and I intend to start the prisoners and arms to Richmond in the morning when the whole will be subject to his order.

Your orders of 26th & 27th ult. together with your letter to me of latter date was only rec'd by express on 30th ult. within 6 or 7 miles of Far West. At this point Major Gen'l Atchison left me and returned home to Liberty. I was then left in the sole com'd of about 1,800 men, which I marched that night to Goose Creek, within one mile of Far West. By sun-down the next day my forces were increased to 2500 men. With an army of this magnitude I could not think of lying idle and inactive.

I will make out a fair report and send it to you by next mail. We were looking for

you every day, for the last 4 or 5 days, or I would have sent an express to you from Far West. A communication I received from Gen'l Clark 1st Nov^r stated that he had learned you was on your way up, and would arrive in a day or two. Learning that Gen'l Clark was on his march with an army of 2000 men, I concluded that he would have force sufficient to operate in Daviess and Livingston Counties, and to make a final close without the co-operation of my troops. I deemed it proper in order to save the state an enormous expense, which each day was immensely heavy, to discharge my forces which was accordingly done, with the exception of four companies left at Far West, and five companies under Gen'l Parks, sent to Daviess County. I left your aid, Col. Williams, Col. Burch and Major Reese of Regt at Far West drawing up all the necessary papers, and Col. Hinkle and myself appointed 5th Comd, viz: Wm Collins of Jackson, G. W. Woodward of Ray, Judge Cameron of Clay and John Corrill and M. Phelps of Far West.

The Mormons are to convey their property in trust to those comd's for the benefit of creditors and for indemnifying those that have been damaged by them. This arrangement gave satisfaction to the whole army and was the means of saving a great many valuable lives, and the effusion of immense bloodshed.

I have the honor to be with
Great respect
Saml D. Lucas
Major Genl 4th Divis M.M.

P.S. I sent Genl Clark a copy of my report to you, as soon as I had it made out.

Executive Department
City of Jefferson
6 Nov 1838

[To]
Major Genl
Jno B. Clark
Commanding the forces
against the Mormons

Sir: I have the honour to acknowledge the receipt of your communication under the date of the 3rd inst, dated at Richmond, by the express Mr. G. D. Maupin. I regret very much to hear that Genl Lucas has been guilty of disobedience of orders; on the subject, however, I shall cause in due time an inquiry to be made. I thought I had been so very explicit in my orders, that it was not possible to misunderstand them. You have placed the proper construction upon them, which was that the whole force to be employed in this service was to be placed under your command. General Lucas was not ordered out at all, except in the way I mentioned to you in my last communication. He was directed to cause four hundred men of his division to be raised, and place them under the command of a

Brigadier Genl with the privilege, if he thought proper, to waive his rank as Major Genl and take Brigadier General's command.

General Atchison was not ordered out in this last affair for two reasons: one was that I was aware as a member of the Legislature he would have other duties to attend to, and another was that there was much dissatisfaction manifested towards him by the people opposed to the Mormons. He, though, under our militia law, has a right within the limits of his command to order out his troops to quell insurrection or repel invasion. Genl Lucas, though, could not exercise any command within Genl Atchison's division only so far as he may have been directed by the Commander in Chief, and that only extended to the command of a Brigadier.

In pursuance of the orders which I forwarded by Mr. Black, the express from Daviess County, whose companion Mr. Dryden bore my first orders to you. I therefore approve of the course you have taken in demanding the prisoners of Genl Lucas, as well as the arms, and shall send to him instructions to deliver them over to your order in the way you have directed him. You will see that they are securely confined within the limits of some prison and strongly guarded. The course you have proposed taking in relation to the other prisoners, that is to hold an Examining Court, and cause all those deemed guilty to be confined and guarded, is the correct one.

You will proceed to Diamon and there disperse all the persons you may find embodied and under arms without authority of law. In the meantime, attachment from your command can, if it is deemed necessary, be employed to reinstate the people of Daviess in their homes. It will also be necessary that you hold a Military Court of inquiry in Daviess County and arrest the Mormons who have been guilty of the late outrages committed towards the inhabitants of said county. My instructions to you are to settle this whole matter completely if possible before you disband your forces. If the Mormons are disposed voluntarily to leave the state, of course it would be advisable for you to promote that object in any way deemed proper. The ringleaders of this rebellion, though, ought by no means permitted to escape the punishment they merit.

The troops from Col. Gasconade and Franklin are directed to report to you. You had perhaps better return them in service and discharge them who from fatigue or otherwise may be disposed to return.

I would be pleased to hear from you of the final result of this matter, previous to the meeting of the Legislature. I shall forward to Genl Lucas by Express the necessary orders and instructions to obey the orders you have directed to him, under date of the 3rd inst. in relation to the arms and prisoners.

I have to request of you to embody all the facts you can collect in relation to the commencement of progress, and termination of the recent difficulties with the Mormons, in order that I may communicate same to the Legislature.

I am respectfully
Yr Obt St
L. W. Boggs
Com. in Chief

P.S. The prisoners will of course be delivered over to the civil authority, when you may deem it prudent to do so.

Head Quarters
Nov 7th 1838

Genl Order

Brigadier Genl Robt. Wilson will take up the line of march with his Brigade this morning for Adam on diamon in Daviess County and take possession of the prisoners at that place and proceed to ascertain those who committed crimes. And when done to put them under close guard. And when he moves, take them to Keytesville after having them recognized by the proper authority. He will then endeavor to restore the citizens of Daviess to their homes. After things have been restored as far as may be he will march for home and discharge his force and report to me. I send a copy of the orders of the Govr to me, which are transferred to him, all things for that particular service to do all things which you may deem necessary under said order.

John B. Clark
Major Genl Comg

Independence, Nov^r 7th 1838

His Exc L. W. Boggs
Comd in Chief
M.M.

Sir: I recd from Genl Clark last night, per the hands of Col Price, a copy of your orders of the 1st Nov^r in which you state that neither Genls Atchison & Lucas was called or ordered into the field by you. If your orders had of reached me before I got into the field, I would not have went, but I know nothing of the call for men or of the arrangements for giving the command to Genl Clark, but acted as I have before informed you. Upon a call from Brig. Genl Parks, then in the field (which, according to military usage & ettiquette is equivalent to an order) for assistance, he represented things in such a manner (which your Excellency has been apprised of by Col. Williams and Major Rees) that I believed I had no alternative but to act as I did. I have no disposition to thwart either your designs or Genl Clark's plans in going into the field, but after I got there with an army of 2500 men I could not consistently lie idle or inactive.

For the result of my proceedings, I refer you to my report sent herewith. I did not make any report to Genl Clark because I did not believe it proper to do so consistent with my grade of office.

I am very Respectfully
yr Obt Servt
S. D. Lucas
Major Genl 4th Divis. M.M.

P.S. If your Excellency should deem it proper, you can cause Genl Clark to be furnished with a copy of the above.

**Head Quarters of the Militia
Employed against the Mormons
Richmond Nov^r 10th 1838**

His Excellency L. W. Boggs

Sir, A day or two before I received your first order, I had upon information from a letter from Mr. Rees and Col. Williams on their way to you, issued an order to have raised in my Division one thousand men ready to march on Monday the 29th day of October last, all of which I communicated to you by express, the one however conveying my communication met one from your Excellency & returned.

On the 29th according to my order the first Brigade rendezvous at Fayette proposed to march, and did on that evening take up the line of march and reached Chariton on that evening. At Chariton I recd an express from Messrs. Atchison and Lucas to you, which I forwarded and then I dispatched an order to Genls Atchison & Lucas with a copy of your several orders to me, all of which you have been informed of by me. The next day, October 30th we reached Keytesville where we met the 2nd Brigade, commanded by Genl Robert Wilson who had been ordered to join me at that place. The next morning October 31st I organized the two Brigades into a Division, officered the same and took up the line of march for Richmond. We made forced marches until we reached Richmond. On the day we reached Carrollton, Nov^r 2nd I heard a report that Genl Lucas had invested Far West and effected a capitulation, the arms of which I sent you from here on my way out. I then sent another express to Genl Lucas to hold fast to all he had (supposing he had the prisoners and arms) until I arrived, to make no final capitulation or treaty until I did arrive, when I would communicate to him my plans for settling the difficulty, and also requesting him to report to me forthwith his acts, strengths &c. The express was directed to bring back to me at Richmond any communication the Genl might desire to make.

The next day I reached Crooked River in the neighborhood of Richmond. At this place I learned that Genl Lucas had disbanded his forces, and marched the prisoners to Independence. I immediately sent an express to intercept him, with

orders to march the prisoners and arms back to Richmond for the reasons contained in my letter to you from Richmond.

I continued my march to Far West where I arrived on Sunday the 4th. When I reached there I encamped in the vicinity of town. At night I went into town with all my Field Officers & commenced ferreting out the guilty amongst the Mormons who were there. This business employed my time for two days and nights. After I had obtained all the information I could by disclosures from the dissenters from Jo the prophet (and there are not a few at this time) I caused the whole of the Mormons to be paraded, and took out of their ranks such of those I conceived guilty as could be found, and put them into a room.

A deep snow falling on this evening, and there being no chance to obtain fuel or provender, I was compelled to march back to Richmond with the prisoners, forty-six in number. I however, the day before I left Far West dispatched Lt. Col. Price from the Second Brigade to Richmond with two companies to receive the prisoners and arms, but on his arrival not finding them there, he went to Genl Lucas at Independence and informed him of his mission. The Genl then sent them and they reached here on last evening.

On the day I left Far West, I ordered Genl Wilson with his Brigade (except the two companies with Col. Price), to Adam Ondo Ahmon, a town in Daviess which had a few days since surrendered & given up their arms, with instructions to take possession of the town and disarm all the Mormons, and act in that quarter in accordance to your instructions to me, a copy of which was furnished him.

He was also instructed to take out from the mass of Mormons such as probably could be convicted of crime, and have them committed and then carry them to Keytesville, and have them placed in jail and guarded, but he was instructed not to leave that quarter until he had reinstated the citizens in their property and homes as far as practicable, and if necessary leave a small force there to protect the citizens.

I also ordered Capt Comstock with his company in Livingston to continue there, disarming the Mormons where-ever found, and report to Genl Wilson at Diamon for further orders.

This being done, I proposed to march back to Richmond. The morning before I left Far West I called the whole of the Mormons together, about five hundred (a great number having run away between the surrender and my arrival) and informed them that the prisoners I had, together with those taken by Genl Lucas, would be taken to Richmond, tried, and punished if found guilty. That they must comply with the terms of the capitulation with Genl Lucas.

The situation of their women and children, and the inclemency of the weather, induced me to modify the terms, and not require them to remove forthwith. That they could remain until their convenience suited them in the Spring. That no military guard would go with them, but I would pledge the honor of the State,

they should not be hurt, and that their arms should be given up to them whenever they left the State, and not before. This they readily agreed to, so far as I could judge from their expressions.

This being done, I took up the line of march with the prisoners, and got here on yesterday. On my arrival here I discharged the whole of the first Brigade. I will here state that on my way to Far West, while at Richmond, I wrote to Genl Grant and ordered him to countermarch and discharge his forces. The same order I sent to Genl Willock from Far West, also Genl Crowster's Division was discharged at Richmond on their way, except the Boonville guards who were taken on to Far West and discharged here this morning. Genl White, learning of the state of affairs, left his men at the River near Livingston and came on to meet me with his staff at Far West. I then ordered him to countermarch his Brigade, except the cavalry commanded by Capt Parsons, which company is now here guarding the prisoners.

All the forces in this quarter are now discharged, except two companies commanded by Capt Parsons and Capt Bogard. I detained Lieut. Col. Price to superintend the guard of the prisoners, and I also detained Genl White and his field officers here a day or two for the purpose of holding a Court Martial if necessary. I this day made out charges against the prisoners and called on Judge King to try them as a committing court, and I am now busily engaged in procuring witnesses and submitting facts. There being no civil offices in Caldwell, I have to use the military to get witnesses from there which I do without reserve.

Genl Wilson's Brigade is still in service in Daviess County, under the instructions above stated. They will be discharged as fast as possible.

The most of the prisoners here I consider guilty of Treason, and I believe will be convicted, and the only difficulty in law is, can they be tried in any county but Caldwell. If not, they cannot be there indicted until a change of population. In the event the latter view is taken by the civil courts, I suggest the propriety of trying Jo Smith and those leaders taken by Genl Lucas, by a Court Martial for mutiny. This I am in favor of only as a dernier resort. I would have taken this course with Smith at any rate, but it seems doubtful whether a Court Martial has jurisdiction or not in the present case, that is, whether these people are to be treated as in time of war, & would here ask you to forward to me the Attorney General's opinion on this point. My whole object is to obey your orders & settle this matter so as to have the best effect upon the people, & at the same time not compromise the character of the State. But it will not do to allow these leaders to return to their treasonable work again on account of their not being indicted in Caldwell.

I find by inquiry that with all the enormities we have heard charged against these people, many of which charges we looked upon as the offspring of prejudice on the part of our citizens, the truth has not yet been told. There is no crime from treason down to the most petty larceny but these people, or a majority of them have been guilty of. All, too, under the counsel of Joseph Smith Jr, the prophet. They have committed treason, murder, arson, burglary, robbery and larceny, and

perjury. They have societies formed under the most revolting covenants in form, & the most horrid oaths to circumvent the law & put them at defiance, & to plunder & burn & murder & divide the spoils for the use of the Church. This is what they call the Danite Club or Society.

These facts I gather from some persons I have who have disclosed: Under this horrid system, many of the citizens of Daviess County, who went to that frontier poor, & who by their industry & economy had acquired a good living, have been robbed of every article of property they have - their houses burnt before their eyes, & them & their wives & children driven out of the country, without any kind of shelter. In one instance, I have been informed that a family was ordered off & their house burnt in their light & a woman driven out while it was snowing, with a child only four days old. In another case, I was informed a family was driven away & the woman was compelled to ask protection in a few miles, where she was delivered of a child in a short time after. These, sir, are some of the offenses of these people. I do not wonder at the prejudices against them in their vicinity.

I send you enclosed a copy of a Constitution of one of their societies from which you can gather some information. I design to continue my head Quarters here, until the investigation of the cases of the prisoners are closed. You shall be informed from time to time of the progress, as also of the movements in Daviess. Those facts I now communicate to you, supposing they would be useful to you before the meeting of the Legislature. Your communication of the 6th was received today by Mr. Maupin. Its contents were duly noted & shall be attended to. I have this evening informed the prisoners of what is charged against them and ordered the leaders to be bound, so as to [] to save them.

I am, Sir, your obt Servt
John B. Clark
Maj Genl
Commanding

Independence, 11th Nov^r 1838
His Excellency L. W. Boggs
Comr in Chief, M.M.

Sir: Your communication of 6th Nov. 1838 through B. M. Lisle, Adj. Genl, has just been received. The prisoners have been sent to Richmond, subject to the order of Genl Clark, & the arms will be sent as soon as the weather will permit. I have also furnished Genl Clark a copy of my report to you, all of which proceedings have been transmitted to you by mail, but which I presume did not reach previous to the date of your orders.

I have the honor to be yr
most obdt servt
Saml D. Lucas
Maj. Genl 4th D. M.M.

P.S. I refer you to my report & two other communications since my return from Far West, for further particulars as to the prisoners & arms.

Col. S. V. Noland, one of your Aide-de-Camps who accompanied the expedition under my command, will leave this evening for Jefferson City & will communicate further on this subject.

S^d D. Lucas
Maj. Gen 4th Div

P.S. The first communication received from Genl Clark was under date 30th Oct in which he directs Genl Atchison & myself to act as we think best according to circumstances. This letter was received either on the day or the day before the surrender, by Capt. Long, one of the persons Genl Atchison & myself had started to you with our report. The 2nd communication from Genl Clark was dated 1st Nov. In this, he directs us to remain in some secure position, & not to make any attack until he arrived. This, together with the 3rd communication, (the one you sent a copy of in your communication per Mr. Dorriss) was only received at Williams Ferry, Missouri River, two days after I had disbanded the army, as per my report to you of the 2nd Nov.

I never had any idea of trying any of the prisoners by a Court Martial, but only ordered them to my Head Quarters to await your further orders.

S. D. Lucas
Maj. Genl 4th Div. M.M.

Head Quarters 2nd Brigade 1 D, M.M.
Adam-on-Diahmon Nov 12, 1838

Maj. Genl Clark:

Sir, In pursuance of your order of the 7th at Far West, I took up the line of march with my command & arrived here on the 8th. We suffered much from the inclemency of the weather, which still continues.

On my arrival here I found the troops had left. I met Col. Burges some two miles from this place, he being the last. I immediately placed a guard around the town & ordered the Mormons to parade, which order was promptly obeyed, and about two hundred men entered their names. I then proceeded to the investigation as you required by your order, Justices Black & other citizens being present. I caused such of the Mormons as were supposed to be guilty of crimes arrested, and handed them over to the civil authorities for trial. It however appears that the most guilty had previously escaped, they having ample opportunity as I am informed the town had not been under guard up to the time of our arrival. The investigation is still progressing but with but little hope of effecting much, as the citizens seem to be unable to identify but few.

It is perfectly impossible for me to convey to you anything like the awful state of things which exist here. Language is inadequate to the task. The citizens of a whole county first plundered, & then their houses & other buildings burnt to ashes. Without houses, beds, furniture or even clothing in many instances to meet the inclemency of the weather. I confess that my feelings have been shocked with the gross brutality of these Mormons, who have acted more like demons from the infernal regions than human beings. Under these circumstances you will readily perceive that it would be perfectly impossible for me to protect the Mormons against the just indignation of the citizens. I therefore promptly informed the Mormons in a short address of all the facts that had then come to my knowledge - told them I should remain in Daviess County ten days, & would endeavor to protect them during that time. At the end of the ten days I would leave, and was not authorized to promise them further protection in Daviess County - that you had promised protection in Caldwell County - that such of them as wished to remove to Caldwell, or out of the state, I would give a permit to state that effect & would guarantee their safety on the route. The Mormons themselves appeared pleased with the idea of getting away from their enemies & a justly insulted people, and I believe all have applied to receive permits to leave the county. And I suppose about fifty families have left & others are hourly leaving, & at the end of the ten days, Mormons will not be known in Daviess County.

This appears to me to [be] the only course left to prevent a general massacre and I hope my course in this matter may meet your approbation, as it has been your pleasure to commit to my charge a most important command without special instructions. I feel the more bound not only to return you my sincere thanks for the honor thus done, but to give you a full account of all my acts. Nothing has been left undone on my part to justify that confidence.

The citizens of Daviess have cooperated heartily with me & to their praise be it said, have shown a degree of compassion & charity, unparalleled under the circumstances, to their enemies, & have cheerfully obeyed every order I have found it proper to give in this matter & now confidently believe I shall be able to close this most shocking insurrection without further bloodshed.

I had previously to receiving your order discharged all the troops under my command, except one company under Capt. Norbold. This company will be retained until I close my business here. I expect, without otherwise ordered, to remain here until tomorrow week & then set out for home. If therefore it is your pleasure to give me further orders before leaving, I would suggest that they be forwarded in time to reach here before that time.

It would astonish you to see the immense piles of stolen property which has been brought in & deposited by the Mormons, consisting of almost everything to be found at a farm house, & much remaining yet concealed. Large quantities have been found buried in & near town. I have been making all possible exertions to collect & preserve this property for the owners, but I find it hard to do as these dirty thieves are more skillful in the pilfering line than any I have yet seen. The citizens inform me that much of their property has been to Far West. I suggest that

you order them to return them here at their own expense.

I write in a miserable shanty called the Lord's Store House, late at night after having been well soaked in the rain during the day, & much fatigued. I may have omitted some things, but when I am more comfortable I will write you more fully.

I have the honor to be with unsignal [] good will

Your Obt Servt

R. Wilson, Brig. Genl

[] 2nd Brig. M.M.

Executive Department

City of Jefferson

Nov 12, 1838

[To]

Major Genl D. Willock

Cmdr Detachment

Hartville

Sir:

I have the honor to acknowledge the receipt of your communication of the 10th inst. from Hartville. From information received from Genl Clark, who was placed in command of all the troops raised in pursuance of the late order of the Executive, there will not be any necessity for your proceeding any further. You will therefore return your troops and discharge them. The Quarter Master of your detachment will purchase and grant certificates to the person of whom he purchases, for such provisions as you may need. You will, however, [] out with as small a quantity as possible.

You will please present my thanks to the troops under your command for their promptness in marching to the call of their country.

Respectfully,

L. W. Boggs, Com
in Chief

Head Quarters, Richmond

Nov 14th 1838

His Exc Gov Boggs -

Sir: In my last communication I informed you of all the important incidents of the expedition up to that time. On Tuesday last we commenced the examination of the alleged crimes, being treason, murder, burglary, arson & larceny against Jo Smith and his co-leaders & about forty six others who occupy less a space amongst their

people, but many of whom are equally guilty. The defendants have employed Messrs. Rees and Doniphan to defend them, who are both present.

The enquiry, as you may well imagine, takes a very extensive range and involves many important legal principles not often adverted to in our own practice, & being as I consider too important to be made out against the prisoners I, at the suggestion of Mr. Burch, the Circuit Attorney, spoke to Col. W. T. Wood to assist in the prosecution, promising him to lay the matter before your excellency, not doubting but what some provisions would be made by which he would have paid to him a reasonable fee. This was not done because I doubted Mr. Burch's ability in the least, for he is a good lawyer, and entering into this matter with his whole energy, but there are so many points [starred] & so much labor to arrange the facts, so as to make them bear on the various defendants that I did not wonder he should ask assistance. And for the good of the state I spoke to Col. Wood as above stated, & he very willingly engaged with Mr. Burch.

We progress slowly, but thus far the disclosures indicate certain conviction of treason against Smith, Wight, Pratt, Rigdon & some one or two more, and of murder against some five or six. Burglary against several, arson against a number & larceny against others. How it will all result I cannot yet tell, but that the leaders will all be convicted of treason or murder I think is reasonably certain, & many others of felony. You shall be informed as we progress.

I received this evening a communication from Genl Wilson, who had been dispatched to Daviess County, a copy of which I enclose you, from which you will discover that things are becoming as well settled there as can be under the circumstances, though they & I would have been much better settled if your orders had been complied with before my arrival. It seems to me if proper steps had been taken to save the active leaders, they could all have been captured. The protection Genl Wilson alludes to my giving the Mormons in Caldwell I explained to you in my last communication.

I regret exceedingly to learn that any acts of yours should create any heart burnings or collision with your Excellency and any General officer, and particularly to such an extent as I understand exists with Genl Atchison. Your motives doubtless were good, your orders were undoubtedly right as to the Mormons, and my command and I have no doubt the whole country will sustain you.

Business of a very urgent nature compels me to leave here on tomorrow for Fayette, where I will arrive on Sunday, leaving Lt. Col. Price, a competent officer, here until my return. I will only remain in Fayette until Tuesday or Wednesday next, & then I shall return here to remain until this whole prosecution is settled or

put in such a condition that a military force is unnecessary. It is thought that the investigation will last for two or three weeks.

I am, sir, your obt servt
John B. Clark
Maj. Genl, Comm^s

Nov 14th 1838

The Governor of the State of Missouri -

....There was at Far West about five hundred Mormons, several hundred having run off with their unit before my arrival, and at Adam on Diamon about one hundred and fifty or two hundred, making in all about twelve hundred armed men all together, as well as I can ascertain. There is now collected in the hands of my Quarter Master, and I presume Genl Lucas, about seven hundred guns, a great many pistols, swords and spears, but I have not now in my possession any means to ascertain the exact numbers. But they have been receipted for and will be reported in due time by the proper officer.

Before I left Far West I had the Mormons called together and addressed them in substance that they have capitulated with Genl Lucas and made their own agreement, and they would be expected to comply, and must comply, but that they would not be expected to go until their convenience in the spring. That no military guard would go with them, that none was necessary as I would pledge the honour of the State they should not be hurt. That their arms should then be given up to them. I did not see what else I could do under the circumstances without setting at naught what had been done by Genl Lucas, which I thought would have produced another difficulty with these people of perhaps more danger than the one that was then settled.

....These people had, as you will perceive, united themselves together in Societies, the object of which was to first drive from their society such as refused to join them in their unholy purposes, and then to plunder the surrounding country and ultimately to subject the State to their will. They have committed great injury to the country by burning, robbing. These things, however, their leaders say was done to punish the citizens of our State for past violence to them in other places...They have murdered, robbed, stole and burnt and committed many inhumane acts on helpless families. I have no doubt but what we have many citizens who have very much mistreated these people, but never to such an extent as to create the idea in a rational mind, who loved his country, that the Government ought to be subverted and the laws put at defiance.

The whole number of Mormons killed through the whole difficulty, as far as I can ascertain, are about forty and several wounded. There has been one citizen killed and about fifteen badly wounded. I give it as my decided opinion that much more blood would have been shed than this if there had been only troops enough

ordered out by your Excellency to conquer the insurgents []. Their influence [] them into submission to the first troops that appeared before them. This I am authorized to say by intelligent Mormons...

...not any of the forces after I arrived at Far West committed any violence either upon the property or persons of the Mormons of either sex; any statement or insinuation to the contrary is false and is slander upon my command and our citizens. I am led to make this statement, your Excellency, on account of pictures I have seen in some of the public journals of the country about the troops generally, and consequently embracing my command. I cannot vouch for the troops before my arrival but I do afterwards, and in justice to the officers commanding before, I will state that I believe that great injustice has been done them also. I have the testimony of the most intelligent Mormons on this subject, which I attach. It is humiliating to the militia, who are citizens generally of high order, to see the public journals of the country publishing every report that is put out without knowing whether it be true or false for the purpose of casting reproach upon our arms our country. I make this statement to rescue my command from such [insurrective] censure which I know to be false as far as they are concerned, and leave other General officers having the command before my arrival to act as they please in the premises.

I have not been able to satisfy myself as well as I would upon the causes of this difficulty, but enough is shown by the evidence I here attach to enable the country to appreciate your prompt movement in ordering out the Militia to put down an insurrection of no ordinary character. It had for its object dominion, the ultimate subjugation of this State and the union...

Much has been said to the prejudice of those engaged in the battle at Hauns mill. Not having received before my departure from Richmond an official account of that battle from the officer commanding. Since my arrival here I addressed a note to Maj Ashby, a senator from Chariton who was there, for information. His answer is here appurtenant and marked, to which I refer you.

I would inform your Excellency that I have been informed by Mormons that there are now about one hundred persons, the wives of those who were killed and run off, who are destitute and depend on their friends for support.

I do not know how many of the prisoners will be committed, not having read the evidence in defense. When I left Richmond, I obtained copies of all the evidence that had been given in that I could procure, and engaged a gentleman to copy the balance on both sides & forward it to me at this place by each mail....

Having now submitted to your Excellency the course taken by me under your several orders in every material step, as well as such information as I possess, permit me to assure your Excellency that I entered on my duties with fearful apprehensions that my experience and ability to command had been exaggerated by you, and it would have given me pleasure if such an important trust involving so much had been committed to other, more competent hands. But in the

discharge of my duty I have endeavored to comply with your orders as I understood and construed them, making the restoration and preservation of the public peace the great object to be attained. All which I respectfully submit to your Excellency, hoping that my acts may be satisfactory to you and yours to the Country.

I am, Sir, with consideration
of high respect your
Obr Servant

John B. Clark
Major Genl Com

Richmond, Nov 23, 1838

Understanding that Maj Genl Clark is about to return with the whole of his command from the scene of difficulty, we avail ourselves of this occasion to state that we were present when the Mormons surrendered to Major Genl Lucas at Far West and remained there until Major Genl Clark arrived. And we are happy to have this opportunity as well as the satisfaction of stating that the course of him and his troops while at Far West was of the most respectful kind and obliging character towards the said Mormons. And that the destitute among that people are much indebted to him for sustenance during his stay.

The modification of the terms upon which the Mormons surrendered, by permitting them to remain until they could safely go in the spring was also an act that gave general satisfaction to the Mormons. We have no hesitation in saying that the course taken by Genl Clark with the Mormons was necessary for the public peace, and that the Mormons are generally satisfied with his course. We feel duty bound to say that the conduct of the Genl, his staff officers and troops was highly honorable as soldiers and citizens so far as our knowledge intends, and we have heard of nothing derogatory to the dignity of the state in the treatment of the prisoners.

Respectfully,
W. W. Phelps
George Walters
John Clemmson
G. M. Hinckle
John Corroll

Keytesville, Nov 25th 1838

Genl Clark:

Sir - In performance of your order dated at Far West Nov 7th, I marched with the

troops under my command for Adam Onde Ohman in the County of Daviess where I arrived on the 8th. Immediately after my arrival I had called together all the Mormons then residing in Daviess County and distinctly informed them of the nature of the order of the Commander in Chief, and that you had transferred the same to the undersigned to be executed in the County of Daviess. I also informed them that they would be permitted to remain in Daviess County during the winter or that they, at their option, should be permitted peaceably to remove themselves and property to Caldwell County if they desired so to do. That I would remain ten days with a sufficient force for their protection, and that I would give to such as desired it a written permit to remove to Caldwell or out of the state. So soon as this was made known to them, they unanimously made application and received the permit above alluded to. And in the course of ten days all the Mormons residing at that point, with a few exceptions, had removed in peace and safety. I would here give it as my opinion that, owing to the hostility these people had produced against themselves by their excesses and depredations upon the property and lives of the citizens, would not have been permitted to remain there in safety, and of this the Mormons seemed to be well satisfied.

I found the greater portion of these people to be late immigrants to this place from Canada and the northern parts of the United States, encamped mostly in tents and provided with provisions for the winter. I was told upon inquiry that the prisoners had not been guarded since their surrender and that such as knew they could be identified by the citizens had mostly absconded. Such of the Mormons that could be identified were placed on trial before a justice of the peace.

The Mormons have done immense injury to the citizens of this county, first by robbing them of all their movable property and then burning their houses. A part of this property was found at Adam Ondi Ahman, but the greater portion is still missing. The people of Daviess County, during my stay among them, conducted themselves toward the Mormons with great propriety and even generosity. I am fully satisfied for myself that no people having any claims to honesty would permit such a band of robbers, as these Mormons have proved themselves to be, to reside among them. It is useless for me here to recapitulate the evidence upon which this opinion is founded, as you must be fully in possession of the same from the inquiry now going on forward at Richmond.

I have great pleasure in being able to certify to you of the good conduct of the troops under my command. Both officers and privates discharged their duty to my entire satisfaction and without a murmur. So far as I am informed no Mormon was injured in person or property by any person under my command.

Finding the civil authorities of Daviess County in a situation to discharge all the duties required of them by law, I referred all matters in dispute in relation to property between citizens and Mormons, under the belief that an exercise of military authority under the circumstances would have been improper.

The extent of the injury sustained by the citizens would not be fully ascertained, but so far as my observation and information extended, the whole county is laid

waste and I fear many will suffer during the winter. It is impossible [to] witness these scenes of distress without feeling the deepest indignation against the leaders of these people who under the sacred name of religion have caused their followers to commit the most horrid crimes ever perpetrated in any country, and that too, as they allege, for the advancement of the Kingdom of Christ.

The troops under my command have all returned home and I am this far on the route subject to your further order.

I have the honor to be
with great respect
Robert Wilson Brg Genl
2nd Bat 1st Div M.M.

Senate Chamber Nov 28th 1838

Dear Sir: In answer to your note of this morning requesting me to give you such information as was in my knowledge relative to the battle fought on the 30th October at the Mills on Shoal Creek between the citizens and Mormons.

I will state that the company I belonged to was stationed in the rear as a reserve at a distance of about 40 yards of the line of battle. As soon as the line of battle was formed and before all the troops in the line had dismounted, the fire commenced (by the Mormons as I was told by those in front). The position I occupied prevented me from seeing the commencement. As soon as firing commenced, the company I belonged to dismounted and run in the line in front. When I got sight of the position of the Mormons, they were all in the house or under the bank of the creek and the smoke of their guns from both places appeared to me to be continual. Our men took a few fires at a crack in the house when I heard the order to charge the house which order was promptly obeyed. The men run to the house. As we approached it I saw one man have out his gun in front of me. I stepped to one side & the man in front of me squatted down and pitched under the muzzle, lay still until the gun fired. He then rose and as the Mormon drew back his gun, our man shoved his gun in the house & fired. By this time our men got possession of all the port holes, cracks &c and kept up such a constant fire that the Mormons could not get their guns out to shoot. They then broke out of the house and run towards the creek, but many fell in their flight. About that time I heard the cry of Quarters among our own men. I recollect distinctly of hearing one of our own men say (they called for quarters). I then hallowed Quarters! Quarters! as loud as I could which was echoed by all around me. The firing then ceased on our parts at which time a volley came from the creek. I then thought they had heard us calling for Quarters and thought we were whipped. The firing then renewed on our part and continued as long as there was any Mormon in sight, except the wounded. After the battle was near a close, I saw some of the Mormons that had reached the top of the hill south of the creek, about 300 yards from us, stopped, turned around and shot back at us and then run on.

After the battle had subsided I saw some of our men carry our wounded man into a house and laid him on a bed. The men in counting the dead found one man in the house not hurt who had fallen down in the early part of the action and was covered with the slain. I saw him and talked with him the moment he was taken prisoner. Those who counted the dead said 31 was killed of the Mormons and seven of our men was wounded. We then got a waggon and horses and such of our wounded as was unable to ride was put in the waggon and we left the place.

The above is an outline of that affair as my recollection serves me.

Yours respectfully,
Daniel Ashby

To Genl J. B. Clark

APPENDIX H

NAUVOO

The Story of Joseph Smith's Murder by
www.meridianmagazine.com/.../010830martyr.html

Remembering the Martyrdom: Eyewitnesses of that Fateful Day in June, 1844
A photo essay by Scot Facer Proctor

Even the coldest heart is moved by the events that took place in the Carthage Jail in June, 1844. Joseph died not only as a Prophet, Seer, and Revelator, but as a Mayor of one of the largest cities in America, General of the Nauvoo Legion (the largest city militia in the western United States), declared candidate for President of the United States, and more tenderly, as a husband to Emma Hale Smith and father of eleven children (six then deceased, one yet unborn). Joseph died, as the Prophets of old, as a witness of the Savior of mankind. The following accounts are given to paint a picture of some of the feelings that surround that fateful day in June of 1844. I have added the photographs so you may walk with the Prophet Joseph to Carthage.



Sixteen moves in seventeen years of marriage finally brought Joseph and Emma to this home in Nauvoo. They called it "the Mansion House" and who in their position wouldn't? It had twenty-two rooms when completed. Joseph would only live here ten months.

"Willard, the time will come that the balls will fly around you like hail, and you will see your friends fall on the right and on the left, but there shall not be so much as a hole in your garment."⁽¹⁾ (Joseph Smith to Willard Richards, Summer 1843)



Sun sets over the horseshoe bend of the Mississippi River near where Joseph, Hyrum, Willard Richards and Porter Rockwell crossed in a leaky skiff. After Joseph came from his family to leave, "his tears were flowing fast. He held a handkerchief to his face, and followed after Brother Hyrum without uttering a word."⁽²⁾

"The last time I saw the Prophet, he was on his way to Carthage jail...They stopped..at the house of Brother Rosecrans. We were on the porch and could hear every word he said...one sentence I well remember. After bidding good-bye, he said to Brother Rosecrans, 'If I never see you again, or if I never come back, remember that I love you.' This went through me like electricity. I went in the house and threw myself on the bed and wept like a whipped child. And why this grief for a person I had never spoken to in my life, I could not tell. I knew he was a servant of God, and could only think of the danger he was in, and how deeply he felt it..."⁽³⁾ (Mary Ellen Kimball on June 24, 1844)



Here by the front gate of their fence Joseph said good-bye to Emma and the children for the last time. "You will return won't you?" Emma purportedly asked Joseph.

[Joseph looking at the Temple site and at the city of Nauvoo on the way to Carthage:]
"This is the loveliest place and the best people under the heavens; little do they know the trials that await them." [Sometime later that same day on the road to Carthage, Joseph said,] "I am going like a lamb to the slaughter, but I am calm as a summer's morning. I have a conscience void of offense toward God and toward all men. If they take my life I shall die an innocent man...and it shall be said of me "He was murdered in cold blood."⁽⁴⁾
(Joseph on the Martyrdom Trail, June 24, 1844)



Flora on temple lot in Nauvoo. Joseph often prayed that he would see the completion of the house of the Lord. Surely that prayer was answered. But not on this side of the veil.

"Dear Emma, I am very much resigned to my lot knowing I am justified and have done the best that could be done. Give my love to the children and all my friends...you need not have any fears that any harm can happen to us...may God bless you all, Amen."⁽⁵⁾
(Handwritten Letter from Joseph to Emma 8:20 a.m., June 27, 1844)



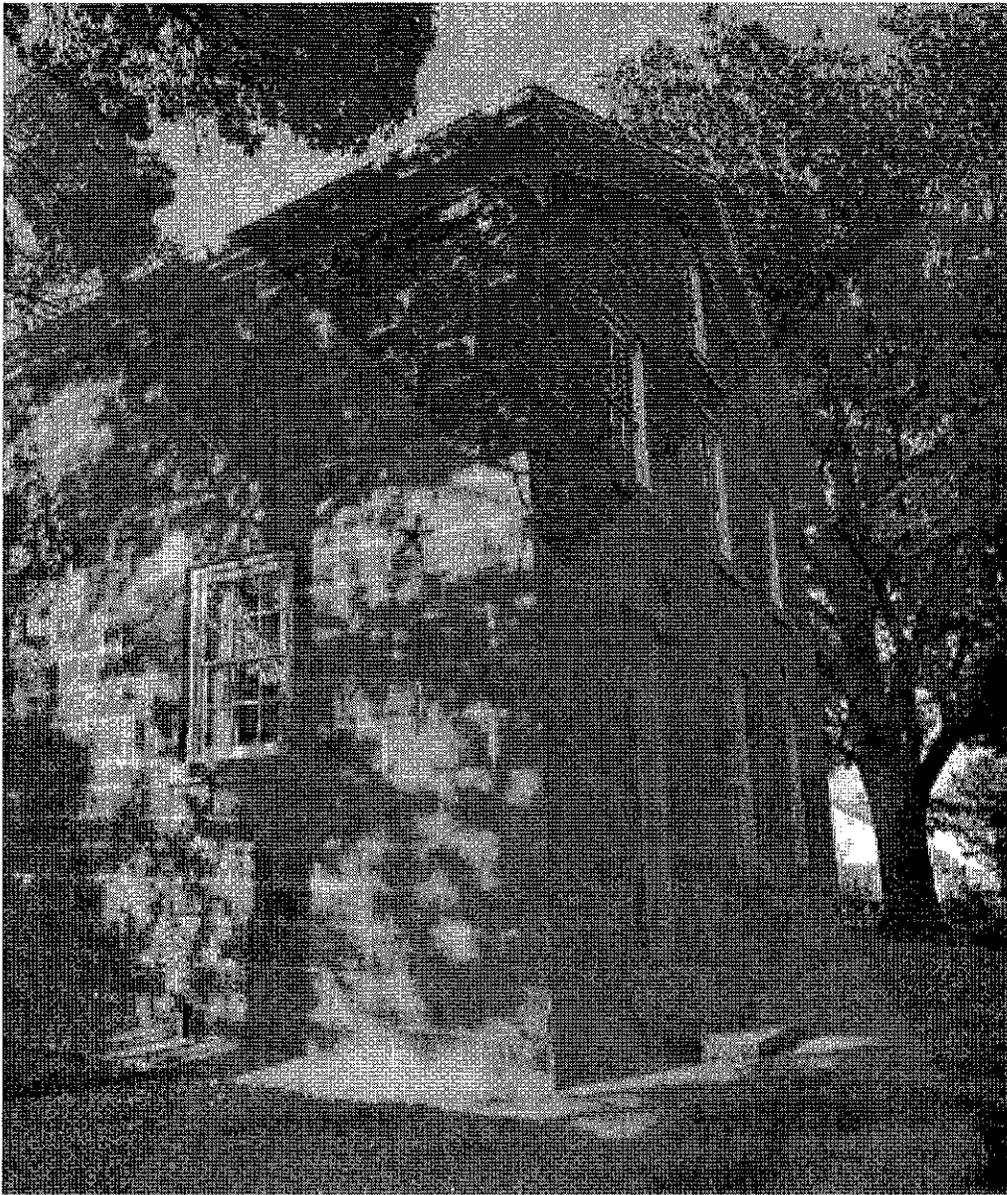
Plowed fields of the original Joseph Smith Farm just outside Nauvoo not far from the Nauvoo Burial Grounds. Here Joseph stopped and gazed upon his land. As they rode away Joseph looked back over and over again. The men escorting him to Carthage told him to be moving on. Joseph said, "If some of you had got such a farm and knew you would not see it any more, you would want to take a good look at it for the last time."⁽⁶⁾

"...the life of my servant shall be in my hand; therefore they shall not hurt him, although he shall be marred because of them. Yet I will heal him, for I will show unto them that my wisdom is greater than the cunning of the devil."⁽⁷⁾ *(Jesus Christ to the Nephites, concerning Joseph Smith)*



Summer afternoon on part of the original 26 y miles of the road from Nauvoo to Carthage, now called the Martyrdom Trail.

"We have had too much trouble to bring 'Old Joe' here to let him ever escape alive...You'll see that I can prophesy better than 'Old Joe,' that neither he nor his brother, nor anyone who will remain with them, will see the sun set today."⁽⁸⁾ (*Frank Worrell, Officer of the Guard of Carthage Jail, June 27, 1844*)



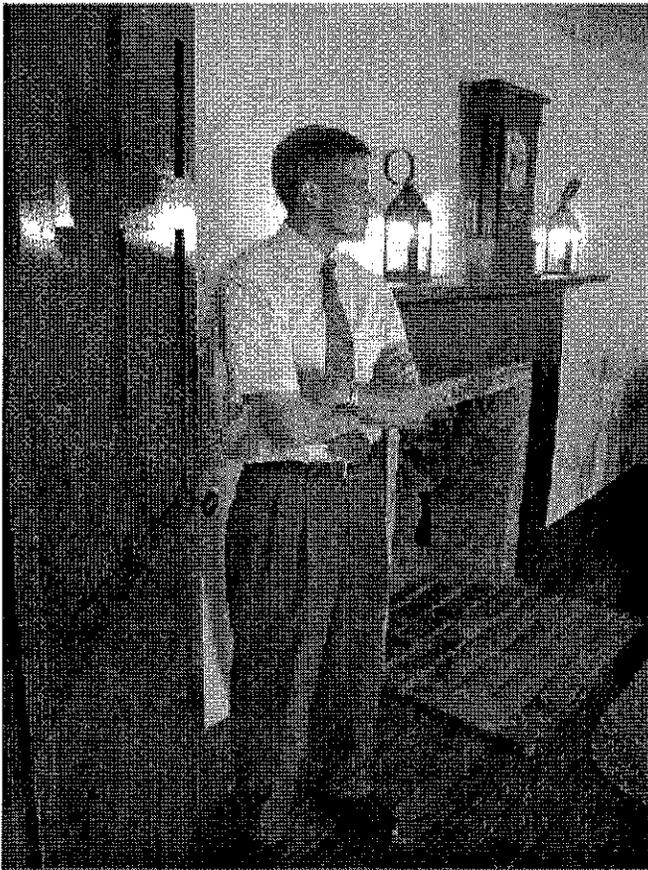
Joseph, Hyrum, and the others, arrived at this place, the Carthage Jail, around midnight, June 24, 1844.

[Conversation between Joseph and Dan Jones in the Carthage Jail, past midnight on June 27, 1844:] "Brother Dan, are you afraid to die?" Joseph asked. "Has that time come, think you?" Dan replied. "Engaged in such a cause, I do not think that death would have many terrors." Joseph then said, "You will see Wales and fulfill the mission appointed you ere you die."⁽⁹⁾

Early that morning Dan Jones left the jail to meet with Governor Ford. He explained to the governor with great anxiety how the lives of Joseph and Hyrum were in great danger, and the threats that were made towards them, to which Governor Ford replied: "You are unnecessarily alarmed for your friends' safety, sir. The people are not that cruel."⁽¹⁰⁾ Dan Jones returned to try to reenter the jail but was not allowed. His life was spared; he did

fill his mission to Wales, as Joseph prophesied and brought untold thousands into the Church.

Jailer at Carthage, George W. Stigall, heard of the impending danger to the lives of the prisoners (whom he admired and knew were innocent men) and suggested they go from his upstairs bedroom where they had been staying to the inner cell next to the bedroom where they would be safer. Joseph turned to Dr. Willard Richards and said, "If we go into the cell, will you go in with us?" The doctor answered, "Brother Joseph, you did not ask me to cross the river with you-you did not ask me to come to Carthage-you did not ask me to come to jail with you-and do you think I would forsake you now? But I will tell you what I will do: if you are condemned to be hung for treason, I will be hung in your stead, and you shall go free." Joseph said, "You cannot." Willard replied, "I will."⁽¹¹⁾ Witnessing this loyalty, Joseph wept. *(This conversation took place between Willard Richards and Joseph about 5:00 p.m., less than fifteen minutes before the brutal murders, June 27, 1844)*



Having returned from serving in Russia just two weeks earlier, Elder Tyler Nichols stands in the room where the Prophet and the Patriarch were killed, contemplating the events of June 27, 1844. Original door of jailer's bedroom still has the hole (right middle panel) where a ball from one rifle blasted through and hit Hyrum in the left bridge of the nose, felling him to the floor.

"A great crime has been done by destroying the Expositor press and placing the city under martial law, and a severe atonement must be made, so prepare your minds for the emergency."⁽¹²⁾ (*Governor Thomas Ford, State of Illinois, June 27, 1844. This was said about the time of the martyrdom while he was in Nauvoo.*)



The mob, with faces painted black, rushed up these stairs that fateful Thursday afternoon, rifles loaded, scores of deadly balls were fired through the doorway into the jailer's bedroom where Joseph, Hyrum, Willard, and John were imprisoned. Numerous other shots whistled through the open windows.

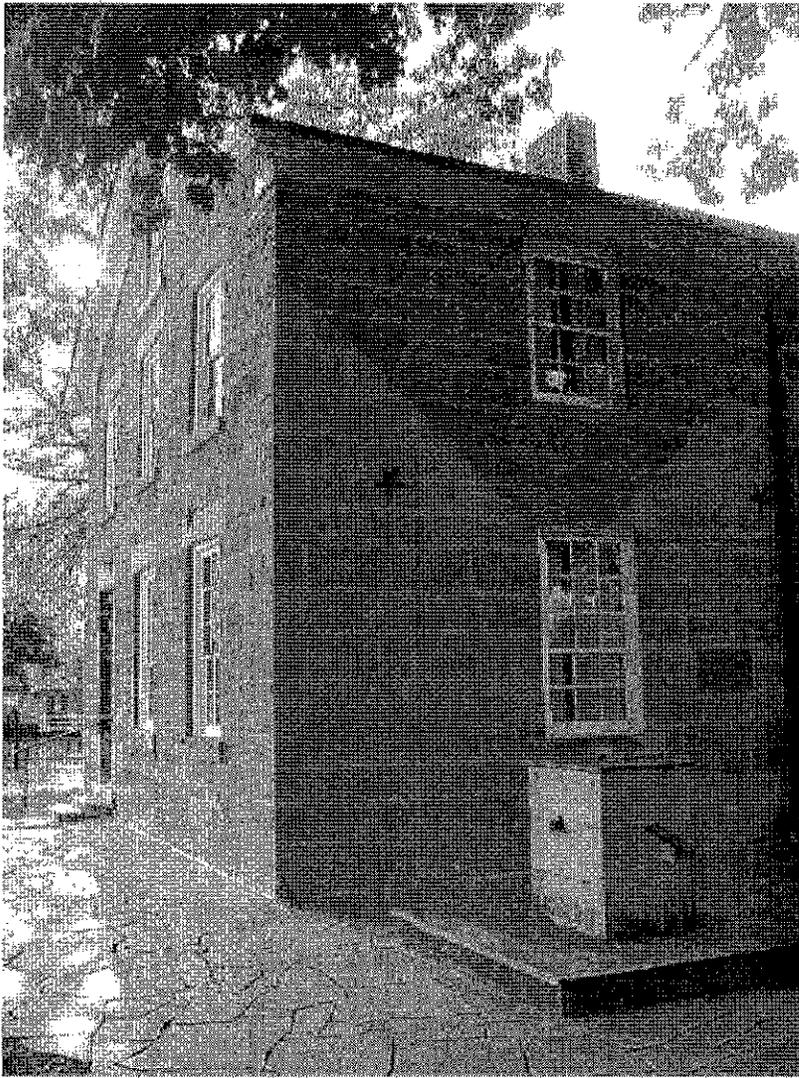
"I felt a dull, lonely, sickening sensation...When I reflected that our noble chieftain, the Prophet of the living God, had fallen, and that I had seen his brother in the cold embrace of death, it seemed as though there was a void or vacuum in the great field of human existence to me, and a dark gloomy chasm in the kingdom, that we were left alone. Oh, how lonely was that feeling! How cold, barren and desolate! In the midst of difficulties he was always the first in motion; in critical positions his counsel was always sought. As our Prophet, he approached our God and obtained for us his will; but now our Prophet, our counselor, our general, our leader was gone, and amid the fiery ordeal that we then had to pass through, we were left alone without his aid, and as our future guide for things

spiritual or temporal, and for all things pertaining to this world, or the next, he had spoken for the last time on earth."⁽¹³⁾ (*John Taylor*)



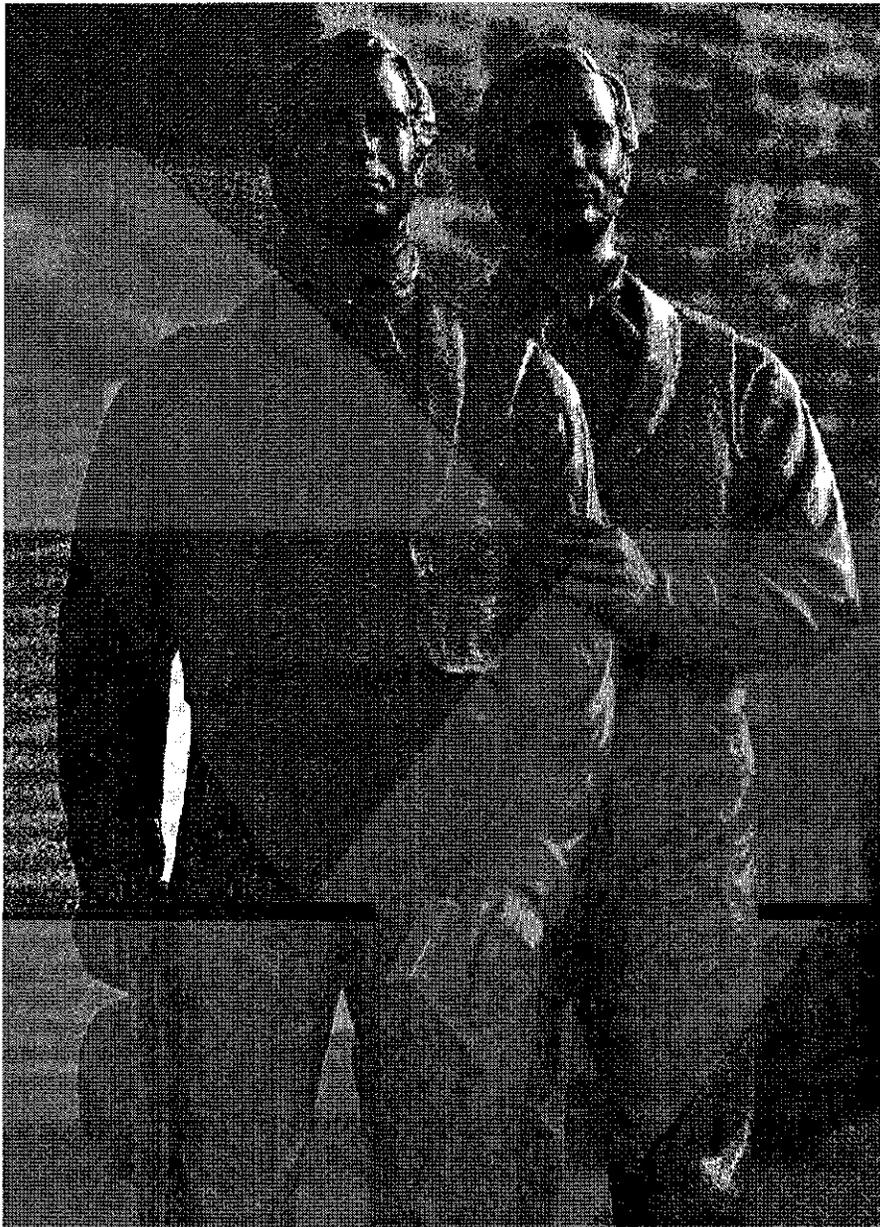
Hyrum lay dead on this floor. John had rolled under the bed after being hit with five balls, one of which struck him in the chest at the heart, but was miraculously stopped by his pocket watch. The watch stopped at 16 minutes, 26 seconds after 5 o'clock. Joseph tried to escape through the window on the left. He was hit four times, once in the collar bone, once in the breast, and twice in the back. He leaped or fell from the window crying aloud, "Oh Lord, my God.!"

"Had he [Joseph] been spared a martyr's fate till mature manhood and age, he was certainly endued with powers and ability to have revolutionized the world...as it is, his works will live to endless ages, and unnumbered millions yet unborn will mention his name with honor, as a noble instrument...who...laid the foundations of that kingdom spoken of by Daniel, the prophet, which should break in pieces all other kingdoms and stand forever."⁽¹⁴⁾ (*Parley Parker Pratt*)



View from the outside of the Carthage Jail and the well where the mob placed the body of Joseph Smith and fired upon him in a brutal manner at point blank range. With walls between two and two-and-a-half feet thick, the seven-room Carthage Jail was considered by Governor Thomas Ford and others, "the only safe place in Hancock County for 'Joe Smith.'"

"Joseph Smith, the Prophet and Seer of the Lord, has done more, save Jesus only, for the salvation of men in this world, than any other man that ever lived in it."⁽¹⁵⁾ (John Taylor)



D.J. Bawden bronze of Joseph and Hyrum, the Prophet and Patriarch. At the Carthage Jail, at the time of the martyrdom, Joseph was thirty-eight years old and Hyrum, forty-four. "In life they were not divided, and in death they were not separated."⁽¹⁶⁾

"After the corpses were washed and dressed in their burial clothes, we were allowed to see them. I had for a long time braced every nerve, roused every energy of my soul and called upon God to strengthen me, but when I entered the room and saw my murdered sons extended both at once before my eyes and heard the sobs and groans of my family...it was too much: I sank back, crying to the Lord in the agony of my soul, "My God, my God, why hast thou forsaken this family!" A voice replied, "I have taken them to myself, that they might have rest...I then thought upon the promise which I had received in Missouri, that in five years Joseph should have power over all his enemies.

The time had elapsed and the promise was fulfilled."⁽¹⁷⁾ (*Lucy Mack Smith, mother of Joseph and Hyrum, June 29, 1844, Nauvoo Illinois*)

"My Dear Companion...We are in great affliction at this time. Our dear Br. Joseph Smith and Hyrum has fell victims to a ferocious mob. The great God of the Creation only knows whether the rest shall be preserved in safety or not...I have been blessed to keep my feelings quite calm through all the storm. I hope you will be careful on your way home and not expose yourself to those that will endanger your life. Yours in haste. If we meet no more in this world may we meet where parting is no more. Farewell."⁽¹⁸⁾ (*May Ann Angell Young to her husband, Brigham Young, President of the Council of the Twelve Apostles, dated June 30, 1844*)

"We would beseech the Latter Day Saints in Nauvoo, and else where, to hold fast to the faith that has been delivered to them in the last days, abiding in the perfect law of the gospel. Be peaceable, quiet citizens, doing the works of righteousness...Rejoice then, that you are found worthy to live and die for God: men may kill the body, but they cannot hurt the soul."⁽¹⁹⁾ (*W.W. Phelps, W. Richards, John Taylor, July 1, 1844*)

Note

1. Smith, Joseph, *History of the Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints*, 7 vols. (Salt Lake City, Utah: Deseret Book Company, 1980), 6:619 (Hereinafter, *History of the Church*).

2. *History of the Church*, 6:547.

3. *The Juvenile Instructor*, 15 August 1892, 27: 490-91.

4. *History of the Church*, 6:554-55.

5. *Personal Writings of Joseph Smith*, ed. and comp. Dean C. Jessee (Salt Lake City, Utah: Deseret Book Company, 1984), 611.

6. *History of the Church*, 6: 558.

7. 3 Nephi 21:10

8. Dan Jones, "The Martyrdom of Joseph and Hyrum Smith," 20 January, 1855, handwritten manuscript in the Church Historian's Library, Salt Lake City, Utah.

9. Ibid.

10. Ibid. See also *History of the Church* 6:603

11. *History of the Church* 6:16

12. Ibid. 623

13. Ibid. 7:106

14. Pratt, Parley P. *Autobiography of Parley P. Pratt, Revised and Enhanced Edition*. Edited by Scot Facer Proctor and Maurine Jensen Proctor. Deseret Book Company, Salt Lake City, 2000, pp. 45, 46.

15. Doctrine and Covenants 135:3

16. D&C 135:3.

17. Smith, Lucy Mack. *Revised and Enhanced History of Joseph Smith by His Mother*. Edited by Scot Facer Proctor and Maurine Jensen Proctor. Bookcraft, Salt Lake City, 1996, pp. 457, 458.

18. Mary Ann Angell Young to Brigham Young, 30 June, 1844, dated at Nauvoo, Illinois, housed at Church Historian's Library, Salt Lake City, Utah.

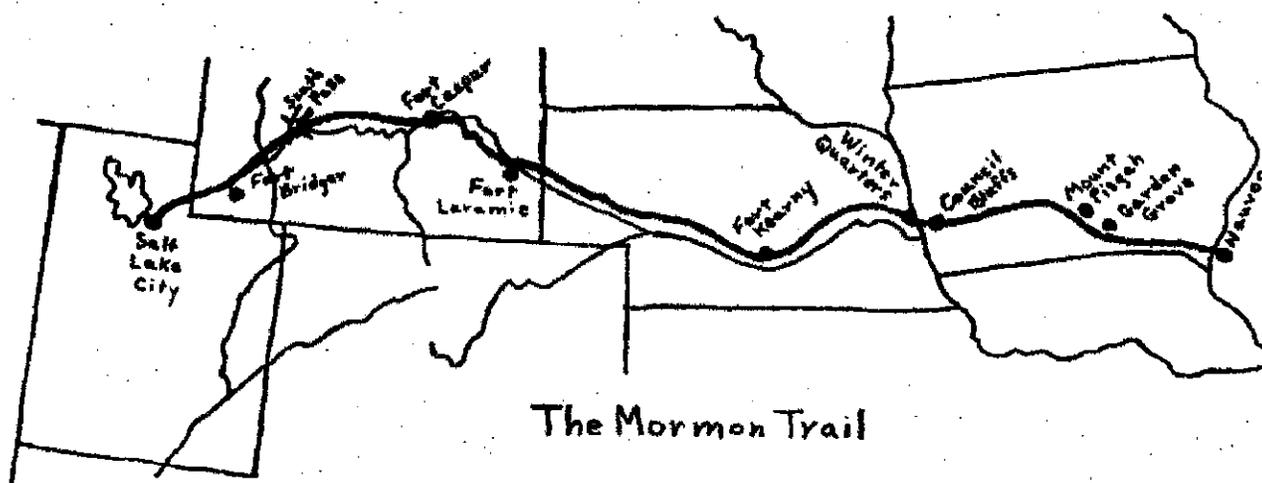
19. *Times and Seasons*, vol. 5, no. 12, (1 July 1844): 568

(All photographs Copyright 2001 Scot Facer Proctor)

APPENDIX I

IOWA

The Mormon Trail



©1995 by Beverly Whitaker, Genealogy Tutor

Route of the Mormon Trail

From Nauvoo, Illinois, the Saints crossed Iowa. Near Sewal, Iowa, they crossed Locust Creek. Their first real way station was at Garden Grove, where 170 men cleared 715 acres in three weeks, for the purpose of providing shelter for those coming behind. They did this all along the Trail. Beyond Garden Grove lies Mount Pisgah. Here, between 1846 and 1852, as many as 800 died. They crossed the Missouri River at Council Bluffs, setting up a new camp on Indian lands, at what is now the Omaha suburb of Florence, Nebraska. It became known as Winter Quarters.

When the Mormons reached Fort Kearny, they remained on the north bank of the Platte River. This is what distinguishes the Mormon Trail from the Oregon Trail in this portion. The latter ran along the south bank. The Mormons chose the north side partly to isolate themselves but more to avoid competing for grazing and campsites.

At Fort Bridger, the Mormon Trail diverged from the Oregon and California Trail. The Mormons turned south and west toward the Wasatch Mountain Range. A work party was sent ahead to build a road through the mountains.

The first group of Mormons passed through Echo Canyon, over Big Mountain and Little Mountain and down Emigration Canyon, coming into full view of the Great Salt Lake Valley on July 24, 1847.

<http://freepages.genealogy.rootsweb.com/~gentutor/mormon.html>